

# FOREWORD

Dear Customer,

Thank you for selecting your new Kia vehicle.

As a global car manufacturer focused on building high-quality vehicles with exceptional value, Kia is dedicated to providing you with a customer service experience that exceeds your expectations.

This Owner's Manual is valid for all variants of your model, and describes all options, features, and equipment available, along with the maintenance needs. Therefore, this manual may also describe optional equipment not purchased on your vehicle, country specifications, and functions and features not available in your region. Please always keep this manual in the vehicle for your and any subsequent owner's reference.

Authorised Kia Dealerships provide factory-trained technicians, utilized recommended special service tools, and supply genuine Kia replacement parts to help you maintain and service your vehicle during your ownership.

All information contained in this Owner's Manual was accurate at the time of publication. However, as Kia continues to make improvements to its products, the company reserves the right to make changes to this manual or any of its vehicles at any time without notice and without incurring any obligations.

Please drive safely, and enjoy your Kia vehicle!

© 2023 Kia Corporation

All rights reserved. May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of Kia Corporation

Printed in Korea



## How to use this manual

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways.

We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimise the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject, it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Chapters: This manual has eight chapters plus an index. Each chapter begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that chapter has the information you want.

You will find various WARNINGS, CAUTIONS, and NOTICES in this manual. These WARNINGS were prepared to enhance your personal safety. You should carefully read and follow ALL procedures and recommendations provided in these WARNINGS, CAUTIONS and NOTICES.

### **WARNING**

A WARNING indicates a situation in which harm, serious bodily injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.

---

### **CAUTION**

A CAUTION indicates a situation in which damage to your vehicle could result if the caution is ignored.

---

### **NOTICE**

A NOTICE indicates interesting or helpful information is being provided.

---



# Table of Contents

Introduction	①
Your vehicle at a glance	②
Safety features of your vehicle	③
Features of your vehicle	④
Driving your vehicle	⑤
What to do in an emergency	⑥
Maintenance	⑦
Specifications & Consumer information	⑧
Abbreviation	Ⓐ
Index	Ⓛ



# Introduction **1**

Fuel requirements .....	1-2
Vehicle modifications.....	1-4
Vehicle break-in process .....	1-4
Returning used vehicles (for europe) .....	1-5
Risk of fire or burns when parking or stopping vehicle .....	1-5
Vehicle handling instructions .....	1-6

## Introduction

### Fuel requirements

#### Unleaded

##### For Europe

For the optimal vehicle performance, we recommend you to use unleaded petrol with an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher.

You may use unleaded petrol with an octane rating of RON 91~94 / AKI 87~90 but it may result in slight performance reduction of the vehicle. (Do not use methanol blended fuels.)

##### Except Europe

Your new Kia vehicle is designed to use only unleaded fuel having an Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher. (Do not use methanol blended fuels.)

Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimise exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

#### **CAUTION**

NEVER USE LEADED FUEL. The use of leaded fuel is detrimental to the catalytic converter and will damage the engine control system's oxygen sensor and affect emission control.

Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified. (Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner for details.)

#### **WARNING**

- Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.
- Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

#### **Petrol containing alcohol and methanol**

Gasohol, a mixture of petrol and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), and petrol or gasohol containing methanol (also known as wood alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded petrol.

Do not use gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol, and do not use petrol or gasohol containing any methanol. Either of these fuels may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Discontinue using gasohol of any kind if drivability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or drivability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol.
2. Petrol or gasohol containing methanol.
3. Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.

#### **CAUTION**

Never use gasohol which contains methanol. Discontinue use of any gasohol product which impairs drivability.

## Other fuels

Using fuels such as

- Silicone (Si) contained fuel,
- MMT (Manganese, Mn) contained fuel,
- Ferrocene (Fe) contained fuel, and
- Other metallic additives contained fuels,

may cause vehicle and engine damage or cause plugging, misfiring, poor acceleration, engine stalling, catalyst melting, abnormal corrosion, life cycle reduction, etc.

Also, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) may illuminate.

### \* NOTICE

Damage to the fuel system or performance problem caused by the use of these fuels may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

## Use of MTBE

Kia recommends avoiding fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) in your vehicle.

Fuel containing MTBE over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) may reduce vehicle performance and produce vapour lock or hard starting.

### ▲ CAUTION

Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of fuels containing methanol or fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight.)

## Do not use methanol

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

## Fuel additives

Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe).

For customers who do not use good quality petrols including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives should be added to the fuel tank when the engine oil is replaced.

Additives are available from a professional workshop along with information on how to use them. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Operation in foreign countries

If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country, be sure to:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

## Vehicle modifications

This vehicle should not be modified.

Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.

- If you use unauthorised electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire.

For your safety, do not use unauthorised electronic devices.

## Vehicle break-in process

By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- Whilst driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Don't tow a trailer during the first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) of operation.
- Fuel economy and engine performance may vary depending on vehicle break-in process and stabilize after 6,000 km (4,000 miles). New engines may consume more oil during the vehicle break-in period.

## Returning used vehicles (for europe)

Kia promotes an environmentally sound treatment for end of life vehicles and offers to take back your Kia end of life vehicles in accordance with the European Union (EU) End of Life Vehicles Directive.

You can get detailed information from your national Kia homepage.

## Risk of fire or burns when parking or stopping vehicle

### **WARNING**

- Do not park or stop the vehicle near flammable items such as leaves, paper, oil, and tyre. Such items placed near the exhaust system can become a fire hazard.
  - When an engine idles at a high speed with the rear side of the vehicle touching the wall, heat of the exhaust gas can cause discoloration or fire. Keep enough space between the rear part of the vehicle and the wall.
  - Be sure not to touch the exhaust/catalytic systems whilst engine is running or right after the engine is turned off. There is a risk of burns since the systems are extremely hot.
-

## Vehicle handling instructions

As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher centre of gravity than other types of vehicles. In other words they are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional 2-wheel drive vehicles.

Avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres. Again, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

**Be sure to read the "Reducing the risk of a rollover" on page 5-149.**

# Your vehicle at a glance

Exterior overview .....	2-2
Interior overview .....	2-5
Instrument panel overview .....	2-7
Engine compartment.....	2-9

# Your vehicle at a glance

## Exterior overview

Front view



OSP2012001R

\* The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

1. Front ultrasonic sensors	4-102
2. Windows	4-37
3. Bonnet	4-42
4. Head lamp (Features of your vehicle)	4-107
Head lamp (Maintenance)	7-73
5. Front fog lamp (Features of your vehicle)	4-114
Front fog lamp (Maintenance)	7-73
6. Wheel and tyre (Maintenance)	7-48
Wheel and tyre (Specification)	8-6
7. Outside rear view mirror	4-54
8. Sunroof	4-46

9. Front windscreen wiper blades (Features of your vehicle)	4-119
Front windscreen wiper blades (Maintenance)	7-42
10. Roof rack	4-164

Rear view



OSP2012002L

\* The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

- |   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 1. Rear ultrasonic sensors              | 4-98, 4-102 |
| 2. Door locks                           | 4-16        |
| 3. Fuel filler door                     | 4-44        |
| 4. Rear combination lamp (Maintenance)  | 7-74        |
| 5. Back up lamp                         | 7-74        |
| 6. High Mounted Stop Lamp (Maintenance) | 7-74        |
| 7. Rear window wiper                    | 4-119, 7-44 |
| 8. Tailgate                             | 4-27, 4-29  |
| 9. Wide-rear view camera                | 4-95        |
| 10. Antenna                             | 4-166       |
| 11. Rear fog lamp                       | 4-114, 7-74 |

## Interior overview



\* The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

- |   |       |
|---|-------|
| 1. Inside door handle                           | 4-17  |
| 2. Power window switch                          | 4-37  |
| 3. Central Door lock/unlock switch              | 4-18  |
| 4. Power window lock button                     | 4-40  |
| 5. Outside rear view mirror control switch      | 4-55  |
| 6. Outside rear view mirror folding button      | 4-55  |
| 7. Fuel filler door open lever                  | 4-44  |
| 8. Headlight levelling device                   | 4-118 |
| 9. Instrument panel illumination control switch | 4-59  |
| 10. Head-Up Display shutter On/Off button       | 4-93  |
| 11. ESC Off button                              | 5-44  |
| 12. Power tailgate open/close button            | 4-29  |
| 13. Steering wheel                              | 4-50  |

14.Tilt and telescopic steering control lever	4-51
15.Inner fuse panel	7-60
16.Bonnet release lever	4-42
17.Shift lever	5-18, 5-21, 5-28
18.Seat	3-3
19.Driver's memory seat button	3-15
20.Brake pedal	5-34

## Instrument panel overview



OSP2012004R

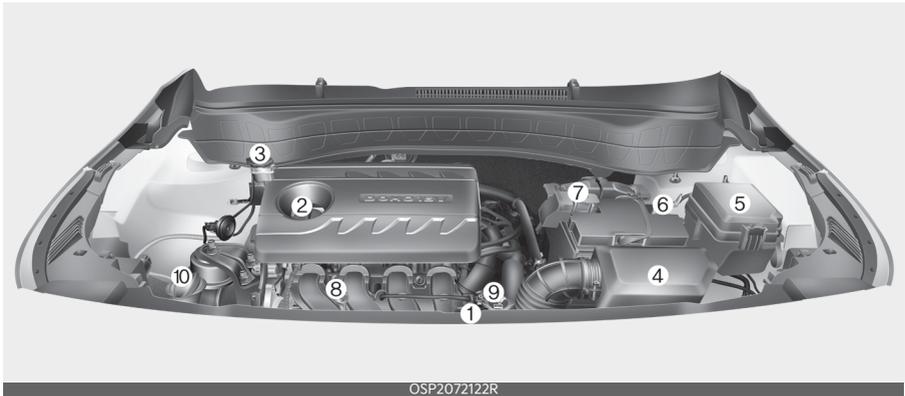
\* The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

- |   |       |
|---|-------|
| 1. Driving Assist button                                    | 5-113 |
| 2. Driver's front air bag                                   | 3-45  |
| 3. Horn   | 4-52  |
| 4. Audio remote control button                              |       |
| (Refer to "Car Infotainment System Quick Reference Guide".) |       |
| 5. Instrument cluster                                       | 4-57  |
| 6. Wiper and washer control lever (For Europe)              | 4-119 |
| Light control/Turn signals lever (Except Europe)            | 4-108 |
| 7. Light control/Turn signals lever (For Europe)            | 4-108 |
| Wiper and washer control lever (Except Europe)              | 4-119 |
| 8. Ignition switch  | 5-6   |
| ENGINE START/STOP button                                    | 5-8   |
| 9. Infotainment System screen                               |       |
| (Refer to "Car Infotainment System Quick Reference Guide".) |       |

10.Hazard warning flasher	6-3
11.Climate control system	4-133, 4-138
12.Power outlet	4-159
13.AWD mode button	5-13
14.Drive mode integrated control system button	5-52
15.Seat warmer and air ventilation seat button	4-155, 4-157
16.Parking/View button	4-96
17.Downhill Brake Control (DBC) button	5-49
18.Parking Safety button	4-98, 4-103
19.Steering wheel heater button	4-52
20.EPB switch	5-38
21.Auto Hold button	5-42
22.Centre console storage box	4-152
23.USB charger	4-158
24.Glove box	4-152
25.Passenger's front air bag	3-45
26.USB port	4-166
27.Wireless smart phone charging system	4-160

## Engine compartment

(Petrol) 1.6 MPI

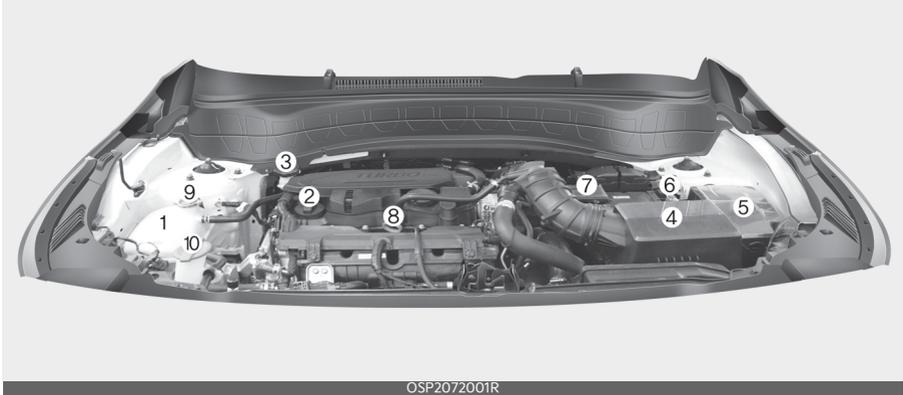


OSP2072122R

\* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Engine coolant reservoir	7-33
2. Engine oil filler cap	7-30
3. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir	7-36
4. Air cleaner	7-39
5. Fuse box	7-61
6. Negative battery terminal	7-46
7. Positive battery terminal	7-46
8. Engine oil dipstick	7-30
9. Radiator cap	7-33
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	7-38

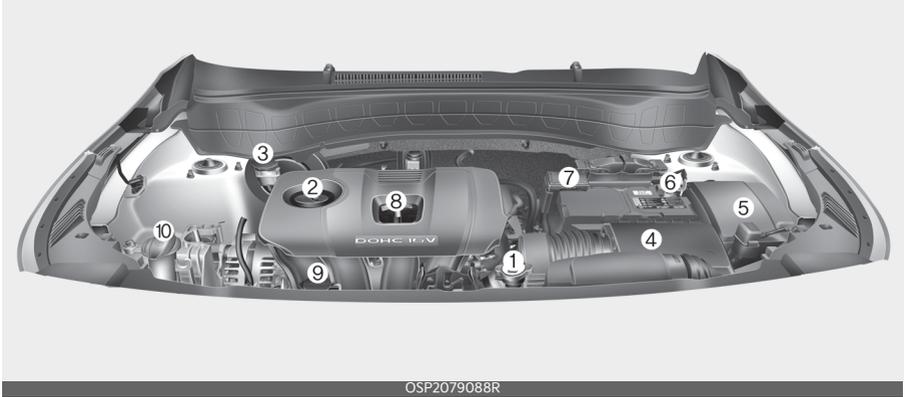
Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi



\* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

- |                                       |      |
|---------------------------------------|------|
| 1. Engine coolant reservoir           | 7-33 |
| 2. Engine oil filler cap              | 7-30 |
| 3. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir       | 7-36 |
| 4. Air cleaner                        | 7-39 |
| 5. Fuse box                           | 7-61 |
| 6. Negative battery terminal          | 7-46 |
| 7. Positive battery terminal          | 7-46 |
| 8. Engine oil dipstick                | 7-30 |
| 9. Radiator cap                       | 7-33 |
| 10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir | 7-38 |

(Petrol) 2.0 MPI



OSP2079088R

\* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Engine coolant reservoir	7-33
2. Engine oil filler cap	7-30
3. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir	7-36
4. Air cleaner	7-39
5. Fuse box	7-61
6. Negative battery terminal	7-46
7. Positive battery terminal	7-46
8. Engine oil dipstick	7-30
9. Radiator cap	7-33
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	7-38



# Safety features of your vehicle **3**

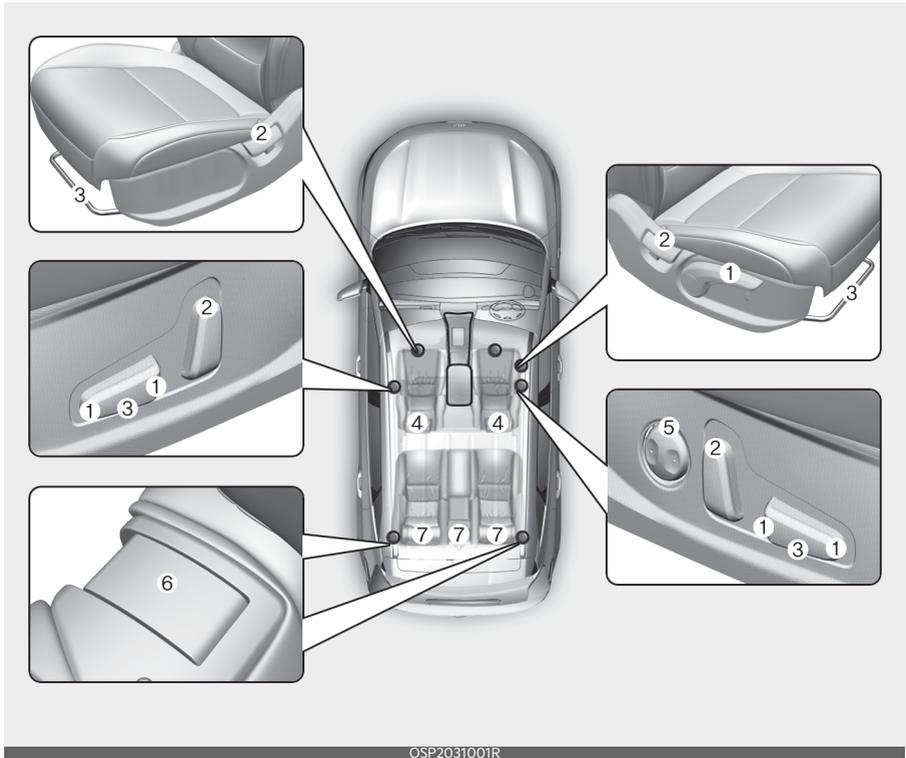
<b>Seat</b> .....	<b>3-3</b>
• Feature of Seat Leather.....	3-5
• Front seat adjustment for manual seat.....	3-5
• Front seat adjustment for power seat.....	3-6
• Headrest (for front seat).....	3-8
• Seatback pocket (if equipped).....	3-10
• Rear seat adjustment.....	3-11
• Headrest (for rear seat).....	3-11
• Folding the rear seat.....	3-12
<b>Driver's memory seat (for power seat)</b> .....	<b>3-15</b>
• Storing driver's seat positions.....	3-15
• Recalling positions from memory.....	3-15
• Easy access function.....	3-16
• Resetting the system.....	3-16
<b>Seat belts</b> .....	<b>3-17</b>
• Seat belt restraint system.....	3-17
• Seat belt precautions.....	3-25
• Care of seat belts.....	3-27
<b>Child restraint system (CRS)</b> .....	<b>3-28</b>
• Our recommendation: Children always in the rear.....	3-28
• Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS).....	3-28
• Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS).....	3-30
• ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children.....	3-31
<b>Air bag - supplemental restraint system</b> .....	<b>3-39</b>
• How does the air bag system operate.....	3-40
• Air bag warning and indicator.....	3-42
• SRS components and functions.....	3-43
• Driver's and passenger's front air bag.....	3-45
• Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch.....	3-47
• To deactivate or reactivate the passenger's front air bag.....	3-48

## 3 Safety features of your vehicle

- Side air bag .....3-49
- Curtain air bag .....3-51
- Air bag collision sensors .....3-53
- Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision?  
(Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag) .....3-54
- SRS care .....3-57
- Additional safety precautions.....3-58
- Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped  
vehicle.....3-58
- Air bag warning label .....3-58

## Safety features of your vehicle

### Seat



OSP2031001R

#### Front seat

1. Seat cushion height
2. Reclining: Back angle
3. Sliding: Forward and Backward
4. Headrest
5. Lumbar support\*

#### Rear seat

6. Seat back folding
  7. Headrest
- \*: if equipped

#### **⚠ WARNING**

##### **Loose objects**

Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Do not place anything under the front seats.

**⚠ WARNING****Driver responsibility for front seat passenger**

Riding in a vehicle with a front seatback reclined could lead to serious or fatal injury in an accident. If a front seat is reclined during an accident, the occupant's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt applying great force to the unprotected abdomen. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result. The driver must advise the front passenger to keep the seatback in an upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not use a sitting cushion that reduces friction between the seat and passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt can't operate normally.

**⚠ WARNING****Driver's seat**

- Never attempt to adjust seat whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident

causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

- Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against a seatback or in any other way interfering with proper locking of a seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.
- Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips. This is the best position to protect you in case of an accident.
- In order to avoid unnecessary and perhaps severe air bag injuries, always sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel whilst maintaining comfortable control of the vehicle. It is recommended that your chest is at least 250 mm (10 inches) away from the steering wheel.

**⚠ WARNING****Rear seatbacks**

- The rear seatback must be securely latched. If not, passengers and objects could be thrown forward resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.
- Luggage and other cargo should be laid flat in the cargo area. If objects are large, heavy, or must be piled, they must be secured. Under no circumstances should cargo be piled higher than the seatbacks. Failure to follow these warnings could result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop, collision or rollover.
- No passenger should ride in the cargo area or sit or lie on folded seatbacks whilst the vehicle is moving. All passengers must be properly seated in

seats and restrained properly whilst riding.

- When resetting the seatback to the upright position, make sure it is securely latched by pushing it forward and backwards.

### **⚠ WARNING**

After adjusting the seat, always check that it is securely locked into place by attempting to move the seat forward or backward without using the lock release lever. Sudden or unexpected movement of the driver's seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Use extreme caution so that hands or other objects are not caught in the seat mechanisms whilst the seat is moving.
- Do not put a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may gush out of the lighter and cause fire.
- If there are occupants in the rear seats, be careful whilst adjusting the front seat position.
- Use extreme caution when picking small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the centre console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seats mechanism.

### **Feature of Seat Leather**

- Our car seats are upholstered with a combination of artificial and genuine leather. The genuine leather is made from the outer skin of an animal, which goes through a special process

to be available for use. Since it is a natural substance, each part differs in thickness or density. Also, wrinkles could appear depending on the temperature and humidity.

- The seat cover is made of stretchable material to improve comfort of passengers.
- The parts contacting the body are curved and the side supporting area is high which provides driving comfort and stability.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

- Wrinkles or abrasions which appear naturally from usage are not covered by warranty.
- Belts with metallic accessories, zippers or keys inside the back pocket may damage the seat fabric.
- Make sure not to wet the seat. It may change the nature of leather.
- Jeans or clothes which could bleach may contaminate the surface of the seat covering fabric.

### **Front seat adjustment for manual seat**

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control levers located on the outside of the seat cushion.

### **Moving forward and backward**

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

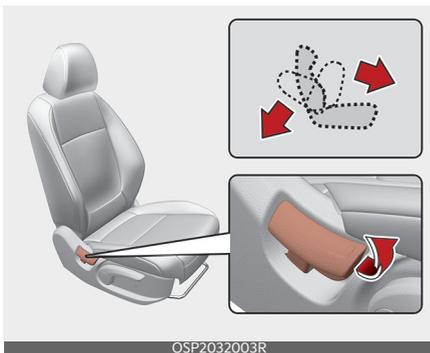


To move the seat forward or backward:

1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

### Reclining seatback

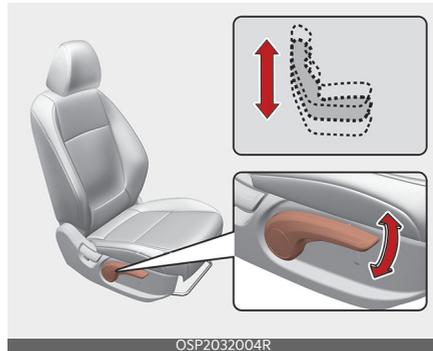


To recline the seatback:

1. Lean forward slightly and lift up the seatback recline lever.

2. Carefully lean back on the seat and adjust the seatback of the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. (The lever **MUST** return to its original position for the seatback to lock.)

### Adjusting seat height (for driver's seat)



To adjust the height of the seat, push the lever upwards or downwards.

- To lower the seat height, push down the lever several times.
- To raise the seat height, pull up the lever several times.

### Front seat adjustment for power seat (if equipped)

The driver's seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so as to easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

### **⚠ WARNING**

The power seat is operable with the ignition OFF.

Therefore, children should never be left unattended in the car.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- The power seat is driven by an electric motor. Stop operating once the adjustment is completed. Excessive operation may damage the electrical equipment.
- When in operation, the power seat consumes a large amount of electrical power. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, don't adjust the power seat longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.
- Do not operate two or more power seat control switches at the same time. Doing so may result in power seat motor or electrical component malfunction.

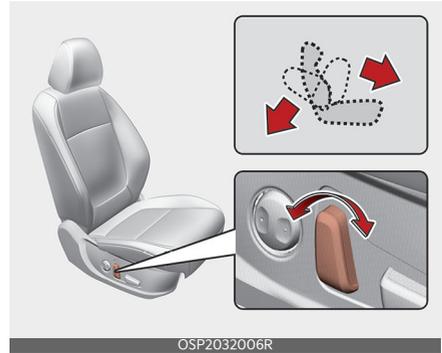
**Moving forward and backward**



To move the seat forward or backward:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward to move the seat to the desired position.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

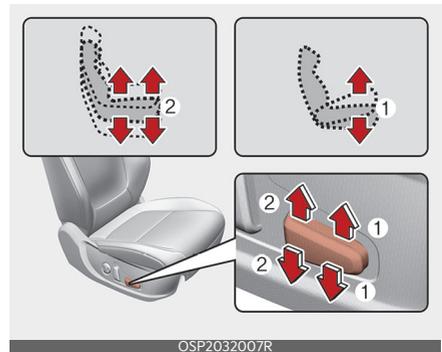
**Reclining seatback**



To recline the seatback:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward to move the seatback to the desired angle.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

**Adjusting seat cushion tilt and height**

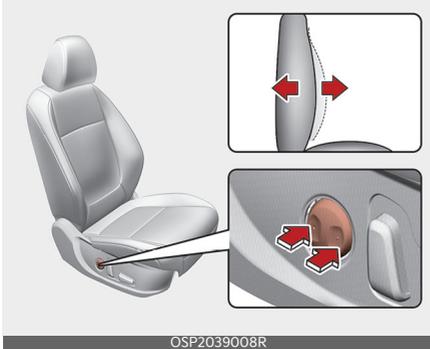


To adjust the height of the seat:

1. Pull the front portion of the control switch up to raise or press down to lower the height of seat.  
Pull the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or press down to lower the seat cushion.

2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

### Adjusting lumbar support (for driver's seat) (if equipped)



OSP2039008R

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the seat.

1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

### Headrest (for front seat)

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with a headrest for the occupant's safety and comfort.



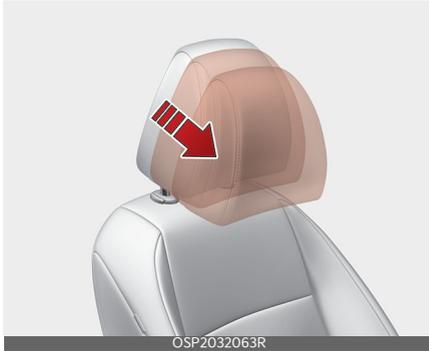
OSP21039007

The headrest not only provides comfort for the driver and front passenger, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

### **⚠ WARNING**

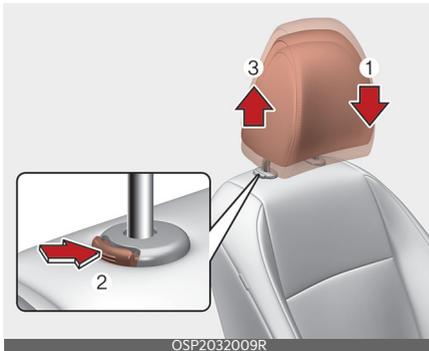
- For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the centre of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.
- Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed or reversed as severe injury to the occupants may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against neck injuries when properly adjusted.
- Do not adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat whilst the vehicle is in motion.

## Forward and rearward adjustment (if equipped)



The headrest may be adjusted forward to 3 different positions by pulling the headrest forward to the desired detent. To adjust the headrest to its furthest rearwards position, pull it fully forward to the farthest position and release it.

## Adjusting the height up and down



To raise the headrest:

1. Pull it up to the desired position (3).
2. To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
3. Lower the headrest to the desired position (1).

## ⚠ WARNING

Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.

## ⚠ CAUTION

If you recline the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sun visor or other parts of the vehicle.



## Removing headrest

Type A



Type B



To remove the headrest:

1. Recline the seatback (2) with the recline lever or switch (1).
2. Raise headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) whilst pulling the headrest up (4).

**⚠ WARNING**

NEVER allow anyone to ride in a seat with the headrest removed.

**Reinstalling headrest**

Type A



Type B



To reinstall the headrest:

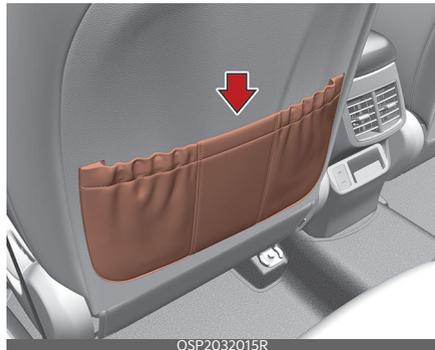
1. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1).
2. Recline the seatback (4) with the recline lever or switch (3).
3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.

**⚠ WARNING**

Always make sure the headrest locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.

**Seatback pocket (if equipped)**

The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front passenger's seatback.



**⚠ WARNING**

**Seatback pockets**

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure vehicle occupants.

**Rear seat adjustment**

**Headrest (for rear seat)**

The rear seat(s) is equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the occupant's safety and comfort.



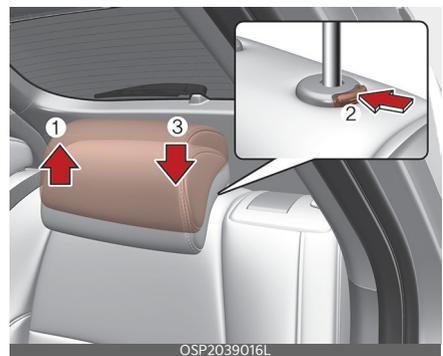
The headrest not only provides comfort for passengers, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

**⚠ WARNING**



- For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height as the centre of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.
- Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed or reversed. Severe injury to an occupant may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against severe neck injuries when properly adjusted.
- When there is no occupant in the rear seats, adjust the height of the headrest to the lowest position. The rear seat headrest can reduce the visibility of the rear area.

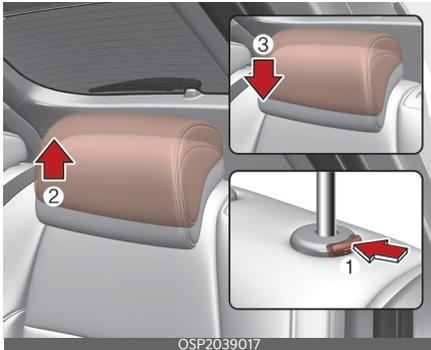
**Adjusting the height up and down**



- To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1).

- To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

### Removal and installation



- To remove the headrest, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) whilst pulling the headrest up (2).
- To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest poles (3) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1).
- Then adjust it to the appropriate height.

**⚠ WARNING**

Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.

### Armrest (if equipped)



To use the armrest, pull it forward from the seatback.

### Folding the rear seat

The rear seatbacks can be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

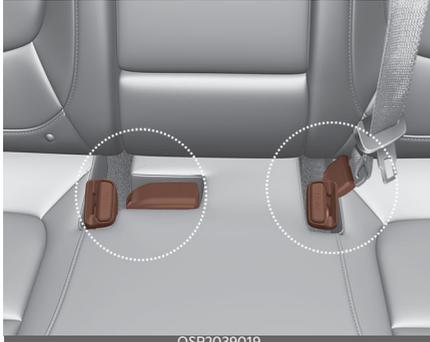
**⚠ WARNING**

The purpose of the fold-down rear seatbacks is to allow you to carry longer objects that could not be accommodated in the cargo area.

Never allow passengers to sit on top of the folded down seatback whilst the vehicle is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop. Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.

## To fold down the rear seatback

1. Insert the rear seat belt buckle in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion.



OSP2039019



OSP2039052

Then, insert the seat belt into the two holes located on both sides.

2. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.

For rear seatback, take the following steps:



OSP2032020L

1. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.
2. Pull on the seatback folding lever, then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### Damaging rear seat belt buckles

When you fold the rear seatback, insert the buckle in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion. Doing so can prevent the buckle from being damaged by the rear seatback.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### Rear seat belts

When returning the rear seatbacks to the upright position, remember to insert the rear shoulder belts tongue in the holder provided in Luggage side trim. This will avoid seat belt to be trapped in the back locking mechanism.

### ⚠ WARNING

#### Cargo

Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Do not place objects in the rear seats, since they can-

not be properly secured and may hit the front seat occupants in a collision.

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### **Cargo loading**

Make sure the engine is off, the transmission is in P (Park) or the manual transmission is in R (Reverse) or 1st, and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.

#### **To unfold the rear seat**

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### **Uprighting seat**

When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. If the seatback is returned without holding it, the back of the seat could spring forward resulting in injury caused by being struck by the seatback.

1. Lift and pull the seatback backward and be careful not to be located the seat belt between the rear seat and vehicle body. Pull the seatback firmly until it clicks into place.



2. Make sure the seatback is locked in place. When you return the seatback to its upright position, always be sure it has locked into position by pushing on the top of the seatback. If you can not see the red line at the bottom of folding lever, it means the seatback is locked completely.
3. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.
4. When the seatback is completely installed, check the seatback folding lever again.
5. If you want to tilt the rear seatback a bit more, whilst pulling on the seatback folding lever and push the top of the rear seatback towards the rear. Then release the lever and make sure that the rear seat is firmly locked.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

- Avoid excessive force when unfolding rear seat back.
- Unfolding the seat with excessive force may lead to lock seat back in 2nd step. This is natural phenomenon and adjust to the desired position if necessary.

## Driver's memory seat (if equipped, for power seat)



Driver's memory seat is provided to store and recall the driver seat with a simple button operation. By saving the desired position into the system memory, different drivers can reposition the driver seat based upon their driving preference. If the battery is disconnected, the position memory will be erased and the driving position should be restored in the system.

- Driver's seat: Location
- Head up Display (HUD): Height and Rotation

### ⚠ WARNING

Never attempt to operate the driver's memory seat whilst the vehicle is moving.

This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

### \* NOTICE

If the battery is disconnected, the memory settings will be erased.

## Storing driver's seat positions

1. Shift to P (Park) whilst the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ON position.
2. Adjust the driver's seat position and head-up display height to the desired position.
3. Hold the button (1 or 2). The system will beep once and notify you 'Settings 1 (or 2) saved' will appear on the LCD display.

## Recalling positions from memory

1. Shift to P (Park) whilst the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ON position.
2. Press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system will beep once, and then the driver's seat position and head-up display height will automatically adjust to the stored positions.
3. 'Settings 1 (or 2) applied' will appear on the LCD display.

### ⚠ WARNING

Use caution when recalling the adjustment memory whilst sitting in the vehicle. Push the seat position control switch to the desired position immediately if the seat moves too far in any direction.

- In order to adjust the memory button (2) whilst adjusting the memory button (1), press the memory button (1) to pause the adjustment of (1), then press memory button (2).
- If you adjust the seat whilst recalling the stored positions, the manually adjusted settings will be applied.

## Easy access function (if equipped)

Seat easy access will move the driver's seat automatically as follows:

### Exiting the vehicle:

The driver's seat will move as follows when the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the OFF position with the gear in P (Park) and the driver's door open.

- Driver seat:

Moves rearward depending on the distance selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

However, the driver's seat may not move rearward if there is not enough space between the driver's seat and the rear seats.

### Entering the vehicle:

The driver's seat will move as follows when the ENGINE START/STOP button is pressed to the ACC, ON or START position or whilst carrying the smart key, the driver's door is closed with the ENGINE START/STOP button in the OFF position.

- Driver seat: Moves back to its original position.

## Setting

You can set the Seat Easy Access function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

- Driver seat

Settings → Vehicle → Seat → Seating Easy Access → Driver Seat Easy Access → Normal/Extended/Off

## \* INFORMATION

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## Resetting the system

Take the following procedures to reset integrated memory system, when it does not operate properly.

### Resetting driver's memory seat

1. Stop the vehicle and open the driver's door with the ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park).
2. Adjust the driver's seat and seatback to the foremost position.
3. Press the memory button 1 (or 2) and push forward the driver's seat movement switch over 2 seconds simultaneously.

### Whilst resetting driver's memory seat

1. Resetting starts with a notification sound.
2. The driver's seat and seatback is adjusted to the rearward position with the notification sound.
3. The driver's seat and seatback is re-adjusted to the default position (central position) with the notification sound. However, in the following cases, the resetting procedure and the notification sound may stop.
  - The memory button is pressed.
  - The seat control switch is operated.
  - The gear is shifted out of P (Park).
  - The driving speed exceeds 3 km/h (2 mph).

- The driver's door is closed.

### \* NOTICE

- Whilst driver's memory seat is being reset, if the resetting and notification sound stops incompletely, restart the resetting procedure again.
  - Make sure that there is no objects around the driver's seat in advance of resetting the driver's memory seat.
  - After resetting the driver's memory seat, the adjustment for the driver seat must be stored again to recall the memory position.
- 

## Seat belts

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders.

### Seat belt restraint system

#### ⚠ WARNING

- For maximum restraint system protection, the seat belts must always be used whenever the car is moving.
  - Seat belts are most effective when seatbacks are in the upright position.
  - Children age 13 and younger must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 13 must be seated in the front seat, he/she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.
  - Never wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. An improperly positioned shoulder belt can cause serious injuries in a crash. The shoulder belt should be positioned midway over your shoulder across your collarbone.
  - Never wear a seat belt over fragile objects. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt can damage it.
  - Avoid wearing twisted seat belts. A twisted belt can't do its job as well. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt webbing is straight and not twisted.
  - Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. If the belt webbing or hardware is damaged, replace it.
-

**⚠ WARNING****Australian design rules**

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

**⚠ WARNING****Australian design rules**

- No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

- When you fasten the seat belt, be careful not to latch the seat belt in buckles of other seat. It's very dangerous and you may not be protected by the seat belt properly.
- Do not unfasten the seat belt and do not fasten and unfasten the seat belt repeatedly whilst driving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.
- When fastening the seat belt, make sure that the seat belt does not pass over objects that are hard or can break easily.
- Make sure there is nothing in the buckle. The seat belt may not be fastened securely.

**Seat belt warning**

The seat belt warning light and warning chime operate under the following conditions.

**Driver's seat belt**

- Regardless of the driver's seat belt fastening, the warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON. If the driver's seat belt is not fastened, the warning chime will sound for about 6 seconds and the warning light will stay turned ON until the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- If you start to drive without the driver's seat belt fastened, when you drive under 20 km/h or stop, the

warning light will illuminate. When you drive 20 km/h or faster, the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds.

- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened during driving, the warning light will illuminate when the speed is under 20 km/h. When the speed is 20 km/h or faster, the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds.

### Front passenger's seat belt

- Regardless of the passenger's seat belt fastening, the warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON. If the passenger's seat belt is not fastened, the warning light will stay turned ON until the passenger's seat belt is fastened.
- If you start to drive without the passenger's seat belt fastened, when you drive under 20 km/h or stop, the warning light will illuminate. When you drive 20 km/h or faster, the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds.
- When the passenger's seat belt is unfastened during driving, the warning light will illuminate when the speed is under 20 km/h. When the speed is 20 km/h or faster, the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds.

### Rear passenger's seat belt warning (if equipped)



- **For rear left (1) and right (3) side seat**

As a reminder to the rear passenger, the rear passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If the seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned ON, the corresponding warning light will illuminate until the seat belt is fastened.

If you start to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive under 20 km/h, the corresponding warning light will continue to illuminate until you fasten the seat belt.

If you continue to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive 20 km/h and faster, the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

When the seat belt is unfastened during driving, the warning lights will illuminate when the speed is under 20 km/h.

When the speed is 20 km/h and faster, the warning light will blink and warning

chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds.

- **For rear centre (2) seat**

As a reminder to the rear passenger, the rear passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

Whether a passenger is seated or not, if the seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned ON, the seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 70 seconds.

If you start to drive without the seat belt fastened the corresponding warning light will continue to illuminate for approximately 70 seconds regardless of the speed.

If you unfasten the seat belt when you drive under 20 km/h, the corresponding warning light will illuminate for approximately 70 seconds.

If you unfasten the seat belt when you drive over 20 km/h, the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

If the rear door is opened whilst driving under 20 km/h, warning light and warning sound does not work even if driving over 20 km/h.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Riding in an improper position adversely affects the front seat belt warning system. It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger to properly be seated as instructed in this manual.

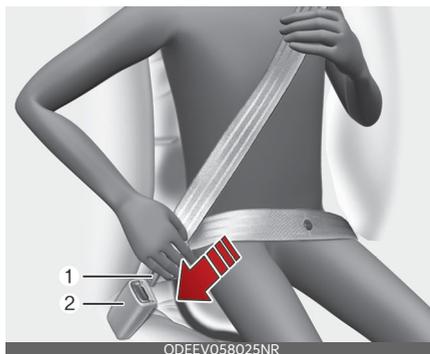
### **\* NOTICE**

- Although the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning

light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.

- The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed.

## Fastening the seat belt:



- To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.

The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, however, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

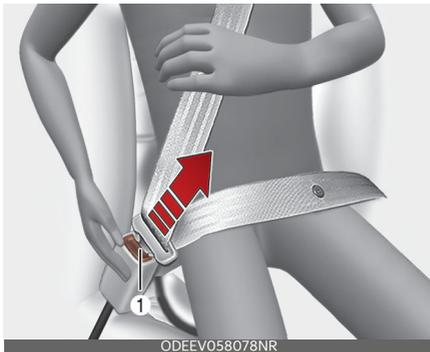
### **\* NOTICE**

If you are not able to pull out the seat belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. Then you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.

**⚠ WARNING**

You should place the lap belt portion as low as possible and snugly across your hips, not on your waist. If the lap belt is located too high on your waist, it may increase the chance of injury in the event of a collision. Both arms should not be under or over the belt. Rather, one should be over and the other under, as shown in the illustration.

Never wear the seat belt under the arm near the door.

**Releasing the seat belt:**

- Press the release button (1) in the locking buckle.

When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.

If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

**Adjusting the height of shoulder belt**

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of 3 positions for maximum comfort and safety.



The height of the adjusting seat belt should not be too close to your neck. You will not be getting the most effective protection. The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder near the door and not your neck.

To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

- To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1).
- To lower it, push it down (3) whilst pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

Improperly positioned seat belts can cause serious injuries in an accident.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Verify the shoulder belt anchor is locked into position at the appropriate height. Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face.
- After a collision, the seat belt system should be inspected to ensure it is

operating normally. Replace any belts that are not functioning appropriately.



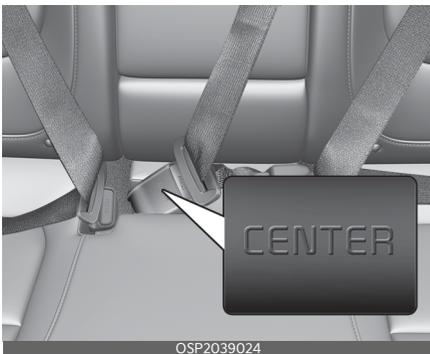
OSP2039023

1. Rear right seat belt fastening buckle
2. Rear centre seat belt fastening buckle
3. Rear left seat belt fastening buckle

**⚠ WARNING**

Prior to fastening the rear seat belts, ensure the latch matches the seat belt buckle. Forcefully fastening the left or right seat belt to the centre buckle can result in an improper fastening scenario that will not protect you in an accident.

When using the rear centre seat belt, the buckle with the "CENTER" mark must be used.



OSP2039024

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not separate mini tongue (1) and mini buckle (2) even if there is not an occupant.



OSP2039025

If it is separated, it may hit the rear seat occupants in a collision or sudden stops.

**Stowing the rear seat belt**

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of 3 positions for maximum comfort and safety.



OSP21039018

1. Route the seat belt webbing through the rear seat belt guides. It will help keep the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats.
2. After inserting the seat belt, tighten the belt webbing by pulling it up.

**⚠ CAUTION**

When pulling out to wear the seat belt, the tongue should be slowly pulled out of the seat belt guide so that the seat belt guide does not come off the trim.

**Releasing the seat belt:**



- The seat belt is released by pressing the release button (1) on the locking buckle.

When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor. If this does not happen, check the belt to make sure it is not twisted, then try again.

**Pre-tensioner seat belt (if equipped)**



Your vehicle is equipped with pre-tensioner seat belts at the front or front/rear seating positions.

The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure that the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain collisions.

The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the collision is severe enough.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

If the system senses excessive tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner activates, the load limiter inside the pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt.

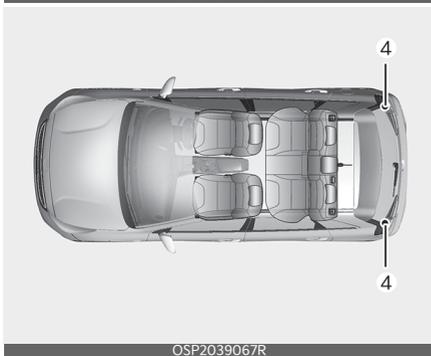
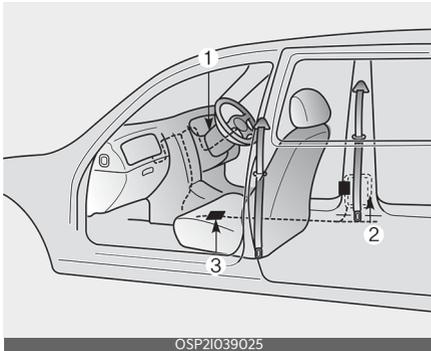
**⚠ WARNING**

For your safety, be sure that the belt webbing is not loose or twisted and always sit properly on your seat.

**\* NOTICE**

The pre-tensioner will activate not only in a frontal collision but also in a side collision, if the vehicle is equipped with a side or curtain air bag.

The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration:



1. SRS air bag warning light
2. Front retractor pre-tensioner assembly
3. SRS control module
4. Rear retractor pre-tensioner assembly (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

To obtain maximum benefit from a pre-tensioner seat belt:

1. The seatbelt must be working correctly and adjusted to the proper position. Please read and follow all of the important information and precautions about your vehicle's occupant safety features - including seat belts and air bags - that are provided in this manual.

2. Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts properly.

**\* NOTICE**

- When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.
- Although it is harmless, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.
- Because the sensor that activates the SRS air bag is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belt, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the "ON" position, and then it should turn off.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If the pre-tensioner seat belt is not working properly, the SRS air bag warning light will illuminate even if there is no malfunction of the SRS air bag. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to ON, or if it remains illuminated after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates whilst the vehicle is being driven, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Pre-tensioners seat belts systems are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. All seat belts, of any type, should always be replaced after they have been worn during a collision.
- The pre-tensioner seat belt assembly mechanisms become hot during activation. Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated.
- Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. Have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner.
- Improper handling of the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies, and failure to heed the warnings not to strike, modify, inspect, replace, service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies may lead to improper operation or inadvertent activation and serious injury.
- Always wear the seat belts when driving or riding in a motor vehicle.
- If the vehicle or pre-tensioner seat belt must be discarded, contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/ service partner.
- Body work on the front area of the vehicle may damage the pre-tensioner seat belt system. Therefore, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to

visit an authorised Kia dealer/ service partner.

**Seat belt precautions****⚠ WARNING**

All occupants of the vehicle must wear their seat belts at all times. Seat belts and child restraints reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries for all occupants in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Without a seat belt, occupants could be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle. Properly worn seat belts greatly reduce these hazards. Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant seat contained in this manual.

**Infant or small child**

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat.

For more information about the use of these restraints, refer to "Child restraint system (CRS)" on page 3-28.

**⚠ WARNING**

Every person in your vehicle needs to be properly restrained at all times, including infants and children. Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior. Always use a child restraint appropriate for your child's height and weight.

**\* NOTICE**

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any child restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets Safety Standards of your country. The restraint must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the child restraint for this information. Refer to "Child restraint system (CRS)" on page 3-28.

**Larger children**

Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. The lap portion should be fastened and snugged on the hips and as low as possible. Check if the belt fits periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat. If a larger child (over age 13) must be seated in the front seat, the child should be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position. Children age 13 and under should be restrained securely in the rear seat. NEVER place a child age 13 and under in the front seat. NEVER place a rear facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle. If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the centre of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches

their face or neck they need to be returned to a child restraint system.

**⚠ WARNING****Shoulder belts on small children**

- Never allow a shoulder belt to be in contact with a child's neck or face whilst the vehicle is in motion.
- If seat belts are not properly worn and adjusted on children, there is a risk of death or serious injury.

**Pregnant women**

The use of a seat belt is recommended for pregnant women to lessen the chance of injury in an accident. When a seat belt is used, the lap belt portion should be placed as low and snugly as possible on the hips, not across the abdomen. For specific recommendations, consult a physician.

**⚠ WARNING****Pregnant women**

Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the safety belt over the area of the abdomen where the fetus is located or above the abdomen where the belt could crush the fetus during an impact.

**Injured person**

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. When this is necessary, you should consult a physician for recommendations.

**One person per belt**

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt.

This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

### Do not lie down

To reduce the chance of injuries in the event of an accident and to achieve maximum effectiveness of the restraint system, all passengers should be sitting up and the front seats should be in an upright position when the car is moving. A seat belt cannot provide proper protection if the person is lying down in the rear seat or if the front seat is in a reclined position.

#### WARNING

Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt causing serious internal injuries or the occupant's neck could strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.

### Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

#### WARNING

- When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after the rear seatback was folded down, be careful not

to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Be sure that the webbing or buckle does not get caught or pinched in the rear seat. A seat belt with damaged webbing or buckle will not be as strong and could possibly fail during a collision or sudden stop, resulting in serious injury. If the webbing or buckles are damaged, get them replaced immediately.

- Seat belts can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather. They could burn infants and children.

### Periodic inspection

It is recommended that all seat belts be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

### Keep belts clean and dry

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

### When to replace seat belts

Entire in-use seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. In this case, have the system replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Child restraint system (CRS)

### Our recommendation: Children always in the rear

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Always properly restrain children in the vehicle. Children of all ages are safer when riding in the rear seats. Never place a rearward-facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated.

Children under age 13 should always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Children too large for a Child Restraint System must use the seat belts provided.

Most countries have regulations which require children to travel in approved Child Restraint Systems.

The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling.

Child Restraint Systems must be properly installed in the vehicle seat. Always use a commercially available Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of your country.

### Child Restraint System (CRS)

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rearward-facing or forward-facing CRS that has first been properly secured to the seat of

the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- Always follow the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.
- Always properly restrain your child in the Child Restraint System.
- Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seat-back, it may not provide adequate protection in an accident.
- After an accident, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)

When selecting a Child Restraint System for your child, always:

- Make sure the Child Restraint System has a label certifying that it meets the applicable Safety Standards of your country.  
A Child Restraint System may only be installed if it was approved in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R44, ECE-R129 or relevant regulation.
- Select a Child Restraint System based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a Child Restraint System that fits the vehicle seating position where it will be used.

For the suitability of Child Restraint Systems on the vehicle's seating positions, please refer to "Suitability of each seating position for belted & ISO-

FIX Child Restraint Systems according to UN regulations (Information for vehicle users and CRS manufacturers) (for vehicle equipped with ISOFIX)" on page 3-35 and "Suitability of each seating position for belted & ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems according to UN regulations (Information for vehicle users and CRS manufacturers) (for vehicle without ISOFIX)" on page 3-37.

- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided with the Child Restraint System.

### Child restraint system types

There are three main types of Child Restraint Systems:

- Rearward-facing CRS
- Forward-facing CRS
- Booster seat

They are classified according to the child's age, height and weight.

### Rearward-facing Child Restraint System



A rearward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the child. The harness system holds the child in place, and in an accident, acts to keep

the child positioned in the Child Restraint Systems and reduce the stress to the fragile neck and spinal cord.

All children under the age of one year must always ride in a rearward-facing Child Restraint System. There are different types of rearward-facing Child Restraint Systems: infant-only Child Restraint Systems can only be used rearward-facing. Convertible and 3-in-1 Child Restraint Systems typically have higher height and weight limits for the rearward-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rearward-facing for a longer period of time.

Keep using Child Restraint Systems in the rearward-facing position as long as children fit within the height and weight limits allowed by the Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

### Forward-facing Child Restraint System



A forward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness until they reach the top height or weight limit allowed by your Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a booster seat.

## Booster seats

A booster seat is a Child Restraint System designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system. A booster seat positions the seat belt so that it fits properly over the stronger parts of your child's body. Keep your children in booster seats until they are big enough to fit in a seat belt properly.

For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie comfortable across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie comfortable across the shoulder and chest and not across the neck or face. Children under age 13 must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre.

## Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)

### WARNING

Before installing your Child Restraint System always:

Read and follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

Failure to follow all warnings and instructions could increase the risk of the SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH if an accident occurs.

### WARNING

If the vehicle's headrest prevents proper installation of a Child Restraint System, the headrest of the respective seating

position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.

After selecting a proper Child Restraint System for your child and checking that the Child Restraint System fits properly on the seating position, there are three general steps for a proper installation:

- **Properly secure the Child Restraint System to the vehicle.** All Child Restraint Systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt or lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the ISO-FIX toptether and/or ISOFIX anchorage and/or with the support leg.
- **Make sure the Child Restraint System is firmly secured.** After installing a Child Restraint System to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat.

A Child Restraint System secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, some side-to-side movement can be expected.

When installing a Child Restraint System, adjust the vehicle seat and seat-back (up and down, forward and rearward) so that your child fits in the Child Restraint System in a comfortable manner.

- **Secure the child in the Child Restraint System.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the Child Restraint System according to the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions.

## ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children (if equipped)

The ISOFIX system holds a Child Restraint System during driving and in an accident. This system is designed to make installation of the Child Restraint System easier and reduce the possibility of improperly installing your Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the Child Restraint System to the rear seats.

ISOFIX anchorages are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each ISOFIX seating position that will accommodate a Child Restraint System with lower attachments.

To use the ISOFIX system in your vehicle, you must have a Child Restraint System with ISOFIX attachments.

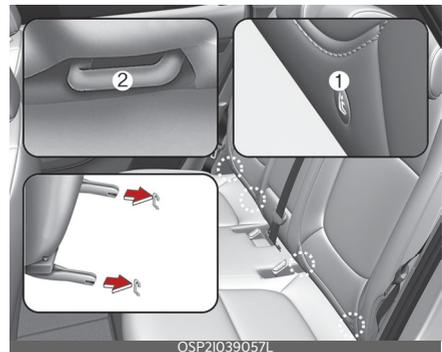
The Child Restraint System manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the Child Restraint System with its attachments for the ISOFIX anchorages.

ISOFIX anchorages have been provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the illustration.



### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not attempt to install a Child Restraint System using ISOFIX anchorages in the rear centre seating position. There are no ISOFIX anchorages provided for this seat. Using the outboard seat anchorages, for the CRS installation on the rear centre seating position, can damage the anchorages.



1. ISOFIX Anchor Position Indicator
2. ISOFIX Anchor

ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions, indicated by the symbols.

### Securing a Child Restraint System with the "ISOFIX Anchorage System"

To install a ISOFIX-compatible Child Restraint System in either of the rear outboard seating positions:

1. Move the seat belt buckle away from the ISOFIX anchorages.
2. Move any other objects away from the anchorages that could prevent a secure connection between the Child Restraint System and the ISOFIX anchorages.
3. Place the Child Restraint System on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the ISOFIX anchorages according to the instructions provided by the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
4. Follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System's manufacturer for proper installation and connection of the ISOFIX attachments on the Child Restraint System to the ISOFIX anchorages.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Take the following precautions when using the ISOFIX system:

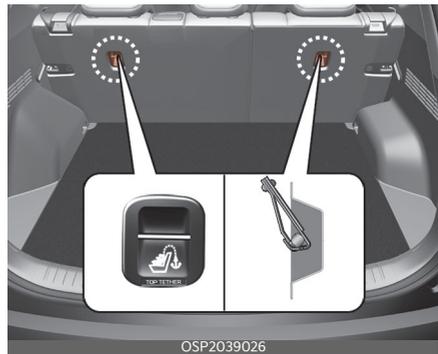
- Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.
- To prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts, buckle all unused rear seat belts and retract the seat belt webbing behind the child. Children can be strangled if a shoulder belt becomes wrapped around their neck and the seat belt tightens.
- NEVER attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single anchorage. This could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.

- Always have the ISOFIX (i- Size) system inspected by your dealer after an accident. An accident can damage the ISOFIX system and may not properly secure the Child Restraint System.

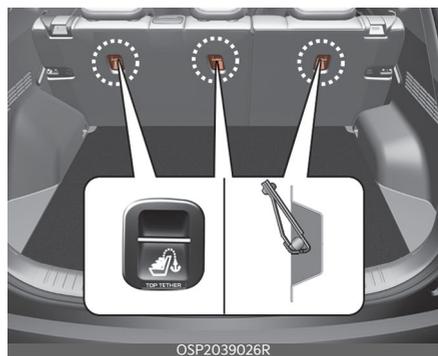
### Securing a Child Restraint System seat with "Top-tether Anchorage" system (if equipped)

Child restraint system top tether anchorages are located on the back of the rear seatbacks.

Type A



Type B



## To install the tether anchor:



1. Route the Child Restraint System top-tether strap over the seatback. Placing the top tether strap, please follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
2. Connect the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchorage, then tighten the top-tether strap according to the instructions of your Child Restraint System's manufacturer to firmly attach the Child Restraint System to the seat.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Take the following precautions when installing the top-tether:

- Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.
- NEVER attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single ISOFIX top-tether anchorage. This could cause the anchorage or attachment to come loose or break.
- Do not attach the top-tether to anything other than the correct top-tether anchorage. It may not work properly if attached to something else.

- Child Restraint System anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted Child Restraint System.

Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### **Australian design rule**

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belt, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

#### **Securing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt**

When not using the ISOFIX system, all Child Restraint Systems must be secured to a rear seat with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.



To install a Child Restraint System on the rear seats, do the following:

1. Place the Child Restraint System on a rear seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the Child

Restraint System, following the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions.

Make sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.

2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct "click" sound. Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.



3. Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the Child Restraint System whilst feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
4. Push and pull on the Child Restraint System to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place.

If your Child Restraint System manufacturer recommends the use of a top-tether with the lap/shoulder belt.

To remove the Child Restraint System, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the lap/shoulder belt out of the Child Restraint System and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

### Suitability of each seating position for belted & ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems according to UN regulations (Information for vehicle users and CRS manufacturers) (for vehicle equipped with ISOFIX)

- Yes: Suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- No: Not suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- "-": Not applicable

F: Forward facing

R: Rearward facing

CRS categories		Seating positions					
		1, 2	3		4	5	6
			Power	Manual			
Universal belted CRS		-	Yes* <sup>1</sup> F, R	No	Yes F, R	Yes F, R	Yes F, R
i-Size CRS (with support leg)	ISOFIX (F2,F2X,R1,R2)	-	No	No	No	No	No
ISOFIX infant CRS (i.e., CRS for a baby)	ISOFIX (R1)	-	No	No	Yes R	No	Yes R
Carry cot (ISOFIX lateral facing CRS)	ISOFIX (L1,L2)	-	No	No	No	No	No
ISOFIX toddler CRS - small	ISOFIX (F2,F2X, R2)	-	No	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R
ISOFIX toddler CRS - large* (*: not booster seats)	ISOFIX (F3, R3)	-	No	No	Yes F, R <sup>2</sup>	No	Yes F, R <sup>2</sup>
Booster seat-Reduced width	ISO/B2	-	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Booster seat-Full width	ISO/B3	-	No	No	Yes	No	Yes

\*1. Should be adjusted seat pumping properly, and CRS should not be installed for manual seat (not equipped pumping function)

\*2. For fitment of ISOFIX toddler's rearward facing large CRS

Driver's seat: Seat pumping should be adjusted to appropriate height.

Front passenger seat: Seat sliding should be adjusted to appropriate position.

- \* Never place a rearward facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the passenger air bag is deactivated.
- \* It is recommended to remove the head restraint, when CRS is unstable due to head restraint.



OSP21039029

Seat Number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front right
2	Front centre
3	Front left
4	Rear row left
5	Rear row centre
6	Rear row right

### Suitability of each seating position for belted & ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems according to UN regulations (Information for vehicle users and CRS manufacturers) (for vehicle without ISOFIX)

- Yes: Suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- No: Not suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- "-": Not applicable

F: Forward facing

R: Rearward facing

CRS categories		Seating positions					
		1, 2	3		4	5	6
			Power	Manual			
Universal belted CRS		-	Yes* F, R	No	Yes F, R	Yes F, R	Yes F, R
i-Size CRS (with support leg)	ISOFIX (F2,F2X,R1,R2)	-	No	No	No	No	No
ISOFIX infant CRS (i.e., CRS for a baby)	ISOFIX (R1)	-	No	No	No	No	No
Carry cot (ISOFIX lateral facing CRS)	ISOFIX (L1,L2)	-	No	No	No	No	No
ISOFIX toddler CRS - small	ISOFIX (F2,F2X, R2)	-	No	No	No	No	No
ISOFIX toddler CRS - large* (*: not booster seats)	ISOFIX (F3, R3)	-	No	No	No	No	No
Booster seat-Reduced width	ISO/B2	-	No	No	No	No	No
Booster seat-Full width	ISO/B3	-	No	No	No	No	No

\*1. Should be adjusted seat pumping properly, and CRS should not be installed for manual seat (not equipped pumping function)

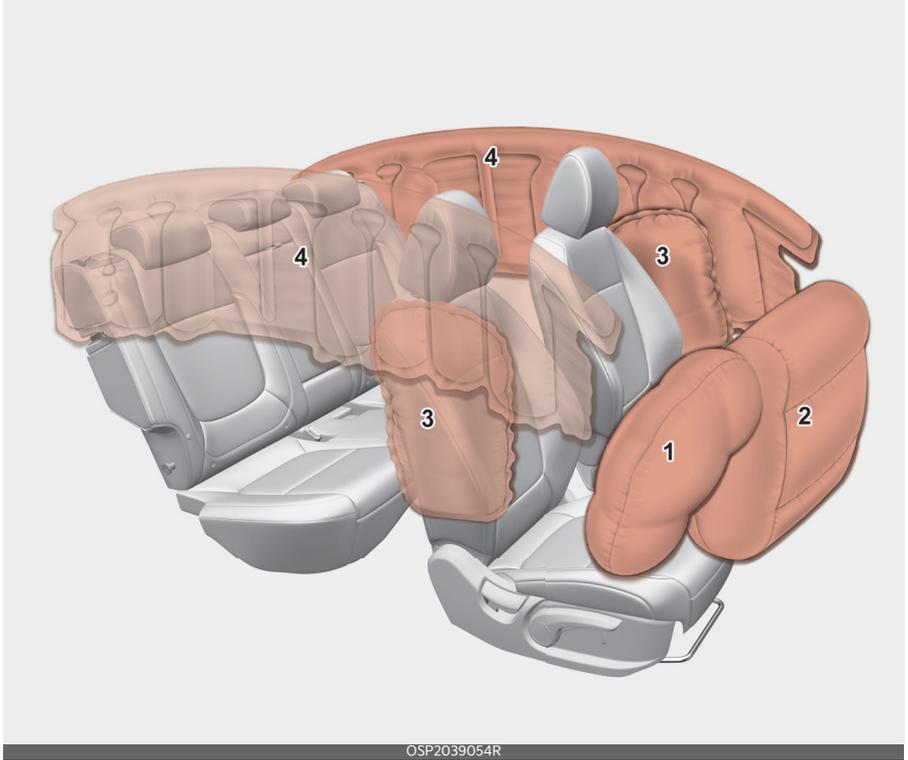
\* Never place a rearward facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the passenger air bag is deactivated.

\* It is recommended to remove the head restraint, when CRS is unstable due to head restraint.



Seat Number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front right
2	Front centre
3	Front left
4	Rear row left
5	Rear row centre
6	Rear row right

## Air bag - supplemental restraint system



1. Driver's front air bag
2. Passenger's front air bag
3. Side air bag\*
4. Curtain air bag\*
5. Front passenger's air bag ON/OFF switch\*

\* : if equipped

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Even in vehicles with air bags, you and your passengers must always wear the safety belts provided in order to minimise the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or in most rollover situations.

\* The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

- SRS and pre-tensioners contain explosive chemicals.  
If scraping a vehicle without removing SRS and pre-tensioners from a vehicle, it may cause fire. Before scraping a vehicle, contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Keep the SRS parts and wirings away from water or any liquid. If the SRS components are inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it may cause fire or severe injury.

### How does the air bag system operate

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or START position.
- Air bags inflate instantly in the event of serious frontal or side collision (if equipped with side air bag or curtain air bag) in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.

#### \* NOTICE

#### If equipped with rollover sensor

Also, the air bags inflate instantly in the event of a rollover (if equipped with a side air bag or curtain air bag) in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.

- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate.  
Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/ inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant.  
It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.
- In order to help provide protection in a severe collision, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which a collision occurs and the need to get the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries in a severe collision and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.
- However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- **There are even circumstances under which contact with the steering wheel air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the steering wheel.**

**WARNING**

- To avoid severe personal injury or death caused by deploying air bags in a collision, the driver should sit as far back from the steering wheel air bag. The front passenger should always move their seat as far back as possible and sit back in their seat.
- Air bag inflates instantly in an event of a collision, passengers may be injured by the air bag expansion force if they are not in a proper position.
- Air bag inflation may cause injuries including facial or bodily abrasions, injuries from broken glasses or burns.

**Noise and smoke**

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and they leave smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. **Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder.** Though smoke and powder are non-toxic, it may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc.). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult the doctor if the symptom persists.

**WARNING**

- When the air bags deploy, the air bag related parts in the steering wheel and/or instrument panel and/or in both sides of the roof rails above the

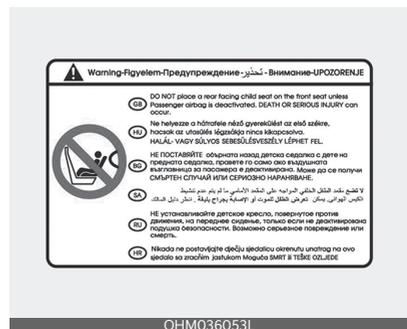
- front and rear doors are very hot. To prevent injury, do not touch the air bag storage areas internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated.
- Do not install or place any accessories near air bag deployment areas, such as the instrument panel, windows, pillars, and roof rails.

**Front passenger's air bag warning label for child restraint system**

Type A



Type B



**WARNING**

Never place a rearward facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, unless the passenger-side air bag is deactivated. An inflating passenger-side

air bag could impact the rearward facing child restraint and kill the child.

In addition, we recommend that you do not place front-facing child restraints in the front passenger's seat either. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it could cause serious or fatal injuries to the child.

If your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, you can activate or deactivate the front passenger's air bag when necessary. For more details, please refer to "Child restraint system (CRS)" on page 3-28. (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

- Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!
- NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIR BAG in front of it. DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- When children are seated in the rear outboard seats of a vehicle equipped with side and/or curtain air bags, be sure to install the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and securely lock the child restraint system in position. Inflation of side and/or curtain air bags could cause serious injury or death to an infant or child.

**Air bag warning and indicator**

**Air bag warning light**

The purpose of the air bag warning light in your instrument panel is to alert you

of a potential problem with your air bag - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS).



When the ignition switch is turned ON, the warning light should illuminate for approximately 6 seconds, then go off.

Have the system checked if:

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

**Passenger's front air bag ON indicator (if equipped)**



The passenger's front air bag ON indicator illuminates for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

The passenger's front air bag ON indicator also comes on when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position.

## Passenger's front air bag OFF indicator (if equipped)



 The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator illuminates for about 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator also comes on when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position and goes off when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position.

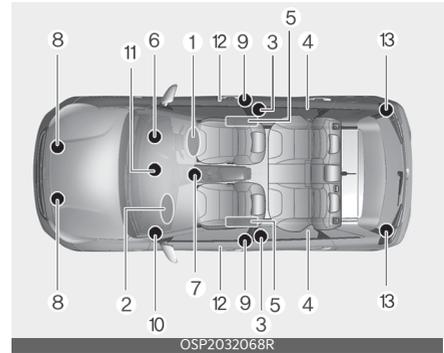
### CAUTION

If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch malfunctions, the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will not illuminate (The passenger's front air bag ON indicator will illuminate.) and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in a frontal impact even if the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.

In this case, have the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and the SRS air bag system inspected by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## SRS components and functions



\* The actual position of SRS components may differ from the illustration.

The SRS consists of the following components:

1. Driver's front air bag module
2. Passenger's front air bag module
3. Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies
4. Curtain air bag modules\*
5. Side air bag modules\*
6. Air bag warning light
7. SRS control module (SRSCM)/ rollover sensor\*
8. Front impact sensor
9. Side impact sensors\*
10. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch\*
11. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator\*
12. Side pressure sensors\*
13. Rear retractor pre-tensioner assemblies\*

\*: if equipped

The SRSCM continually monitors all elements whilst the ignition switch is ON to determine if a frontal, near-frontal impact or side impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.

The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, after which the air bag warning light should go out.

**⚠ WARNING**

If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the SRS. In this case, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/ service partner.

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

Driver's front air bag (1)



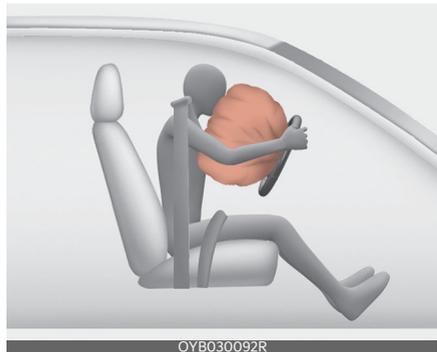
The air bag modules are located both in the centre of the steering wheel and in the front passenger's panel above the glove box. When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

Driver's front air bag (2)



Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the air bags.

Driver's front air bag (3)



A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

Passenger's front air bag



**WARNING**

- Do not install or place any accessories (drink holder, CD holder, sticker, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box in a vehicle with a passenger's air bag. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.
- When installing a container of liquid air freshener inside the vehicle, do not place it near the instrument cluster nor on the instrument panel surface. It may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.

**WARNING**

- If an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise followed by a fine dust released in the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous - the air bags are packed in this fine powder. The dust generated during air bag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation as well as aggravate asthma for some persons. Always wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and a mild

soap after an accident in which the air bags were deployed.

- The SRS can function only when the ignition key is in the ON position. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on after illuminating for about 6 seconds when the ignition key is turned to the ON position, or after the engine is started, comes on whilst driving, the SRS is not working properly. In this case, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the ignition key or turn off the ENGINE START/STOP button. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition switch is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light to illuminate.

**Driver's and passenger's front air bag**

Driver's front air bag



Passenger's front air bag



Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

The indications of the system's presence are the letters "AIR BAG" intagliated on the air bag pad cover in the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The SRS consists of air bags installed under the pad covers in the centre of the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel above the glove box.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

**⚠ WARNING**

The driver's hands should be placed on the steering wheel at the 9:00 and 3:00 positions. The passenger's arms and hands should be placed on their laps.

**⚠ WARNING**

Always use seat belts and child restraints - every trip, every time, everyone! Air bags inflate with considerable

force and in the blink of an eye. Seat belts help keep occupants in proper position to obtain maximum benefit from the air bag. Even with air bags, improperly and unbelted occupants can be severely injured when the air bag inflates. Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant safety contained in this manual.

To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries and receive the maximum safety benefit from your restraint system:

- Never place a child in any child or booster seat in the front seat.
- ABC - Always Buckle Children in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride.
- Front and side air bags can injure occupants improperly positioned in the front seats.
- Move your seat as far back as practical from the front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.
- You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags. Improperly positioned drivers and passengers can be severely injured by inflating air bags.
- Never lean against the door or centre console - always sit in an upright position.
- No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.
- Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental deployment

of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.

- If the SRS air bag warning light remains illuminated whilst the vehicle is being driven, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Air bags can only be used once - have the system replaced by a professional workshop.  
Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- The SRS is designed to deploy the front air bags only when an impact is sufficiently severe and when the impact angle is less than 30° from the forward longitudinal axis of the vehicle. Additionally, the air bags will only deploy once. Seat belts must be worn at all times.
- Front air bags are not intended to deploy in side-impact, rear-impact or rollover crashes. In addition, front air bags will not deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold.
- A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.
- Children age 13 and under must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over age 13 must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.
- For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air

bag is also provided at their seating position to minimise the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash. Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bag whilst the vehicle is in motion.

- Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash. All occupants should sit upright with the seat back in an upright position, centre on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the ignition key is removed.
- The SRS air bag system must deploy very rapidly to provide protection in a crash. If an occupant is out of position because of not wearing a seat belt, the air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.

### Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)



The passenger's front air bag can be deactivated by the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch if a child restraint is installed on the front passenger's seat or if the front passenger's seat is unoccupied by a person.

To ensure the safety of your child, the passenger's front air bag must be deactivated when it should be necessary to install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.

**To deactivate or reactivate the passenger's front air bag**



- To deactivate the passenger's front air bag, insert the master key into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the OFF position. The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator (⚠️) will illuminate and stay on until the passenger's front air bag is reactivated.
- To reactivate the passenger's front air bag, insert the master key into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the ON position. The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will go out and the passenger's front air bag ON indicator (🚗) will illuminate.

**⚠️ WARNING**

The front air bag ON/OFF switch could turn by using a similar small rigid device. Always check the status of the front air

bag ON/OFF switch and passenger's front air bag ON/OFF indicator.

**\* NOTICE**

- When the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position, the passenger's front air bag is activated and child or infant seat should not be installed on the front passenger seat.
- When the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position, the passenger's front air bag is deactivated.

**⚠️ CAUTION**

- If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is not working properly, the air bag warning light (🚗) on the instrument panel will illuminate. And, the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator (⚠️) will not illuminate (The passenger's front air bag ON indicator will illuminate.), the SRS Control Module reactivate the passenger's front air bag and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in frontal impact crashes even if the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.  
In this case, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/ service partner.
- If the SRS air bag warning light blinks or does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or if it illuminates whilst the vehicle is being driven, have the system inspected by a professional work-

shop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### **WARNING**

- The driver is responsible for the proper position of the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch.
- Deactivate the passenger's front air bag only when the ignition switch is switched off, or the malfunction may occur in the SRS Control Module. And there may be a danger that the driver's and/or front passenger's and/or side and curtain air bag may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly during a collision.
- Never install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger's seat unless the passenger's front air bag has been deactivated. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.
- Even though your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, do not install a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat.
- As soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat, reactivate the front passenger's air bag.
- Never place or insert any object into any small opening near side airbag

labels attached to the vehicle seats. When the air bag deploys, the object may affect the deployment and result in unexpected accident or bodily harm.

### **WARNING**

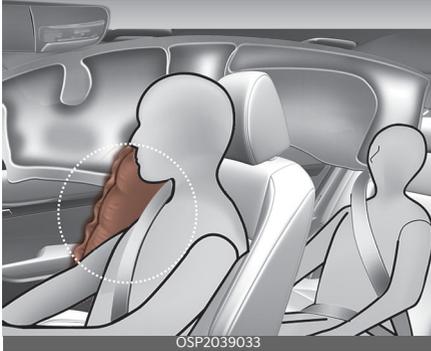
#### **No attaching objects**

No objects (such as crash pad cover, mobile phone holder, cup holder, perfume or stickers) should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, windscreen glass, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy. Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself.

#### **Side air bag (if equipped)**

Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front seat.





\* The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

The side air bags are designed to deploy only during certain side-impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. The side air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact situations.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.

**\* NOTICE**

**if equipped with rollover sensor**

- Also, both side of the side air bags deploy in certain rollover situations.
- The side air bag may deploy when the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.

**⚠ WARNING**

- The side air bag is supplemental to the driver's and the passenger's seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore your seat belts must be worn at all times whilst the vehicle is in motion. The air bags deploy only in certain side impact or rollover conditions\*1 severe enough to cause significant injury to the vehicle occupants.
- For best protection from the side air bag system and to avoid being injured by the deploying side air bag, both front seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened.
- Do not use any accessory seat covers.
- Use of seat covers could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.
- To prevent unexpected deployment of the side air bag that may result in personal injury, avoid impact to the side impact sensor when the ignition key is on.
- If the seat or seat cover is damaged, have the system serviced by a professional workshop.  
Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

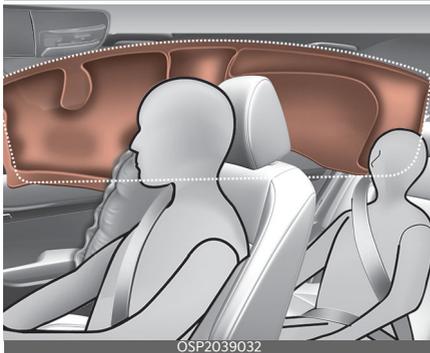
**No attaching objects**

- Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar.

\*1. Only vehicle equipped with rollover sensor.

- Do not place any objects between the door and the seat. They may become dangerous projectiles if the side air bag inflates.
- Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bags.

### Curtain air bag (if equipped)



\* The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact colli-

sions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact situations, collisions from the front or rear of the vehicle or in most rollover situations.

### \* NOTICE

#### if equipped with rollover sensor

- Also, both side of the side air bags deploy in certain rollover situations.
- The curtain air bag may deploy when the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.

### ⚠ WARNING

- Do not hang heavy items on the coat hooks for safety reasons.
- In order for side and curtain air bags to provide the best protection, both front seat occupants and both outboard rear occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belts properly fastened.

Importantly, children should sit in a proper child restraint system in the rear seat.

- When children are seated in the rear outboard seats, they must be seated in the proper child restraint system. Make sure to put the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and secure the child restraint system in a locked position.
- Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.

- Never try to open or repair any components of the curtain air bag system. If necessary, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Failure to follow the above mentioned instructions can result in injury or death to the vehicle occupants in an accident.

---

**⚠ WARNING**

**No attaching objects**

- Do not place any objects over the air bag. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar, roof side rail.
  - Do not hang hard or breakable objects on the clothes hanger.
-

## Air bag collision sensors



OSP2032034R



\* The actual shape and position of sensors may differ from the illustration.

1. Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) control module/rollover sensor (if equipped)
2. Front impact sensor
3. Side pressure sensors (if equipped)
4. Side impact sensor (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

- Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bag or sensors are installed.  
This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.
- If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bags may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should, causing severe injury or death.  
Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. Have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper, body or B pillar where side collision sensors are installed. In this case, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/ service partner.
- Your vehicle has been designed to absorb impact and deploy the air bag(s) in certain collisions. Use only Kia Genuine Parts or those of an equivalent standard to install bumper guards or replace a bumper. If not, it may adversely affect your vehicle's collision and air bag deployment performance.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If equipped with rollover sensor**

If your vehicle is equipped with side and curtain air bag, set the ignition switch to OFF or ACC position when the vehicle is being towed.

The side and curtain air bag may deploy when the ignitions is ON, and the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.

**Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag)**

There are many types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection.

These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts.

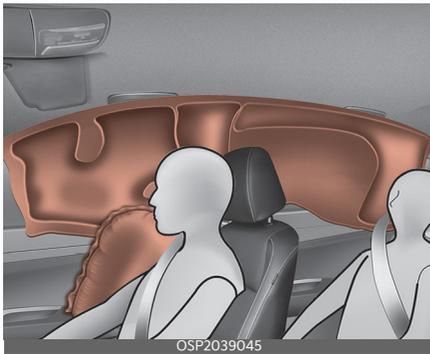
**Air bag inflation conditions**

**Front air bags**



Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.

## Side and curtain air bags (if equipped)



\* The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Side and/or curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the strength, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Also, the side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor.

Although the front air bags (driver's and front passenger's air bags) are designed to inflate only in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side air bags (side

and/or curtain air bags) are designed to inflate only in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

For instance, side air bag and curtain air bags may inflate if rollover sensors indicate the possibility of a rollover occurring (even if none actually occurs) or in other situations, including when the vehicle is tilted whilst being towed. Even if side and/or curtain air bags do not provide impact protection in a rollover, they will deploy to prevent ejection of occupants, especially those who are restrained with seat belts.

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads or sidewalks, air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

### \* NOTICE

#### If equipped with rollover sensor

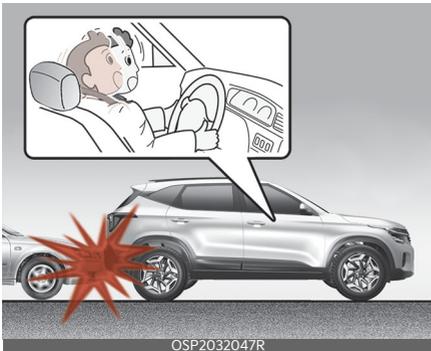
Also, the side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor.

#### Air bag non-inflation conditions

- In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts in such collisions.



- Air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit.



- Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, frontal air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

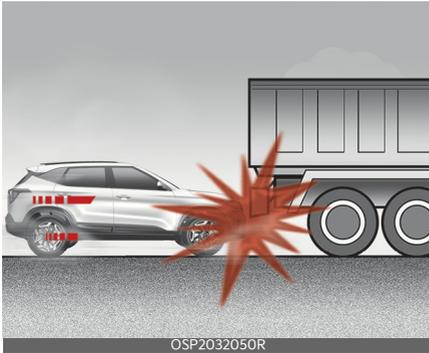


- However, if equipped with side and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate depending on the intensity, vehicle speed and angles of impact.
- In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.



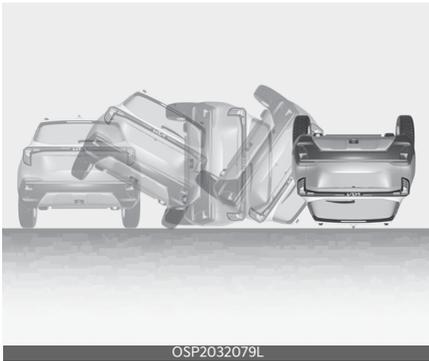
- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to "ride" under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors

may be significantly replaced by such "under-ride" collisions.



- Air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because the vehicle can not detect rollover accident.

However, side and/or curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over following (or after) side impact collision.



**\* NOTICE**

However, side and/or curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over by a side impact collision, if the vehicle is equipped with side air bags and curtain air bags.

**\* NOTICE**

**If equipped with rollover sensor**

However, if equipped with side and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate in a rollover, when it is detected by the rollover sensor.

**\* NOTICE**

**without rollover sensor**

However, side and/or curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over by a side impact collision, if the vehicle is equipped with side air bags and curtain air bags.

- Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated to one area and the full force of the impact is not delivered to the sensors.



**SRS care**

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself.

If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to

visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.
- For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.
- No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to inflate.
- If the air bags inflate, have the system replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental inflation of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.
- If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. An authorised Kia dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.

- If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on flooring, you shouldn't try to start the engine; in this case, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### **Additional safety precautions**

- **Never let passengers ride in the cargo area or on top of a folded-down back seat.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor.

### **Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle**

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

### **Air bag warning label**

Air bag warning labels are attached to alert driver and passengers of potential risk of air bag system.



<b>Keys</b> .....	<b>4-7</b>
• Record your key number .....	4-7
• Key operations .....	4-7
• Battery replacement .....	4-8
• Immobiliser system .....	4-9
<b>Remote keyless entry</b> .....	<b>4-10</b>
• Remote keyless entry system operations .....	4-10
• Transmitter precautions.....	4-11
<b>Smart key</b> .....	<b>4-12</b>
• Smart key functions.....	4-13
• Smart key precautions.....	4-13
<b>Theft-alarm system</b> .....	<b>4-14</b>
• Armed stage .....	4-15
• Theft-alarm stage .....	4-15
• Disarmed stage.....	4-15
<b>Door locks</b> .....	<b>4-16</b>
• Operating door locks from outside the vehicle .....	4-16
• Operating door locks from inside the vehicle .....	4-17
• Door lock/unlock features.....	4-19
• In case of an emergency .....	4-19
• Child-protector rear door lock.....	4-20
<b>Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) System</b> .....	<b>4-21</b>
<b>Safe Exit Warning (SEW)</b> .....	<b>4-22</b>
• Detecting sensor.....	4-22
• Safe Exit Warning settings .....	4-23
• Safe Exit Warning operation .....	4-24
• Safe Exit Warning malfunction and limitations .....	4-25
• Limitations of Safe Exit Warning .....	4-26
<b>Tailgate</b> .....	<b>4-27</b>
• Opening the tailgate .....	4-27

# 4 Features of your vehicle

• Closing the tailgate .....	4-27
• Emergency tailgate safety release.....	4-28
<b>Power tailgate .....</b>	<b>4-29</b>
• Power tailgate operating conditions .....	4-29
• Operating the power tailgate .....	4-30
• Setting the power tailgate.....	4-32
• Resetting the power tailgate.....	4-33
• Emergency tailgate safety release.....	4-33
<b>Smart tailgate .....</b>	<b>4-34</b>
• How to use the smart tailgate.....	4-34
• How to deactivate the smart tailgate function using the smart key .....	4-35
• Detecting area .....	4-36
<b>Windows .....</b>	<b>4-37</b>
• Window opening and closing .....	4-38
• Power window lock button.....	4-40
• Remote window closing/opening system .....	4-41
<b>Bonnet .....</b>	<b>4-42</b>
• Opening the bonnet .....	4-42
• Bonnet open warning.....	4-42
• Closing the bonnet .....	4-43
<b>Fuel filler door .....</b>	<b>4-44</b>
• Opening the fuel filler door .....	4-44
• Closing the fuel filler door .....	4-44
<b>Sunroof.....</b>	<b>4-46</b>
• Sunshade.....	4-47
• Tilt open/close .....	4-47
• Slide open/close .....	4-48
• Automatic reversal .....	4-48
• Resetting the sunroof.....	4-49
• Sunroof open warning.....	4-50

<b>Steering wheel .....</b>	<b>4-50</b>
• Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS) .....	4-50
• Tilt & telescopic steering wheel.....	4-51
• Heated steering wheel.....	4-52
• Horn .....	4-52
<b>Mirrors.....</b>	<b>4-53</b>
• Inside rear view mirror.....	4-53
• Outside rear view mirror .....	4-54
<b>Instrument cluster .....</b>	<b>4-57</b>
• Instrument cluster.....	4-58
• Adjusting instrument cluster illumination .....	4-59
• Gauges.....	4-59
• Outside temperature gauge.....	4-63
• Transmission shift indicator .....	4-64
<b>LCD display.....</b>	<b>4-66</b>
• LCD display modes.....	4-67
• Trip information (trip computer) .....	4-76
<b>Warning and indicator lights .....</b>	<b>4-83</b>
• Warning lights.....	4-83
• Indicator lights.....	4-88
<b>Infotainment system vehicle settings .....</b>	<b>4-92</b>
• Setting your vehicle.....	4-92
• Vehicle Settings menu .....	4-93
<b>Head-Up Display (HUD).....</b>	<b>4-93</b>
• Head Up Display Information .....	4-94
• Head up Display Setting .....	4-94
<b>Rear View Monitor (RVM) .....</b>	<b>4-95</b>
• Detecting sensor.....	4-95
• Rear View Monitor operation.....	4-96
• Rear View Monitor malfunction and limitations.....	4-98

# 4 Features of your vehicle

## **Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) ..... 4-98**

- Detecting sensor ..... 4-98
- Reverse Parking Distance Warning Operation..... 4-98
- Reverse Parking Distance Warning settings.....4-99
- Operation of Reverse Parking Distance Warning.....4-100

## **Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW)..... 4-102**

- Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning Settings..... 4-102

## **Lighting .....4-107**

- Battery saver function ..... 4-107
- Headlight escort function..... 4-107
- Daytime Running Light (DRL)..... 4-108
- Lighting control ..... 4-108
- Operating high beam ..... 4-111
- Operating turn signals and lane change signals .....4-112
- Operating front fog light ..... 4-114
- Operating rear fog light ..... 4-114
- High Beam Assist (HBA) ..... 4-115
- Headlight levelling device ..... 4-118

## **Wipers and washers ..... 4-119**

- Auto control..... 4-120
- Operating windscreen washers.....4-121
- Operating rear window wiper and washer switch ..... 4-122
- Heated washer nozzle ..... 4-123

## **Interior lights.....4-124**

- Automatic turn off function.....4-124
- Map lamp.....4-124
- Room lamp ..... 4-125
- Luggage room lamp ..... 4-126
- Vanity mirror lamp ..... 4-126
- Glove box lamp.....4-126
- Defroster ..... 4-127

<b>Defroster</b> .....	<b>4-128</b>
• Rear window defroster .....	4-128
• Outside rearview mirror defroster.....	4-129
<b>Climate control system</b> .....	<b>4-129</b>
• System operation .....	4-129
• Climate control air filter.....	4-131
• Air conditioning refrigerant label .....	4-131
<b>Manual climate control system</b> .....	<b>4-133</b>
• Heating and air conditioning .....	4-134
<b>Automatic climate control system</b> .....	<b>4-138</b>
• Heating and air conditioning automatically.....	4-139
• Heating and air conditioning manually.....	4-141
<b>Windscreen defrosting and defogging</b> .....	<b>4-146</b>
• Defogging inside windscreen with manual climate control system .....	4-146
• Defogging inside windscreen with the automatic climate control.....	4-147
• Defrosting outside windscreen with manual climate control system .....	4-147
• Defrosting outside windscreen with automatic climate control.....	4-147
• Defogging logic.....	4-148
• Automatic Air Ventilation.....	4-150
• Activate upon Washer Fluid Use .....	4-151
• System cancellation .....	4-151
• Sunroof inside air recirculation .....	4-151
<b>Storage compartment</b> .....	<b>4-152</b>
• Centre console storage .....	4-152
• Sliding armrest .....	4-152
• Glove box.....	4-152
• Luggage net holder.....	4-153

# 4 Features of your vehicle

- Luggage board.....4-153
- Increase cargo space .....4-153
- Interior features .....4-154**
- Ashtray.....4-154
- Cup holder .....4-155
- Seat warmer .....4-155
- Air ventilation seat.....4-157
- Sun visor .....4-158
- USB charger .....4-158
- Power outlet .....4-159
- Wireless smart phone charging system.....4-160
- Coat hook .....4-162
- Floor mat anchor(s).....4-163
- Cargo area cover.....4-163
- Exterior features .....4-164**
- Roof rack .....4-164
- Infotainment system.....4-166**
- Antenna.....4-166
- USB port.....4-166
- How vehicle radio works.....4-166

## Features of your vehicle

### Keys

#### Record your key number

The key code number is stamped on the key code tag attached to the key set.

If you lose your keys, Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. Remove the key code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the key code number and keep it in a safe place (not in the vehicle).

### Key operations

#### Folding key



To unfold the key:

- press the release button then the key will unfold automatically.

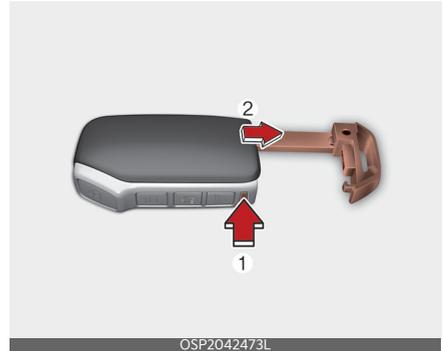
To fold the key:

- fold the key manually whilst pressing the release button.

#### CAUTION

Do not fold the key without pressing the release button. This may damage the key.

#### Smart key



To pull out the mechanical key:

- press and hold the release button (1) and remove the mechanical key (2).

To reinstall the mechanical key:

- put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

#### WARNING

#### Ignition key (Smart key)

Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with the ignition key (smart key) is dangerous even if the key is not in the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button is ACC or ON position.

Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition switch or press the ENGINE START/STOP button. The ignition key (smart key) would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in SERIOUS BODILY INJURY OR EVEN DEATH. Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.

**⚠ WARNING**

Kia recommends to use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. If an aftermarket key is used, the ignition switch may not return to ON after START. If this happens, the starter will continue to operate causing damage to the starter motor and possible fire due to excessive current in the wiring.

**Battery replacement**

The folding key or smart key uses a 3 volt lithium battery which will normally last for several years.

Folding key



Smart key



When replacement is necessary, use the following procedure.

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the key cover.
2. Loosen the retaining screw of the battery cover and then remove the cover (for folding key).
3. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery position.
4. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

For folding key or smart key replacement, Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

**THIS PRODUCT CONTAINS A BUTTON BATTERY**

If swallowed, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries within 2 hours.

Keep batteries out of reach of children.

If you think batteries may have been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, seek immediate medical attention.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- The keyless entry system transmitter is designed to give you years of trouble-free use, however it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use or replace the battery, Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Using the wrong battery can cause the folding key or smart key to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.

- To avoid damaging the transmitter or smart key, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.

### CAUTION



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health.

Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

### Immobiliser system (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an electronic engine immobiliser system to reduce the risk of unauthorised vehicle use.

Your immobiliser system is comprised of a small transponder in the ignition key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

### Vehicles without smart key system

With the immobiliser system, whenever you insert your ignition key into the ignition switch and turn it to ON, it checks and determines and verifies if the ignition key is valid or not.

If the key is valid, the engine will start.

If the key is invalid, the engine will not start.

### To deactivate the immobiliser system:

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the ON position.

### To activate the immobiliser system:

Turn the ignition key to the OFF position. The immobiliser system activates auto-

matically. Without a valid ignition key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

### Vehicles with smart key system

Whenever the ENGINE START/STOP buttons are changed to the ON position, the immobiliser system checks and verifies if the key is valid or not.

If the key is valid, the engine will start.

If the key is invalid, the engine will not start.

### To deactivate the immobiliser system

Change the ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.

### To activate the immobiliser system

Change the ENGINE START/STOP button to the OFF position. The immobiliser system activates automatically. Without a valid smart key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

### WARNING

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your immobiliser password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential. Do not leave this number anywhere in your vehicle.

### NOTICE

When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobiliser keys around. Otherwise the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separately in order to avoid a starting malfunction.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not put metal accessories near the ignition switch. Metal accessories may interrupt the transponder signal and may prevent the engine from being started.

**\* NOTICE**

If you need additional keys or lose your keys, Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ CAUTION**

The transponder in your ignition key is an important part of the immobiliser system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. immobiliser system malfunction could occur.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Do not change, alter or adjust the immobiliser system because it could cause the immobiliser system to malfunction. In this case, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the immobiliser system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.
- Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.

**Remote keyless entry**

**Remote keyless entry system operations**

Folding key



OSP2042489L

Smart key - Type A



OSP2042496L

Smart key - Type B



OSP2042415L

## Lock (1)

All doors are locked if the lock button is pressed whilst all doors are closed.

The hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that all doors are locked.

However, if any door, engine bonnet or tailgate remains open, the hazard warning lights will not operate. If all doors, engine bonnet and tailgate are closed after the lock button is pressed, the hazard warning lights will blink once.

## Unlock (2)

All doors are unlocked if the unlock button is pressed.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors are unlocked.

After pressing this button, the doors will lock automatically unless you open any door within 30 seconds.

## Tailgate unlock (3) (for non-power tailgate)

If you press this button for longer than a second, the lock will be released.

Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically when all doors are locked.

## Tailgate open/close (3) (for power tailgate, if equipped)

If you press this button for longer than a second the tailgate will be opened.

When the power tailgate is opened, press and hold the power tailgate open/close button to close the tailgate. If you release the button whilst the tailgate is closing, power tailgate operation will stop with a warning sound for 5 seconds.

Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically when all doors are locked.

## Remote start (4) (if equipped)

You can start the vehicle using the remote start button of the smart key.

To start the vehicle remotely:

- Lock the doors by pressing the door lock button (1) within 10 m (32 feet) distance from the vehicle.
- Press the remote start button for over 2 seconds within 4 seconds after locking the doors.

Press the remote start button once to turn off the vehicle.

If no further action for operating/driving the vehicle is taken, the vehicle will be turned off 10 minutes after starting the vehicle remotely.

## Transmitter precautions

### \* NOTICE

The transmitter will not work if any of the following occurs:

- The ignition key is in the ignition switch.
- You exceed the operating distance limit (about 10 m [30 feet]).
- The battery in the transmitter is weak.
- Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- The weather is extremely cold.
- The transmitter is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.

When the transmitter does not work correctly, open and close the door with the ignition key. If you have a problem with the transmitter, Kia recommends to con-

fact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- If the transmitter is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the transmitter could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails.

Avoid placing the transmitter and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.

**\* NOTICE**

To prevent the damaging the folding key (smart key):

- Keep the folding key (smart key) away from water or any liquid and fire. If the inside of the folding key (smart key) gets damp (due to drinks or moisture), or is heated, internal circuit may malfunction, excluding the car from the warranty.
- Avoid dropping or throwing the folding key (smart key).
- Protect the folding key (smart key) from extreme temperature.

**Smart key (if equipped)**

Type A



OSP2042492L

Type B



OSP2042414L

With a smart key, you can lock or unlock a door and even start the engine without inserting the key.

The functions of buttons on a smart key are similar to the folding key.

\* For more information, refer to "Remote keyless entry" on page 4-10.

## Smart key functions



Carrying the smart key, you may lock and unlock the vehicle doors (and tailgate). Also, you may start the engine. Refer to the following for more details.

### Locking

Pressing the button of the front driver side door handles with all doors closed and any door unlocked, locks all the doors. If all doors and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that all doors are locked.

The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 inches) from the driver side door handle. If you want to make sure that a door has locked or not, you should check pull the driver side door handle.

Even though you press the driver side door handle buttons, the doors will not lock and the chime will sound for 3 seconds if any of following occur:

- The smart key is in the vehicle.
- The ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC or ON position.
- Any door except the tailgate is open.

### Unlocking

Pressing the button of the front driver side door handles with all doors closed and locked, unlocks all the doors. The hazard warning lights blink twice to indicate that all doors are unlocked.

The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 inches) from the front driver side door handle.

When the smart key is recognized in the area of 0.7~1 m (28~40 inches) from the front driver side door handle, other people can also open the door without possession of the smart key.

After pressing the button, the doors will lock automatically unless you open any door within 30 seconds.

### Tailgate open

Press the tailgate handle switch carrying the smart key with you and open the tailgate.

Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically when all doors are locked.

### Start-up

You can start the vehicle without inserting the key.

\* For more information, refer to "ENGINE START/STOP button (if equipped)" on page 5-8.

### Smart key precautions

#### \* NOTICE

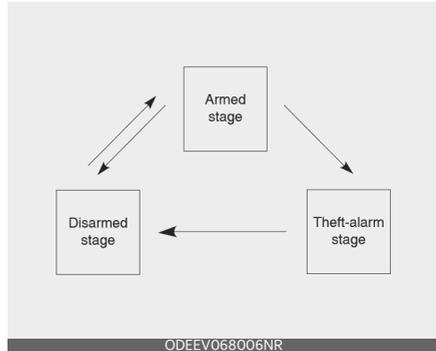
- If, for some reason, you happen to lose your smart key, you will not be able to start the engine. Tow the vehicle, if necessary, contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to

contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- A maximum of 2 smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you lose a smart key, Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
  - The smart key will not work if any of the following occurs:
    - The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the smart key.
    - The smart key is near a mobile two-way radio system or a mobile phone.
    - Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- When the smart key does not work properly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Theft-alarm system

Theft-alarm system is designed to provide protection from unauthorised entry into the vehicle.



This system is operated in three stages:

- Armed stage
- Theft-alarm stage
- Disarmed stage

If triggered, the system provides an audible alarm with blinking of the hazard warning lights.

### **CAUTION**

- Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.
- Do not change, alter or adjust the theft-alarm system because it could cause the theft-alarm system to malfunction. In this case, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends visiting an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the theft-alarm system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.

## Armed stage

Theft-alarm system goes to armed stage after 30 seconds from the doors are locked by switch on a outside door handle by a lock button on transmitter.

### Using the folding key

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Turn off the engine and remove the ignition key from the ignition switch.
2. Make sure that all doors (and tailgate), the engine bonnet are closed and latched.
3. Lock the doors by pressing the lock button on the folding key.

After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.

If any door (and tailgate) or engine bonnet remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if all doors (and tailgate) and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights blink once.

### Using the smart key

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Make sure that all doors (and tailgate) and the engine bonnet are closed and latched.
3. Do one of the following:
  - Lock the doors by pressing the button of the front outside door handle with the smart key in your possession.

After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights

will operate once to indicate that the system is armed.

If any door (and tailgate) or engine bonnet remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if all doors (and tailgate) and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights blink once.

- Lock the doors by pressing the lock button on the smart key.

After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will operate once to indicate that the system is armed.

If any door (and tailgate) or engine bonnet remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if all doors (and tailgate) and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights blink once.

### Theft-alarm stage

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs whilst the system is armed.

- A door is opened without using the folding key (or smart key).
- The tailgate is opened without using the folding key (or smart key).
- The engine bonnet is opened.

The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for approximately 30 seconds. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the folding key (or smart key).

### Disarmed stage

The system will be disarmed when:

### Folding key

- The door unlock button is pressed.

- The engine is started.
- The ignition switch is in the "ON" position for 30 seconds or more.

### Smart key

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The button of the front outside door is pressed whilst carrying the smart key.
- The engine is started.

After the doors are unlocked, the hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.

After pressing the unlock button, if any door (or tailgate) is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.

#### \* NOTICE

#### Non-immobiliser system

Avoid trying to start the engine whilst the alarm is activated. The vehicle starting motor is disabled during the theft-alarm stage.

If the system is not disarmed with the folding key, insert the key into the ignition switch, turn the ignition switch to the ON position and wait for 30 seconds. Then the system will be disarmed.

#### \* NOTICE

#### Immobiliser system

- If the system is not disarmed with the transmitter, insert the key into the ignition switch and start the engine. Then the system will be disarmed.
- If the system is not disarmed with the smart key, open the door with the mechanical key and start the engine. Then the system will be disarmed.
- If you lose your keys, Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Door locks

Know how to use the door lock so that you can lock or unlock the door if necessary.

#### Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

##### With the folding key

For more details on the operating door locks with the folding key, refer to "Remote keyless entry" on page 4-10.

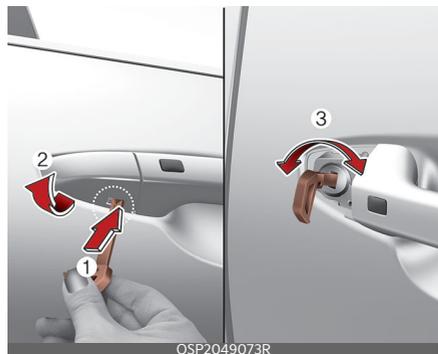
- Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure the door closed securely.

##### With the smart key

For more details on the operating door locks with the smart key, refer to "Smart key (if equipped)" on page 4-12.

- Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure the door closed securely.

##### With the mechanical key



1. Pull out the door handle.

2. Press the lever (1) located inside the bottom part of the cover with a key or flat-head screwdriver.
3. Push out the cover (2) whilst pressing the lever.
4. Turn the key (3) toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock and toward the front of the vehicle to lock.
  - If you lock the driver's door with a key, only the driver's door will lock/unlock.
  - Doors can also be locked and unlocked with the transmitter.
  - Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.
  - When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure the doors are closed securely.

#### **⚠ CAUTION**

Be careful not to damage the cover whilst removing it or misplace it after removing it.

#### **\* NOTICE**

- In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
- If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or central door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- If you don't close the door securely, the door may open again.

- Be careful that someone's body and hands are not trapped when closing the door.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

If people must spend a longer time in the vehicle whilst it is very hot or cold outside, there is risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

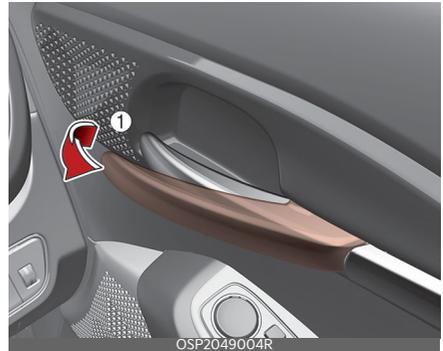
#### **⚠ CAUTION**

Do not frequently repeat opening and closing of doors, or apply excessive force to a door whilst the door closer is operating.

### **Operating door locks from inside the vehicle**

You can operate door locks with the central door lock switch.

### **With the door handle**



- Front door
  - If the inner door handle (1) is pulled when the door is locked, the door will unlock and open.
- Rear door

If the inner door handle is pulled once when the door is locked, the door will unlock.

If the inner door handle is pulled once more, the door will open.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Door lock malfunction**

If a power door lock ever fails to function whilst you are in the vehicle, try one or more of the following techniques to exit:

- Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) whilst simultaneously pulling on the door handle.
- Lower a front window and use the key to unlock the door from outside.
- Move to the cargo area and open the tailgate.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not pull the inner door handle whilst the vehicle is moving.

**With central door lock switch**

Driver side



Passenger side



Operate by pressing the central door lock switch.

- To lock all vehicle doors, press the central door lock switch (1) of driver and passenger side.
- To unlock all vehicle doors, press central door unlock switch (2) of driver and passenger side.

Any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the central door lock switch is pressed.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Doors**

- The doors should always be fully closed and locked whilst the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidental opening of the door. Locked doors will also discourage potential intruders when the vehicle stops or slows down.
- Be careful when opening doors and watch out for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door. Opening a door when something is approaching can result in an accident to cause vehicle damage or serious injury.

**⚠ WARNING****Unlocked vehicles**

Leaving your vehicle unlocked can increase the risk of vehicle theft or any possible criminal harm caused by someone hiding in your vehicle whilst you are gone.

**⚠ WARNING****Unattended children, the elderly or pets**

An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or severe injury such as heatstroke to unattended children, the elderly or pets who cannot escape the vehicle. When left or trapped in a hot vehicle, make sure to stay hydrated and avoid sun exposure through the vehicle's windscreen. Furthermore, children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle.

**Door lock/unlock features**

The vehicle is equipped with door lock/unlock features for the safety and convenience of passengers.

**Impact sensing door unlock system**

All doors will automatically unlock when an impact causes the air bags to deploy.

**Speed sensing door lock system (if equipped)**

All doors will automatically lock after the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h (10 mph).

You can activate or deactivate the auto door lock/unlock features in the Settings menu on the instrument cluster or infotainment system screen (if equipped).

**In case of an emergency**

If the electrical power door lock switch is not operating (ex. dead car battery) the only way to lock the door(s) is with the mechanical key from the outside key hole.

Doors without an outside key hole can be locked as follows:

1. Open the door.
2. Insert the key into the emergency door lock hole and turn the key to the lock position as shown.



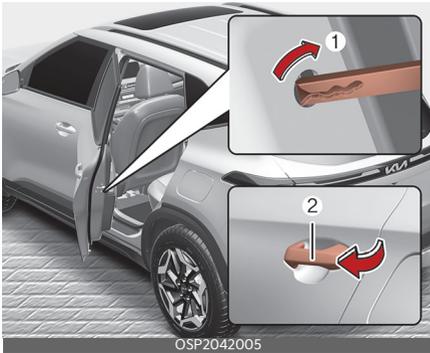
3. Close the door securely.

### \* NOTICE

If the electrical power to door lock switch is not operating (ex. dead car battery) and the tailgate is closed, you will not be able to open the tailgate until power is restored.

### Child-protector rear door lock

The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle.



The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

The child safety lock is located on the edge of each rear door. When the child safety lock is in the lock position, the rear door will not open if the inner door handle is pulled.

To lock the child safety lock, insert a key (or screwdriver) into the hole and turn it to the lock position (1).

To allow a rear door to be opened from inside the vehicle, unlock the child safety lock.

To open the rear door, pull the outside door handle (2).

### ⚠ WARNING

#### Rear door locks

If children accidentally open the rear doors whilst the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out and be severely injured or killed. To prevent children from opening the rear doors from the inside, the rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

## Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) System

The Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) is provided to help prevent exiting the vehicle with a rear passenger left in the vehicle.

- When you open the front door after opening and closing the rear door and turning off the engine, the "Check rear seat for passengers or belongings" warning message appears on the cluster.



You can activate or deactivate the ROA from the User settings mode in the cluster LCD display.

The option can be found under the following menu:

1. Press the MODE button (📄) several times on the steering wheel until 'User settings' menu appears on the LCD.
2. Select 'Convenience → Rear Occupant Alert' with the MOVE switch (↖ / ↘) and the OK button on the steering wheel.

If your vehicle is equipped with the infotainment system, the option can be found under the following menu:

1. Select 'Settings' on the infotainment system.

2. Select 'Vehicle → Convenience → Rear Occupant Alert' on the infotainment system screen.

### \* INFORMATION

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### ⚠ WARNING

The Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) system does not actually detect objects or people in the rear seat. By using a rear door opened and closed history, the system informs the driver that there may be something in the rear seat.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- The Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) system uses a rear door opened and closed history.
- The history is reset after the driver turns off ignition normally, exits the vehicle and locks the door remotely using the remote keyless entry. So even if a rear door does not reopen, the ROA system alert can occur.
- For example, after the ROA system alert occurs, if the driver does not lock the door, and drives again, the alert can occur.

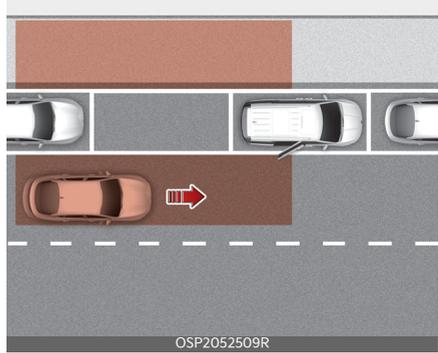
### ⚠ WARNING

The door lock system may not work if the electrical system is compromised. Accordingly, please train children passengers regarding how to open the car door manually before an emergency situation arises. That way, they would be

able to open the door manually in the event an emergency situation arises.

---

## Safe Exit Warning (SEW) (if equipped)



After the vehicle stops, when an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected as soon as a passenger opens a door, Safe Exit Warning will warn the driver with a warning message and an audible warning to help prevent a collision.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

The timing of the warning may vary depending on the speed of the approaching vehicle.

---

## Detecting sensor

[1]: Rear corner radar



Refer to the picture for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

### \* NOTICE

For more details on the precautions of the rear corner radars, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) (if equipped)" on page 5-84.

## Safe Exit Warning settings

### Safe exit



With the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position, and select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Driving safety → Safe exit' on the instrument cluster or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Driving safety → Safe exit' on the infotainment system.

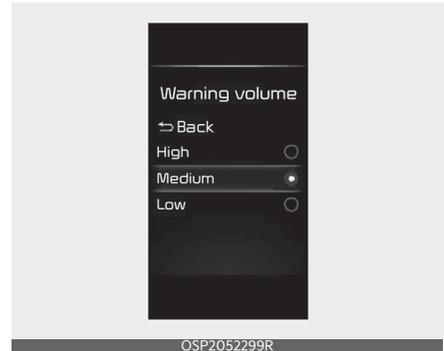
### ▲ WARNING

If 'Safe exit' is deselected, Safe Exit Warning cannot warn you. The driver should always be aware of unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.

### \* NOTICE

If the engine is restarted, Safe Exit Warning will maintain the last setting.

## Warning methods (or Warning volume)



You can adjust the Warning methods (or Warning volume) with the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position.

- Warning volume: Select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Warning volume' on the instrument cluster or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume)' on the infotainment system.
- Driving safety priority: Select 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume) → Driving Safety Priority' on the infotainment system. For safe driving, the audio volume will temporarily decrease to warn the driver with the audible warning.

**\* INFORMATION**

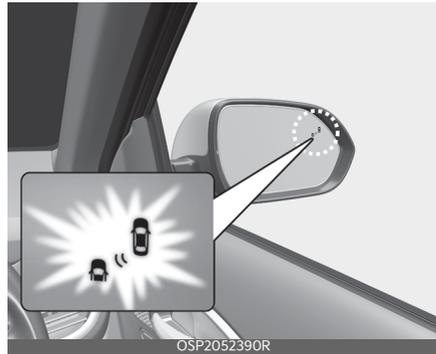
- Ensure that Warning methods (or Warning volume) you have set may apply to the Warning volume of other Driver assistance systems.
- Warning methods (or Warning volume) will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- Descriptions of each Driver assistance system may be slightly different from the owner's manual after updating the software of your infotainment system. In this case, scan the QR code in the infotainment system manual to access the web manual for checking the changes.
- Depending on your region or update, the menu may be displayed as 'Warning sound', 'Warning methods' or 'Warning volume'.

**Safe Exit Warning operation**

Safe Exit Warning warns the following actions.

- Collision warning when exiting vehicle

**Collision warning when exiting vehicle**



The warning light on the side view mirror will blink and the warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound.

- Safe Exit Warning will warn under the following circumstances:
  - Your driving speed: below 3 km/h (2 mph)
  - The speed of the approaching vehicle from the rear: above 6 km/h (4 mph)

**⚠ WARNING**

- For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
- If any other function's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Safe Exit Warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Safe Exit Warning if the surrounding is noisy.
- Safe Exit Warning does not operate in all situations or cannot prevent all collisions.
- Safe Exit Warning may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions. Always check vehicle surroundings.
- The driver and passengers are responsible for accidents that occurs whilst exiting the vehicle. Always check the surroundings before you exit the vehicle.

**\* NOTICE**

- After the engine is turned off, Safe Exit Warning operates approximately for 3 minutes, but turns off immediately if the doors are locked.
- Images or colours may be displayed differently depends on the instrument cluster specifications or theme.

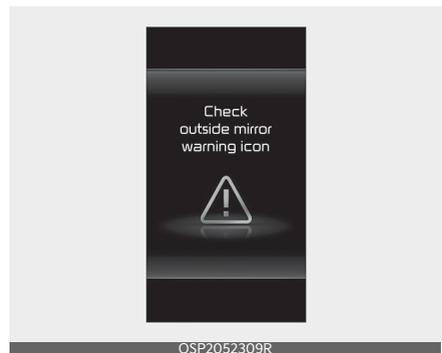
**Safe Exit Warning malfunction and limitations**

**Safe Exit Warning malfunction**



4

When Safe Exit Warning is not working properly, the warning message will appear on the cluster, and the master warning light (⚠) will appear on the cluster. Have Safe Exit Warning be inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends visiting an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.



When the outside rear view mirror warning light is not working properly, the warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master warning light (⚠) will appear on the cluster. Have Safe Exit Warning be

inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends visiting an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Safe Exit Warning disabled



When the rear bumper around the rear-side radar or sensor is covered with foreign matters, such as snow or rain, or installing a trailer or carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Safe Exit Warning. If this occurs, the 'Blind-spot safety systems disabled. Radar blocked' warning message will appear on the cluster.

Safe Exit Warning will operate normally when such foreign matters or trailer, etc. is removed, and then the vehicle is restarted.

If Safe Exit Warning does not operate normally after it is removed, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Safe Exit Warning may not properly operate.

- Safe Exit Warning may not properly operate in an area (e.g., open terrain), where any substance are not detected right after the vehicle is turned on, or when the detecting sensor is blocked with foreign material right after the vehicle is turned on.

#### **⚠ CAUTION**

Turn off Safe Exit Warning to install a trailer, carrier, etc., or remove the trailer, carrier, etc. to use Safe Exit Warning.

### Limitations of Safe Exit Warning

Safe Exit Warning may not operate normally, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Getting out of the vehicle where trees or grass are overgrown.
- Getting out of the vehicle where the road is wet.
- The approaching vehicle is very fast or very slow.

#### **⚠ CAUTION**

For more details on the limitations of the rear corner radar, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) (if equipped)" on page 5-84.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- Safe Exit Warning may not operate normally if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
- Safe Exit Warning may not operate for 3 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the rear corner radars are initialized.

## Tailgate

### ⚠️ WARNING

#### Exhaust fumes

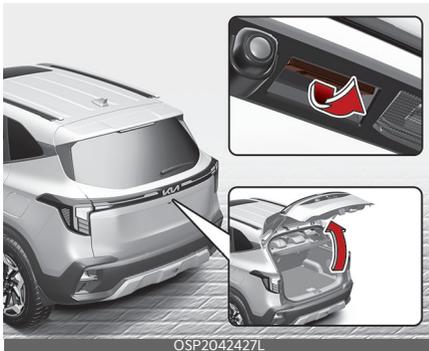
If you drive with the tailgate opened, you will draw dangerous exhaust fumes into your vehicle which can cause **SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH** to vehicle occupants. If you must drive with the tailgate opened, keep the air vents and all windows open so that additional outside air comes into the vehicle.

### ⚠️ WARNING

#### Rear cargo area

Occupants should never ride in the rear cargo area where no restraints are available. To avoid injury in the event of an accident or sudden stops, occupants should always be properly restrained.

## Opening the tailgate



The tailgate is locked or unlocked when all doors are locked or unlocked with the key, folding key, smart key or central door lock/unlock switch.

1. To unlock the tailgate only, press the tailgate unlock button on the folding

key or smart key for approximately 1 second.

2. To open the tailgate, press the handle and pull it up.
3. With the smart key in your possession, press the tailgate handle switch and open the tailgate. (if equipped)

Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate locks automatically. (All doors must be locked.)

### \* NOTICE

In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

### ⚠️ WARNING

The tailgate swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the tailgate.

### ⚠️ CAUTION

Make certain that you close the tailgate before driving your vehicle. Possible damage may occur to the tailgate gas lifters and attaching hardware if the tailgate is not closed prior to driving.

## Closing the tailgate



1. Lower and push down the tailgate firmly.
2. Make sure that the tailgate is securely latched.

**⚠ WARNING**

Make sure your hands, feet and other parts of your body are safely out of the way before closing the tailgate.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Make sure nothing is near the tailgate latch and striker whilst closing the tailgate. It may damage the tailgate's latch.

**Emergency tailgate safety release**

Your vehicle is equipped with the emergency tailgate safety release lever located on the bottom of the tailgate.



If you have to open the tailgate urgently inside the tailgate due to battery discharge, external handle failure, or other reasons.

The tailgate can be opened by doing as follows:

1. Input the mechanical key into the hole.
2. Push the mechanical key to the right (1).
3. Push up the tailgate.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not grasp the part supporting the tailgate (gas lifter), as this may cause **SERIOUS INJURY**.



## Power tailgate (if equipped)

### Power tailgate operating conditions

The power tailgate operates when the gear is in P (Park) with the engine running. However, the power tailgate will operate regardless of the gear position when the engine is off. Also, the tailgate can be opened only when vehicle speed is below 3 km/h (1.8 mph).

For safety, before attempting to open or close the tailgate, make sure the vehicle is in P (Park).

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle. Children may operate the power tailgate. Doing so can result in injury to themselves or others and can damage the vehicle.
- Make sure that there are no people or objects in the path of the power tailgate or smart tailgate prior to use. Serious injury, damage to the vehicle or damage to surrounding objects (for example, walls, ceilings, vehicles, etc.) may result if contact with the tailgate occurs.



- A tailgate covered with snow or equipped with heavy objects (e.g. bike racks, ladders) may not be opened; with the tailgate open, it may be accidentally closed, causing injuries to anyone around the vehicle.
- Do not open the tailgate if the tailgate is covered with snow or equipped with heavy objects.
- Make sure to remove snow and heavy objects before opening the tailgate.

#### **\* NOTICE**

- Do not close or open the tailgate manually. This may cause damage to the power tailgate. If it is necessary to close or open the tailgate manually when the battery is discharged or disconnected, do not apply excessive force.
- Do not operate the power tailgate more than 10 times continuously when the engine is not running. Use the power tailgate with the engine running when the power tailgate is used repeatedly to prevent battery discharge.
- Do not leave the power tailgate open for a long period of time. This may drain the battery.
- Do not apply excessive force when the power tailgate is operating. Doing so could result in vehicle damage.
- Do not grab or hold on to the tailgate support struts at any time. Damage to the tailgate support struts could result. Deformation of the tailgate support struts may cause vehicle damage and personal injury may occur.



OSP2042569L

- Do not modify or repair any part of the power tailgate by yourself. This must be done by a professional workshop. Kia recommend to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Do not operate the power tailgate under the following conditions. The power tailgate may not operate properly.
  - One side of the vehicle is lifted to inspect the vehicle or change a tyre
  - Parking on an uneven road such as a slope, etc.
- Close the tailgate completely and lock all doors and tailgate using the central door lock switch before using an automatic car wash.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly on the power tailgate outside open/close switch. The tailgate may open unintentionally.

**\* INFORMATION**

- If the tailgate is not fully closed and vehicle speed is at or above 3 km/h (1.8 mph), a warning will sound 10 times. Immediately park the vehicle at a safe place, close the tailgate, and check that the tailgate open warning on the instrument cluster is turned off.

- In cold and wet climates, the outside power tailgate open/close switch may not work properly due to freezing conditions. If this occurs, remove the ice before using the outside power tailgate open/close switch or use the power tailgate open/close button on the smart key or the instrument panel.
- Operating the power tailgate more than 5 times continuously could cause damage to the operating motor. If this occurs, the power tailgate will not operate to prevent the motor from overheating. If any of the power tailgate buttons are pressed to try to open the tailgate, the chime will sound 3 times, but the tailgate will remain closed. Allow the power tailgate system to cool for about 1 minute before operating the system again.

**Operating the power tailgate**

**Power tailgate open/close button (Smart key, Instrument panel)**



OSP2042560L



When the tailgate is closed, press the power tailgate open/close button for 1 second. The power tailgate opens with a warning sound.

When the power tailgate is opened, press and hold the power tailgate open/close button to close the tailgate.

If you release the button whilst the tailgate is closing, power tailgate operation will stop with a warning sound for 5 seconds.

Also, if the smart key is not within operation range (approximately 10 m) from the vehicle, power tailgate operation will stop with a warning sound for 5 seconds.

### Power tailgate open/close switch (Outside the power tailgate)



When the tailgate is closed, press the power tailgate open/close switch to open the tailgate.

If the vehicle is locked, press the power tailgate open/close switch with the smart key in your possession.

If the tailgate is unlocked, the tailgate will open or close with a warning sound when the power tailgate open/close switch is pressed without carrying the smart key.

### Power tailgate open/close button (Inside the power tailgate)



Press the power tailgate open/close button. The tailgate opens or closes with a warning sound.

### Automatic reverse

During power tailgate operation if the power tailgate senses any obstacle, the tailgate will stop or will fully open. The automatic reverse feature may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The automatic reverse feature may not detect the resistance if the detected resistance is below a certain level, or if the tailgate is almost fully closed near the latched position.

- The automatic reverse feature may operate if a strong impact is applied with no obstructions placed.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Never intentionally place any object or part of your body in the path of the power tailgate to make sure the automatic reverse feature operates. Serious injury, or damage to the vehicle or object may occur.

### **\* INFORMATION**

The power tailgate may stop operating if the automatic reverse feature operates more than two times whilst attempting to open or close the tailgate. If this occurs, carefully open or close the tailgate manually, and then after 30 seconds try to operate the power tailgate automatically again.

## **Setting the power tailgate**

To use each feature, you must select the opening speed or opening height from the settings menu. Deselect the settings when you do not want to use the feature.

### **Power tailgate opening speed**

To adjust the power tailgate speed, select 'User settings → Door → Power Tailgate Opening Speed → Fast/Slow' in the instrument cluster or 'Settings → Vehicle → Door → Power Tailgate Opening Speed → Fast/Slow' in the infotainment system. (Default setting is Fast)

### **Power tailgate opening height**

To adjust the power tailgate opening height, select 'User settings → Door → Power Tailgate height → Full Open/Level 3/Level 2/Level 1/User height setting' in the instrument cluster or 'Settings →

Vehicle → Door → Power Tailgate height → Full Open/Level 3/Level 2/Level 1/User height setting' in the infotainment system.

### **\* INFORMATION**

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## **User height setting**

1. Position the tailgate manually to the height you prefer.
2. Press the power tailgate open/close button located inside the tailgate for more than 3 seconds.

If 'User height setting' is selected for the power tailgate opening height, the power tailgate will automatically open to the height manually set by you.

### **\* INFORMATION**

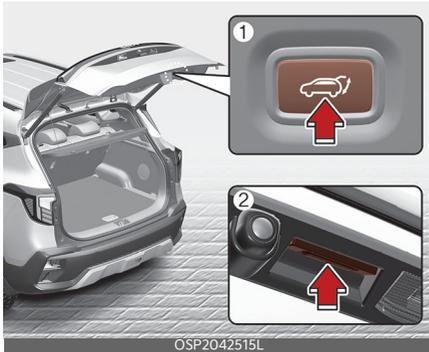
- If the power tailgate opening height has not been manually set, the power tailgate will fully open when 'User height setting' from the infotainment system is selected.
- If one of the height setting (Full Open/Level 3/Level 2/Level 1) is selected from the settings menu in the infotainment system, and then 'User height setting' is selected, the tailgate will open to the height manually set by you.
- The power tailgate opening speed and opening height settings change according to the linked User Profile. If the User Profile is changed, power tailgate opening speed and opening

height settings will change accordingly.

## Resetting the power tailgate

In some circumstances resetting the power tailgate operation may need to be performed. Some instances where resetting the power tailgate may be required include:

- When the 12-volt battery is recharged
- When the 12-volt battery is reinstalled after removal or replacement
- When the related fuse is reinstalled after removal or replacement



1. With the engine off or running, put the gear in P (Park).
2. Press the power tailgate open/close inner button (1) and outer switch (2) simultaneously until a chime sounds.
3. Slowly close the tailgate manually.
4. Press the power tailgate open/close outer switch. The power tailgate will open with a chime sound.

Wait until the tailgate fully opens to complete resetting. If the tailgate stops before it is fully open, resetting cannot be completed.

## \* INFORMATION

If the power tailgate does not operate properly after the above procedure, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Emergency tailgate safety release



To unlock and open the tailgate manually from inside the luggage compartment, perform the following procedure:

1. Insert a long, flat object, such as a key into the opening at the bottom of the tailgate.
2. Slide the latch in the direction of the arrow(1) to unlock the tailgate.
3. Push the tailgate to open.

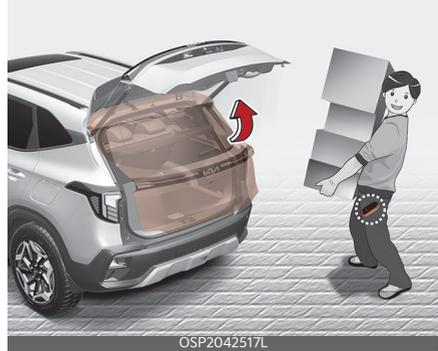
## ⚠ WARNING

- For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release latch in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the luggage compartment.
- No one, including animals, should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very

dangerous location in the event of an accident.

- Use the release latch for emergencies only. Use extreme caution, especially whilst the vehicle is in motion.

## Smart tailgate (if equipped)



On the vehicle equipped with a smart key, the tailgate can be opened with no-touch activation using the smart tailgate system.

### How to use the smart tailgate

The tailgate can be opened with notouch activation satisfying all the conditions below.

- After 15 seconds when all doors are closed and locked
- Positioned in the detecting area for more than 3 seconds.

#### \* NOTICE

The smart tailgate does not operate when:

- The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and is continuously detected.
- A door is not locked or closed.
- The smart key is in the vehicle.

### 1. Setting

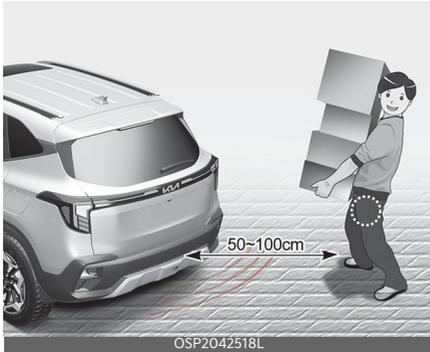
- Instrument cluster  
Select 'User settings → Door → Smart Tailgate'.

- Infotainment system (if equipped)  
Select 'Settings → Vehicle → Door → Smart Tailgate'.

**\* INFORMATION**

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

**2. Detect and Alert**



If you are positioned in the detecting area (50 ~ 100 cm (20 ~ 40 inches) behind the vehicle) carrying a smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and chime will sound for about 3 seconds to alert you the smart key has been detected and the tailgate will open.

**\* NOTICE**

Do not approach the detecting area if you do not want the tailgate to open. If you have unintentionally entered the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts to operate, leave the detecting area with the smart key. The tailgate will stay closed.

**3. Automatic opening**

The hazard warning lights will blink and chime will sound 2 times and then the tailgate will slowly open.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Make certain that you close the tailgate before driving your vehicle.
- Make sure nobody or objects around the tailgate before opening or closing the tailgate.
- Make sure objects in the rear cargo area do not fall out when opening the tailgate on a slope way. It may cause serious injury.
- Make sure to deactivate the smart tailgate function when washing your vehicle. Otherwise, the tailgate may open inadvertently.
- The key should be kept out of reach of children. Children may inadvertently open the smart tailgate whilst playing around the rear area of the vehicle.

4

**How to deactivate the smart tailgate function using the smart key**



1. Door lock
2. Door unlock

### 3. Tailgate open

If you press any button of the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the smart tailgate function will be deactivated.

Make sure to be aware of how to deactivate the smart tailgate function for emergency situations.

#### \* NOTICE

- If you press the door unlock button (2), the smart tailgate function will be deactivated temporarily. But, if you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the smart tailgate function will be activated again.
- If you press the tailgate open button (3) for more than 1 second, the tailgate opens.
- If you press the door lock button (1) or tailgate open button (3) when the smart tailgate function is not in the Detect and Alert stage, the smart tailgate function will not be deactivated.
- In case you have deactivated the smart tailgate function by pressing the smart key button and opened a door, the smart tailgate function can be activated again by closing and locking all doors.

### Detecting area



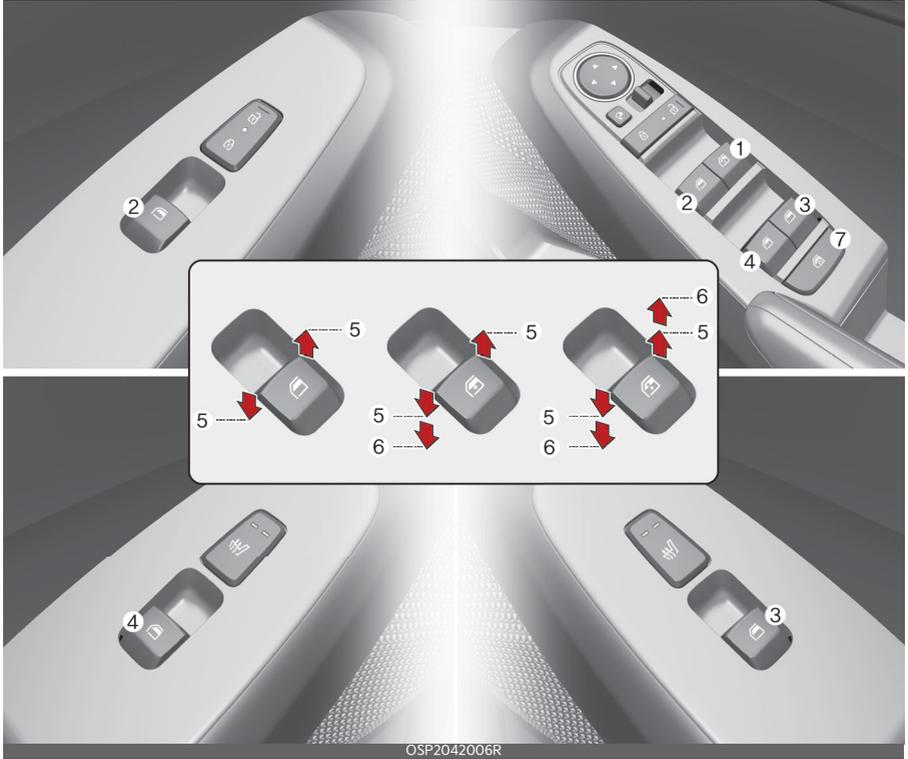
- The smart tailgate operates with a welcome alert if the smart key is detected within 50 ~ 100 cm (20 ~ 40 inches) from the tailgate.
- The alert stops at once if the smart key is positioned outside the detecting area during the Detect and Alert stage.

#### \* NOTICE

- The smart tailgate function will not work if any of the following occurs:
  - The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
  - The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
  - Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- The detecting range may decrease or increase when:
  - One side of the tyre is raised to replace a tyre or to inspect the vehicle.
  - The vehicle is slantingly parked on a slope or unpaved road, etc.

## Windows

The doors of this vehicle are equipped with power windows that can be operated by a switch.



1. Driver's door power window switch
2. Front passenger's door power window switch
3. Rear door (left) power window switch
4. Rear door (right) power window switch
5. Window opening and closing
6. Automatic power window up\*/down\*
7. Power window lock switch

\*: if equipped

**\* NOTICE**

In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

The ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button must be in the ON position for power windows to operate.

Each door has a power window switch that controls the door's window. The driver has a power window lock button which can block the operation of rear passenger windows. The power windows can be operated for approximately 3 minutes after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK/OFF position. However, if the front doors are opened, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 3 minutes period.

The driver's door has a master power window switch that controls all the windows in the vehicle.

If the window cannot be closed because it is blocked by objects, remove the objects and close the window.

**\* NOTICE**

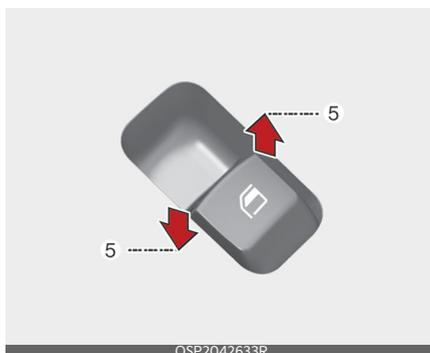
Whilst driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) in an open (or partially open position), your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is a normal occurrence and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately 2.5 cm (1 inch). If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly reduce the size of the sunroof opening.

**⚠ WARNING**

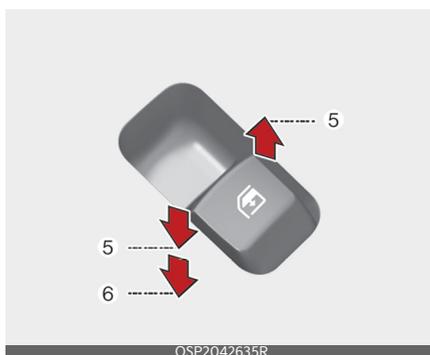
Do not install any accessories in the area of windows. It may impact jam protection.

**Window opening and closing**

You can open and close windows using the power window switch.

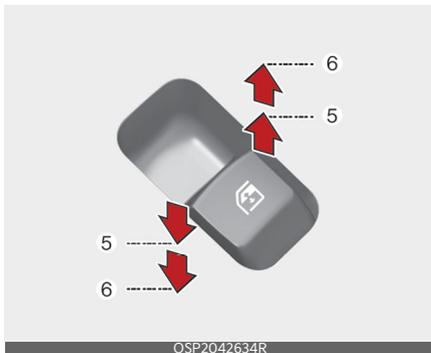
**Type A**

To open or close a window, press down or pull up the front portion of the corresponding switch to the first detent position (5).

**Type B - Auto down window (if equipped) (if equipped)**

Pressing the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is in operation, pull up the switch momentarily to the opposite direction of the window movement.

**Type C - Auto up/down window (if equipped) (if equipped)**



Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or raises the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

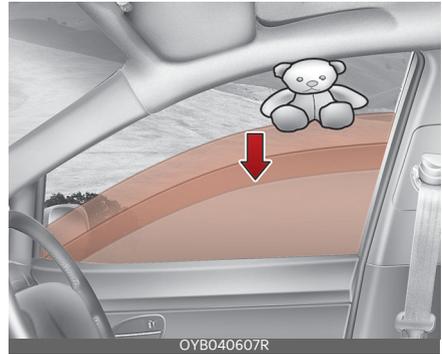
**To reset the power windows**

If the power window does not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
2. Close the window and continue pulling up the power window switch for at

least 1 second after the window is completely closed.

**Automatic reversal (if equipped)**



If the upward movement of the window is blocked by an object or part of the body, the window will detect the resistance and will stop upward movement. The window will then lower approximately 30 cm (11.8 inches) to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance whilst the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm (1 inch).

And if the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reversal feature, the automatic window reversal will not operate.

**\* NOTICE**

The automatic reverse feature for the window is only active when the "auto up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch. The automatic reverse feature will not operate if the window is raised using the halfway position on the power window switch.

**⚠ WARNING**

Always check for obstructions before raising any window to avoid injuries or vehicle damage. If an object less than 4 mm (0.16 of an inch) in diameter is caught between the window glass and the upper window channel, the automatic reverse window may not detect the resistance and will not stop and reverse direction.

**⚠ WARNING**

The automatic reverse feature is not activated whilst resetting power window system.

Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.

**Power window lock button**

The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passengers' doors by pressing the power window lock button to the lock position (pressed).



When the power window lock button is pressed:

- The driver's master control can operate all passengers' power windows.

- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passengers' control cannot operate the rear passenger's power window.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.
- Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposite directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.

**⚠ WARNING****Windows**

- NEVER leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.
- NEVER leave any child unattended in the vehicle. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or otherwise injure themselves or others.
- Always double check to make sure all arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.
- Do not allow children play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock button in the LOCK position (pressed). SERIOUS INJURY can result from unintentional window operation by the child.

- Do not extend heads or any limbs outside the window whilst the vehicle is in motion.

### Remote window closing/opening system (if equipped)

If auto window up/down function (safety window function) is equipped, you can still control the corresponding windows movement with engine turned off.



- Press the door lock button (1) for more than 3 seconds. The window moves up after the doors are locked, as long as you press the door lock button (1).  
The window movement stops, when you release the door lock button (1).
- Press the door unlock button (2) for more than 3 seconds. The window moves down after the doors are unlocked, as long as you press the door unlock button (2). The window movement stops, when you release the door lock button (2).
- Remote window operation can be activated or deactivated from the Settings menu.
  - Instrument cluster  
Select 'User settings → Door → Remote window control'.

- Infotainment system (if equipped)  
Select 'Settings → Vehicle → Door → Remote window control'.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

- The remote window closing/opening function may abruptly stop, when you move away from your vehicle during operation. Stay in close proximity from your vehicle, whilst monitoring the window movement.
- Be careful when using the remote window opening function, as the doors will be unlocked.

#### \* INFORMATION

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## Bonnet

The bonnet serves as a cover for the engine compartment.

Open the bonnet if maintenance works needs to be performed in the engine compartment or if you need to look at the compartment.

### Opening the bonnet

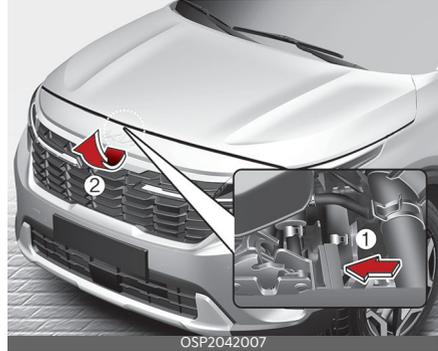
1. Pull the release lever to unlatch the bonnet. The bonnet should pop open slightly.



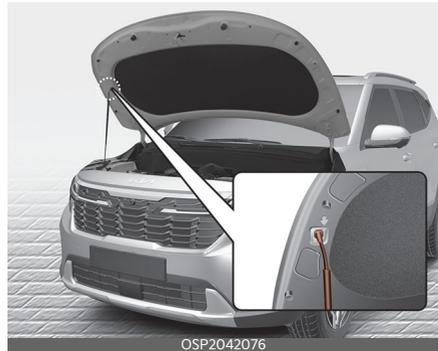
#### **⚠ WARNING**

Open the bonnet after turning off the engine on a flat surface, shifting the shift lever to the P (Park) position for Automatic Transmission/Intelligent Variable Transmission and to the 1st (First) gear or R (Reverse) for Manual Transmission, and setting the parking brake.

2. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the bonnet slightly, push the secondary bonnet release lever (1) up side and lift the bonnet (2).



3. Pull out the support rod.



4. Hold the bonnet opened with the support rod.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

#### **HOT parts**

Grasp the support rod in the area wrapped in rubber. The rubber will help prevent you from being burned by hot metal when the engine is hot.

#### **Bonnet open warning**

The bonnet warning message will appear on the LCD display when bonnet is open.



The warning chime will operate when the vehicle is being driven at or above 7 km/h (4 mph) with the bonnet open.

### Closing the bonnet

- Before closing the bonnet, check the following:
  - All filler caps in the engine compartment must be correctly installed.
  - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
- Lower the bonnet until it is about 30 cm above the closed position and let it drop. Make sure that it locks into place.



- Check that the bonnet has engaged properly.

- If the bonnet can be raised slightly, it is not properly engaged.
- Open it again and close it with a little more force.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- Before closing the bonnet, ensure that all obstructions are removed from the bonnet opening. Closing the bonnet with an obstruction present in the bonnet opening may result in property damage or severe personal injury.
- Do not leave gloves, rags or any other combustible material in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause a heat-induced fire.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- Always double check to be sure that the bonnet is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the bonnet could open whilst the vehicle is being driven, causing total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.
- Do not move the vehicle with the bonnet raised. The view will be blocked and the bonnet could fall or be damaged.

## Fuel filler door

### Opening the fuel filler door

The fuel filler door must be opened from inside the vehicle by pulling up on the fuel filler door opener located on the front floor area on the driver's seat.

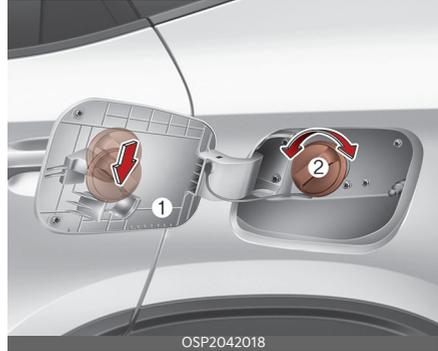
#### \* NOTICE

If the fuel filler door does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the door to break the ice and release the door. Do not pry on the door. If necessary, spray around the door with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

1. Stop the engine.
2. To open the fuel filler door, pull up the fuel filler door opener.



3. Pull open the fuel filler door (1).



4. To remove the cap, turn the fuel filler cap (2) counterclockwise.
5. Refuel as needed.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Before refuelling, be sure to check what type of fuel is used for your vehicle. If you put diesel fuel into a petrol-powered vehicle or petrol fuel into a diesel-powered vehicle, it may affect the fuel system and cause serious damage to the vehicle.

### Closing the fuel filler door

1. To install the cap, turn it clockwise until it "clicks". This indicates that the cap is securely tightened.
2. Close the fuel filler door and push it lightly and make sure that it is securely closed.

#### ⚠ WARNING

### Refuelling

- If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and thus subject you to the risk of fire and burns. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.

- Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.
- Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

## WARNING

### Refuelling dangers

Automotive fuels are flammable materials. When refuelling, please note the following guidelines carefully. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in severe personal injury, severe burns or death by fire or explosion.

- Read and follow all warnings at the gas station facility.
- Before refuelling note the location of the Emergency Petrol Shut-Off, if available, at the gas station facility.
- Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching another metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source.
- Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refuelling since you can generate static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric (polyester, satin, nylon, etc.) capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapours resulting in rapid burning. If you must re-enter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other petrol source.
- When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refuelling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. Once refuelling has begun, contact with the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete.  
Use only approved portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store petrol.
- Do not use mobile phones whilst refuelling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from mobile phones can potentially ignite fuel vapours causing a fire.
- When refuelling, always shut the engine off. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. Once refuelling is complete, check to make sure the filler cap and filler door are securely closed, before starting the engine.
- DO NOT use matches or a lighter and DO NOT SMOKE or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle whilst at a gas station especially during refuelling. Automotive fuel is highly flammable and result in fire when ignited.
- If a fire breaks out during refuelling, leave the vicinity of the vehicle, and immediately contact the manager of the gas station and then contact the local fire department. Follow any safety instructions they provide.

## CAUTION

- Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" on page 1-2.

- If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, use only Kia Genuine Parts or those of an equivalent standard part for your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system.
  - Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.
  - After refuelling, make sure the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.
- 

## Sunroof (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof switch located on the overhead console.



The sunroof can only be operated when the ignition switch or the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ON or START position. The sunroof can be operated for approximately 3 minutes after the ignition switch or the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC or LOCK/OFF position. However, if the front door is open, the sunroof cannot be operated even within the 3 minutes period.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Adjust the sunroof or sunshade when your vehicle stops. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause injury, or property damage.
  - Do not leave the engine running and the key in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Unattended children could operate the sunroof, which could result in serious injury.
  - Do not sit on the top of the vehicle. It may cause injury or vehicle damage.
-

**\* NOTICE**

Do not operate the sunroof when roof bars are installed on the vehicle or when there is luggage on the on the roof.

**Sunshade**



Use the sunshade to block direct sunlight coming through the sunroof glass. Open or close the sunshade by hand.

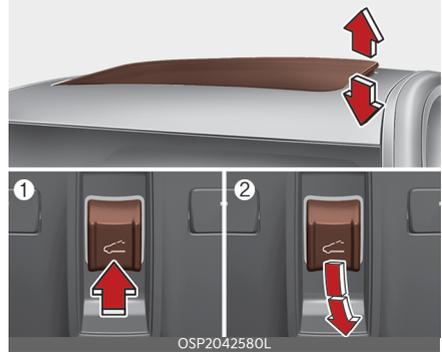
**\* NOTICE**

The sunshade will open automatically when the sunroof glass moves, but the sunshade does not close automatically when the sunroof glass is closed. Also, only the sunshade cannot be closed when the sunroof glass is opened.

**\* NOTICE**

Do not pull the sunshade up or down, or apply excessive force as such action may damage the sunshade or cause it to malfunction.

**Tilt open/close**



1. Tilt open
2. Tilt close

- Push the sunroof switch upward, the sunroof glass will tilt open.
- Push the sunroof switch forward when the sunroof glass is tilt opened, the sunroof glass closes.

The sunroof glass tilts open or closes whilst the switch is pushed.

**\* NOTICE**

The sunroof glass cannot slide open and tilt open at the same time. You cannot tilt the sunroof glass open whilst the sunroof glass is slide open. Also, you cannot slide the sunroof glass open whilst the sunroof is tilt open. Slide open or tilt open the sunroof glass when the sunroof glass is completely closed.

### Slide open/close



- Push the sunroof switch rearward, the sunshade and sunroof glass will slide open. Push the sunroof switch forward, only the sunroof glass closes.
- Push the sunroof switch forward or rearward to the first detent position, the sunroof glass moves until the switch is released.
- Push the sunroof switch forward or rearward to the second detent position, the sunroof glass will operate automatically (auto slide feature). To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof switch in any direction.
- The sunroof glass stops halfway (first detent position) before it is fully opened. To fully open the sunroof glass, push the sunroof switch rearward once more. At this time, the sunroof glass opens only whilst the switch is pushed.

#### \* NOTICE

To reduce wind noise whilst driving, we recommend you to drive at the recommended position (first detent position) before the maximum slide open position.

### Automatic reversal



If the sunroof glass senses any obstacle whilst it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction then stop at a certain position. The auto reverse function may not work if an object thin or soft is caught between the sliding sunroof glass and sunroof sash.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- Make sure heads, hands, arms or any other body parts or objects are out of the way before operating the sunroof. Body parts or objects may get caught causing injuries or vehicle damage.
- Never deliberately use your body parts to test the automatic reversal function. The sunroof glass may reverse direction, but there is a risk of injury.

#### \* NOTICE

- Do not continue to push the sunroof switch after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the sunroof motor could occur.
- Continuous operations such as slide open/close, tilt open/close, etc. may cause the motor or sunroof system to malfunction.

- Regularly remove any accumulated dust on the sunroof rail.
- Dust accumulated between the sunroof and roof panel can make noise. Open the sunroof and remove dust regularly using a clean cloth.
- Do not try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice. The sunroof may not work properly and may break if opened by force.
- Do not open or drive with the sunroof glass open immediately after rain or washing the vehicle. Water may wet the interior of the vehicle.
- Do not extend any luggage outside the sunroof whilst driving. Vehicle damage may occur if the vehicle suddenly stops.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not extend your head, arms, body parts or objects outside the sunroof whilst driving. Injuries may occur if the vehicle suddenly stops.

### **Resetting the sunroof**



In some circumstances resetting the sunroof operation may need to be per-

formed. Some instances where resetting the sunroof may be required include:

- When the 12-volt battery is either disconnected or discharged
- When the sunroof fuse is replaced
- If the sunroof one-touch AUTO OPEN/CLOSE operation is not functioning properly

Sunroof resetting procedure:

1. It is recommended to perform the reset procedure with the vehicle engine running. Start the vehicle in P (Park).
2. Make sure the sunroof glass is in the fully closed position. If the sunroof glass is open, push the switch forward until the sunroof glass is fully closed.
3. Release the switch when the sunroof glass is fully closed.
4. Push the switch forward until the sunroof glass moves slightly. Then release the switch.
5. Once again push and hold the sunroof switch forward until the sunroof glass slides open and close. Do not release the switch until the operation is completed. If you release the switch during operation, start the procedure again from step 2.

### **\* NOTICE**

If the sunroof does not reset when the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, or the sunroof fuse is blown, the sunroof may not operate normally.

## Sunroof open warning



If the driver turns off the engine when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for several seconds and the sunroof open warning will appear on the cluster LCD display. Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

### ⚠ CAUTION

Make sure the sunroof is closed fully when leaving your vehicle. If the sunroof is left open, rain or snow may wet the interior of the vehicle. Also, leaving the sunroof open when the vehicle is unattended may invite theft.

## Steering wheel

The steering wheel of this vehicle is equipped with the Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS) system.

### Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS)

Power steering uses the motor to assist you in steering the vehicle.

If the engine is off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, the vehicle may still be steered, but it will require increased steering effort.

The MDPS is controlled by the power steering control unit which senses the steering wheel torque and vehicle speed to command the motor.

The steering effort becomes heavier as the vehicle's speed increases and becomes lighter as the vehicle's speed decreases for better control of the steering wheel.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### \* NOTICE

The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:

- The MDPS warning light does not appear.
- The steering effort is high immediately after turning the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button on. This happens as the MDPS system performs the diagnostics. When the diagnostics is completed, the steering effort will return to its normal condition.

- A click noise may be heard from the MDPS relay after the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button is turned to the ON or LOCK/OFF position.
- Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or at a low driving speed.
- When the abnormality is detected in the Motor Driven Power Steering system, a deadly accident prevention purposes, steering assist functions will be stopped. At this time, the instrument panel warning light turns on or blinks and the power to manipulate the steering will be off. Please check immediately after moving the vehicle to a safe zone.
- The steering effort increases if the steering wheel is rotated continuously when the vehicle is not in motion. However, after a few minutes, it will return to its normal conditions.
- If the Motor Driven Power Steering system does not operate normally, the warning light will appear on the instrument cluster. The steering wheel may become difficult to control or operate abnormally. In this case, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- When you operate the steering wheel in low temperature, abnormal noise could occur. If temperature rises, the noise will disappear. This is a normal condition.

## Tilt & telescopic steering wheel

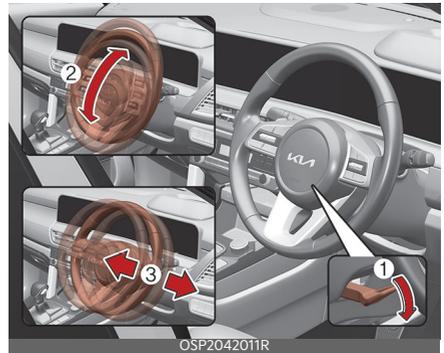
A tilt and telescopic steering wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can also raise it to give your legs more room when you exit and enter the vehicle.

The steering wheel should be positioned so that it is comfortable for you to drive, whilst permitting you to see the instrument panel warning lights and gauges.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Never adjust the angle of the steering wheel whilst driving. You may lose steering control and cause severe personal injury, death or accidents.
- After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.

## Adjusting steering wheel angle and height



1. To change the steering wheel angle, pull down the lock release lever (1).
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and height (3). Move the steering wheel, so it points toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument panel warning lights and

gauges. After adjusting, pull up the lock.

3. Pull up the lock-release lever to lock the steering wheel in place.  
Push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.
4. Be sure to adjust the steering wheel to the desired position before driving.

### \* NOTICE

After adjustment, sometimes the lock-release lever may not lock the steering wheel.

It is not a malfunction. This occurs when two gears engage. In this case, adjust the steering wheel again and then lock the steering wheel.

## Heated steering wheel (if equipped)

When the ignition switch is in the ON position or the ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position, pressing the heated steering wheel button warms the steering wheel. The indicator on the button will illuminate.



To turn the heated steering wheel off, press the button once again. The indicator on the button will turn off.

### \* NOTICE

The heated steering wheel will turn off automatically approximately 30 minutes after the heated steering wheel is turned on.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Do not install any type of grip cover for the steering wheel, it may impair the function of the heated steering wheel system.
- When cleaning the heated steering wheel, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the surface of the steering wheel.
- If the surface of the steering wheel is damaged by a sharp object, damage to the heated steering wheel components could occur.

### ⚠ WARNING

If the steering wheel becomes too warm, turn the system off. The heated steering wheel may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.

## Horn

To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration).



The horn will operate only when this area is pressed. Check the horn regularly to be sure it operates properly.

### **CAUTION**

- Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.
- When cleaning the steering wheel, do not use an organic solvent such as thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the steering wheel.

## Mirrors

This vehicle is equipped with inside and outside rear view mirrors to provide views of objects behind the vehicle.

### Inside rear view mirror

Adjust the rear view mirror so that the centre view through the rear window is seen.

Make this adjustment before you start driving.

### **WARNING**

#### Rear visibility

Do not place objects in the rear seat or cargo area which would interfere with your vision out the rear window.

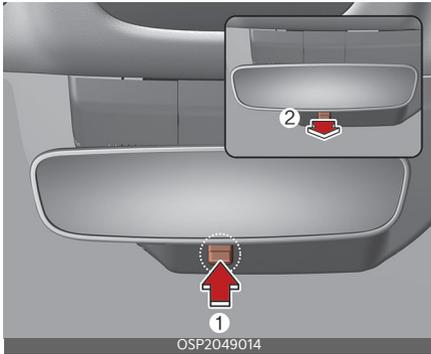
### **WARNING**

Do not adjust the rear view mirror whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause DEATH, SERIOUS INJURY, or property damage.

### **WARNING**

Do not modify the inside mirror and don't install a wide mirror. It could result in injury, during an accident or deployment of the air bag.

## Day/night rear view mirror



(1): Day, (2): Night

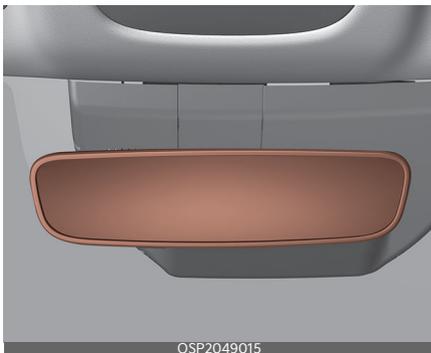
Make this adjustment before you start driving and whilst the day/night lever is in the day position (1).

Pull the day/night lever toward you (2) to reduce the glare from the headlights of the vehicles behind you during night driving.

Remember that you lose some rear view clarity in the night position.

## Electric Chromic Mirror (ECM) (if equipped)

The electric rear view mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlights of the vehicles behind you in nighttime or low light driving conditions.



The sensor mounted in the mirror senses the light level around the vehicle, and automatically controls the headlight glare from the vehicles behind you.

When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rear view mirror.

## Outside rear view mirror

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rear view mirrors.

Be sure to adjust the mirror angles before driving.

The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the control levers or remote switch, depending on the type of mirror control installed. The mirror heads can be folded back to prevent damage during an automatic car wash or when passing through a narrow street.

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### Rear view mirrors

- The outside rear view mirror is convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.
- Use your interior rear view mirror or direct observation to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict the movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with warm water.

**⚠ CAUTION**

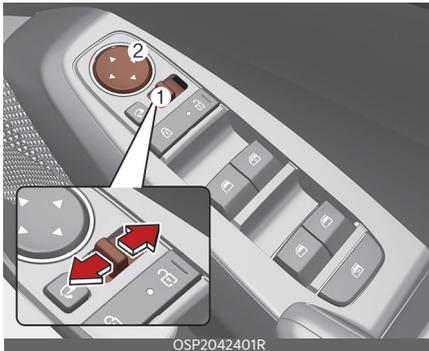
If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not adjust or fold the outside rear view mirrors whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause DEATH, SERIOUS INJURY, or property damage.

### Adjusting the outside rear view mirrors

The electric remote control mirror switch allows you to adjust the position of the left and right outside rear view mirrors.



OSP2042401R

Adjusting the rear view mirrors:

1. Move the R or L switch (1) to select the right side mirror or the left side mirror.
2. Press a corresponding point (▲) on the mirror adjustment control (2) to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate whilst the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, the motor may be damaged.
- Do not attempt to adjust the outside rear view mirror by hand. Doing so may damage the parts.
- When the mirror control, press exactly "▲" (2) marking area. Otherwise, the mirror will move to unintended direction or malfunction.

### Folding the outside rear view mirror

#### Manual type (if equipped)

To fold the outside rearview mirror, grasp the housing of the mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.



OSP2042016R

#### Electric type (if equipped)

The outside rear view mirror can be folded or unfolded by pressing the switch when the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ON position as below.



- To fold the outside rear view mirror depress the button (1).
- To unfold it, depress the button (1) again.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

The electric type outside rear view mirror operates even though the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button is in the LOCK or OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

In case it is an electric type outside rear view mirror, don't fold it by hand. It could cause motor failure.

## Instrument cluster

Type A



Type B



\* The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Speedometer
2. Tachometer
3. Fuel gauge
4. Engine coolant temperature gauge
5. LCD display
6. Warning and indicator lights

## Instrument cluster (if equipped)

The Type B cluster provides two themes.

### Theme A/B/C

Theme A/B/C is the basic theme of the full LCD type cluster and provides different graphic styles depending on drive mode.



OSP2042530L

### Dynamic Theme

Dynamic Theme is set by the user and provides digital display. The background screen changes according to the weather and time.



OSP2042531

- Weather: clear, cloudy, rainy, snowy, foggy, lightning, clear up (7 types)
- Time: night, day, sunrise and sunset (4 types)

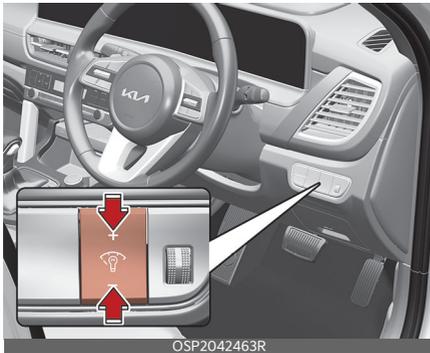
You can change the theme by selecting "Vehicle → Cluster → Theme Selection" on the menu.

**CAUTION**

The information is displayed after getting information from a weather information provider via GPS. Depending on conditions of GPS reception, the information may be different from the current weather in your area.

If no information is received via GPS (e.g., not subscribed to Kia Connect service), the weather and time will be displayed as 'sunny' and 'night' on the cluster.

**Adjusting instrument cluster illumination**

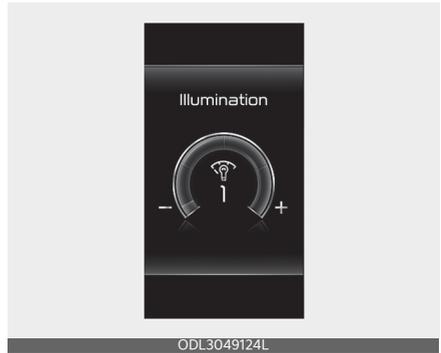


**WARNING**

Never adjust the instrument cluster whilst driving. This could result in loss of control and lead to an accident that may cause DEATH, SERIOUS INJURY, or property damage.

The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is changed by pressing the illumination control switch ("+" or "-") when the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button is ON, or the tail lights are turned on.

- If you hold the illumination control switch ("+" or "-"), the brightness will be changed continuously.



- If the brightness reaches to the maximum or minimum level, an alarm will sound.

**Gauges**

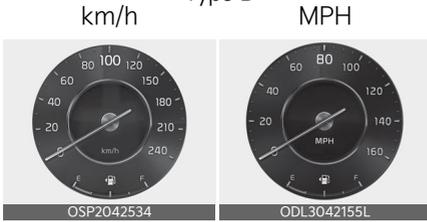
The gauges display various information such as the speed of the vehicle, and so on.

**Speedometer**

Type A



Type B



The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in kilometers per hour (km/h) and miles per hour (mph).

### Tachometer

Type A



OSP2042556

Type B



ODL3042156

The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (rpm).

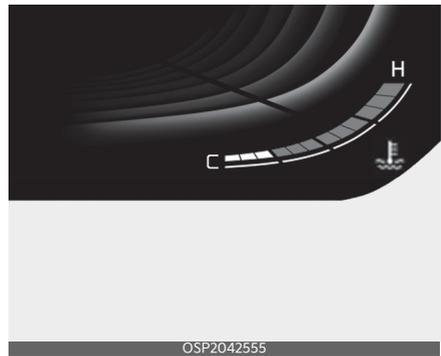
Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

### CAUTION

Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.

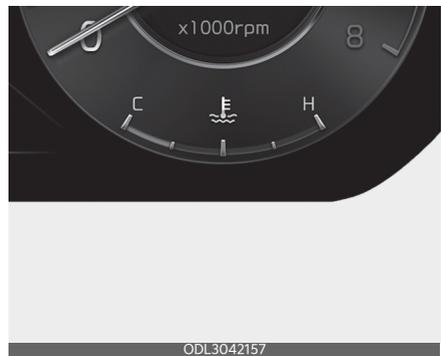
### Engine coolant temperature gauge

Type A



OSP2042555

Type B



ODL3042157

This gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition

switch or ENGINE START/STOP button is ON.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area (between the C-H or 50-130) toward the "H or 130" position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to "If the engine overheats" on page 6-7.

**⚠ WARNING**

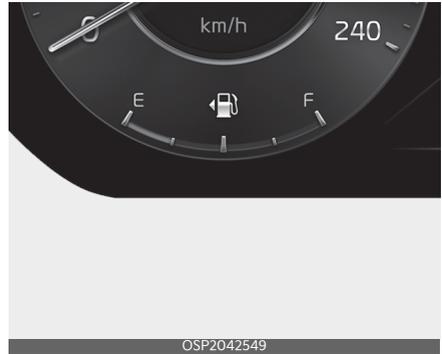
Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could severely burn. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.

**Fuel gauge**

Type A



Type B



This gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

**\* NOTICE**

- The fuel tank capacity is given in "Recommended lubricants and capacities" on page 8-7.
- The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will appear when the fuel tank is nearly empty.
- On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Fuel Gauge**

Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger.

You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the "E or O" level.

## Odometer

Type A

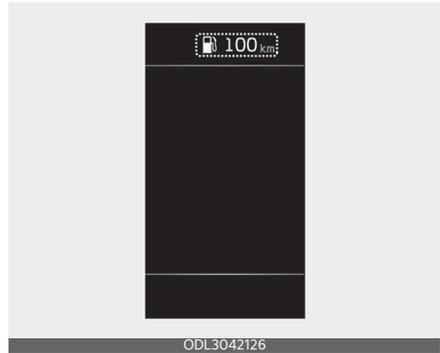


Type B



## Distance to empty

Type A



Type B



The odometer indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

- Odometer range: 0 ~ 1,599,999 km or 999,999 miles.

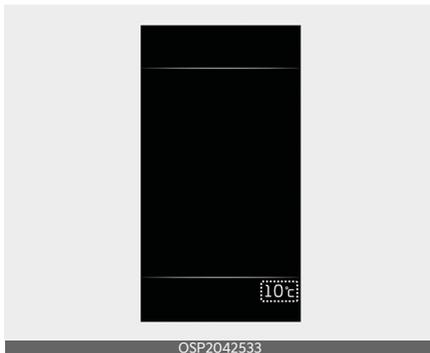
- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel.
  - Distance range: 1 ~ 9,999 km or 1 ~ 9,999 mi.
- If the estimated distance is below 1 km (1 mi.), the trip computer will display "---" as distance to empty.
- If the level of the remaining fuel is more than three-quarters, more than 3 litres of fuel must be refilled for the fuel gauge to change. In other cases, more than 6 litres of fuel must be refilled for the vehicle to change the fuel gauge.

**\* NOTICE**

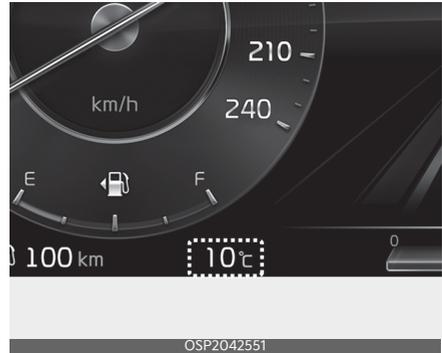
- If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.
- The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.
- The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 litres (1.6 gallons) of fuel are added to the vehicle.
- The fuel economy and distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.

**Outside temperature gauge**

Type A



Type B



This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1 °C (1 °F).

- Temperature range: -40 °C ~ 60 °C (-40 °F ~ 140 °F)

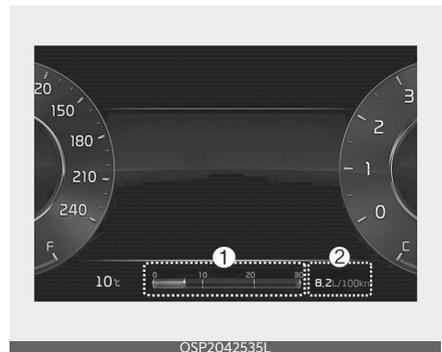
The outside temperature on the display may not change immediately like a general thermometer to prevent the driver from being inattentive.

To change the temperature unit (from °C to °F or from °F to °C)

The temperature unit can be changed by using the "User settings" mode of the LCD Display.

\* For more details, refer to "LCD display" on page 4-66.

**Fuel economy (for Type B)**



The instant fuel economy (1) and average fuel economy (2) is displayed at the bottom of the cluster.

### Automatic reset

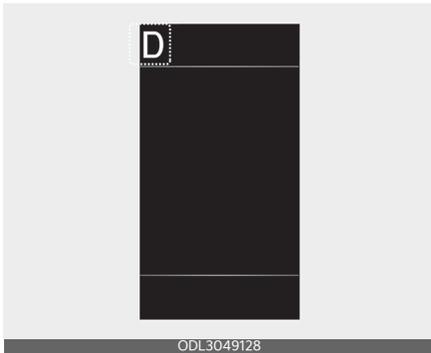
To automatically reset the average fuel economy, select "Settings → Vehicle → Cluster → Fuel economy auto reset" from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

### Transmission shift indicator

Transmission shift indicator displays gear information depending on your vehicle's transmission type.

### Automatic Transmission/Intelligent Variable Transmission shift indicator

Type A



Type B



This indicator displays which Automatic Transmission/Intelligent Variable Transmission shift lever is selected.

- Park: P
  - Reverse: R
  - Neutral: N
  - Drive: D
  - Sports Mode: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\*, 8\*
- \*: if equipped

### Automatic Transmission/Intelligent Variable Transmission shift indicator in Sports Mode (if equipped)

Type A



Type B



In the Sports Mode, this indicator informs which gear is desired whilst driving to save fuel.

- 6 speed Automatic Transmission
  - Shifting up : ▲2, ▲3, ▲4, ▲5, ▲6
  - Shifting down : ▼1, ▼2, ▼3, ▼4, ▼5
- 8 speed Automatic Transmission/ Intelligent Variable Transmission
  - Shifting up : ▲2, ▲3, ▲4, ▲5, ▲6, ▲7, ▲8
  - Shifting down : ▼1, ▼2, ▼3, ▼4, ▼5, ▼6, ▼7

For example

1. ▲3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is recommended (currently the vehicle is in the 2nd or 1st gear).
2. ▼3: Indicates that shifting down to the 3rd gear is recommended (currently the vehicle is in the 4th, 5th, or 6th gear).When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.

## Manual Transmission shift indicator (if equipped)

Type A



Type B



This indicator informs which gear is desired whilst driving to save fuel.

- Shifting up: ▲2, ▲3, ▲4, ▲5, ▲6
- Shifting down: ▼1, ▼2, ▼3, ▼4, ▼5

For example

▲3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

▼4: Indicates that shifting down to the 4th gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 5th or 6th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.

## LCD display

The LCD display modes can be changed by using the control buttons.

### LCD Display Control



1. : MODE button for changing modes
2. : MOVE switch for changing items
3. : SELECT/RESET button for setting or resetting the selected item

### LCD display modes

You can switch modes by pressing the Mode button.

Mode						
	 Driving Assist	 Trip Computer	 Turn By Turn (TBT)*	 User settings <sup>1</sup>	 Information	 Master warning
 Up/Down	Lane Keeping Assist*/Smart Cruise Control/Lane Following Assist*	Drive info	Route Guidance	Driver assistance	Driving force distribution (AWD)*	The Master Warning mode displays warning messages related to the vehicle when one or more systems is not operating normally.
		Since refuelling	Destination Info	Head-up display*	Tyre Pressure*	
		Accumulated info		Cluster		
		Digital Speedometer <sup>2</sup>		Lights		
		Door				
		Convenience				
		Unit				
	Language					
	Reset					

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

\*: if equipped

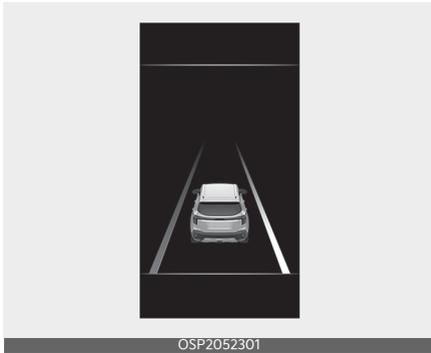
\* 1: for Type A cluster

\* 2: for Type B cluster

#### \* NOTICE

Keep the engine running when configuring the display settings to prevent the battery from discharging.

### Driving Assist mode



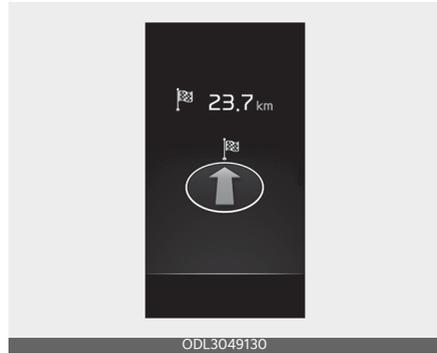
This mode displays the state of:

- Lane Keeping Assist (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control (if equipped)
- Lane Following Assist (if equipped)

\* For more details, refer to each system information in "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) (if equipped)" on page 5-78, "Smart Cruise Control (SCC) (if equipped)" on page 5-111, "Lane Following Assist (LFA) (if equipped)" on page 5-125.

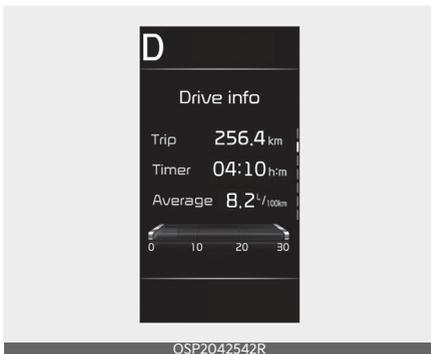
\* For more details, refer to "Trip information (trip computer)" on page 4-76.

### Turn By Turn (TBT) mode (if equipped)



This mode displays the state of the navigation.

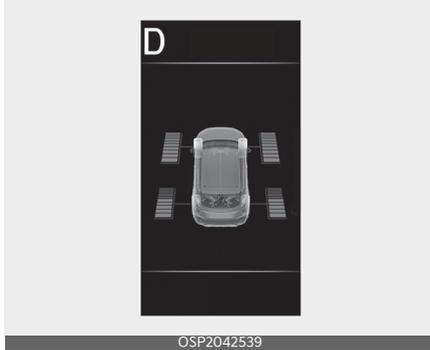
### Trip computer mode



The trip computer mode displays information related to vehicle driving parameters including fuel economy, tripmeter information and total driving time.

## Information mode

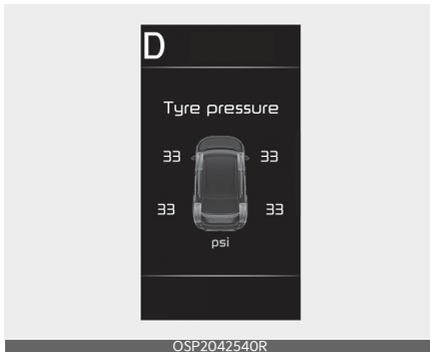
### Driving force distribution (AWD) (if equipped)



This mode displays information related to Driving force distribution.

\* For more details, refer to "All Wheel Drive (AWD) system (if equipped)" on page 5-13.

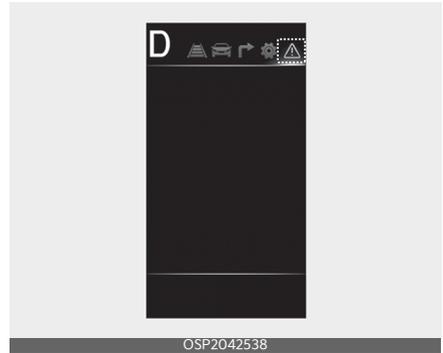
### Tyre Pressure (if equipped)



This mode displays information related to Tyre Pressure.

\* For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (if equipped)" on page 6-8.

## Master warning mode



This warning light informs the driver the following situations.

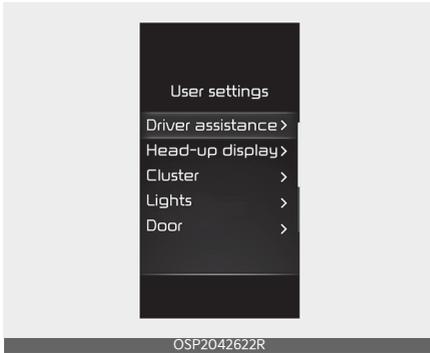
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction\*
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked\*
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction\*
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked\*
- High Beam Assist malfunction\*
- Smart Cruise Control malfunction\*
- Smart Cruise Control radar blocked\*
- LED headlamp malfunction\*
- Lamp malfunction, etc.

At this time, a Master Warning icon (⚠) will appear on the LCD display.

If the warning situation is solved, the master warning light will be turned off and the Master Warning icon will disappear.

\* : if equipped

## User settings mode (if equipped)



In this mode, you can change the settings of the instrument cluster, doors, lamps, etc.

1. Driver assistance
2. Head-up display
3. Cluster
4. Lights
5. Door
6. Convenience
7. Unit
8. Language
9. Reset

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

## 1. Driver assistance (if equipped)

Items	Explanation
Speed limit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Speed limit assist</li> <li>• SLW (Speed Limit Warning)</li> <li>• Off</li> </ul> To select the function. * For more details, refer to "Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA) (if equipped)" on page 5-96.
Warning volume	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• High/Medium/Low</li> </ul> To select the Warning volume.
DAW (Driver Attention Warning)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Leading vehicle departure alert</li> </ul> To select the function. * For more details, refer to "Driver Attention Warning (DAW) (if equipped)" on page 5-102.
Driving safety	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Forward safety</li> <li>• Forward Safety Warning Timing - Late/Normal</li> </ul> To select the function. * For more details, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Front view camera only) (if equipped)" on page 5-54 or "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Sensor fusion) (if equipped)" on page 5-65. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lane safety</li> </ul> To select the function. * For more details, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) (if equipped)" on page 5-78. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blind-spot safety</li> </ul> To select the function. * For more details, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) (if equipped)" on page 5-84. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Safe exit</li> </ul> To select the function. * For more details, refer to "Safe Exit Warning (SEW) (if equipped)" on page 4-22.
Parking safety	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)</li> </ul> To select the function. * For more details, refer to "Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) (if equipped)" on page 4-102. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rear cross-traffic safety</li> </ul> To select the function. * For more details, refer to "Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA) (if equipped)" on page 5-129.

\* The information provided may differ depending on which systems are applicable to your vehicle.

## 2. Head-up display (if equipped)

Items	Explanation
Enable head-up display	If this item is checked, Head-up display will be activated.
Display height	Adjust the height (1~20) of the HUD image on the HUD screen.
Rotation	Adjust the degree (-5~+5) of the HUD rotation.
Brightness	Adjust the intensity (1~20) of the HUD brightness.
Content selection	If below items are checked, the items will be activated. Turn by turn/Traffic signs/Driving Convenience info/Blind-spot safety info/Radio, Media info

\* The information provided may differ depending on which systems are applicable to your vehicle.

## 3. Cluster (if equipped)

Items	Explanation
Cluster theme	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Link to drive mode/Theme A/Theme B/Theme C</li> </ul> To select the theme of the instrument cluster.
Wiper/Lights display	To activate or deactivate the wiper/lights display.
Icy road warning	To activate or deactivate the icy road warning.
Welcome sound	To activate or deactivate the welcome sound.

\* The information provided may differ depending on which systems are applicable to your vehicle.

## 4. Lights (if equipped)

Items	Explanation
Illumination	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Level 1~20</li> </ul> To select the brightness for the instrument panel illumination.
One touch turn indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off: The one touch turn indicator function will be deactivated.</li> <li>3, 5, 7 flashes: The turn signal indicator will blink 3, 5, or 7 times when the turn signal lever is moved slightly.</li> </ul> * For more details, refer to "Lighting" on page 4-107.

Items	Explanation
Headlight time-out	If this item is checked, the headlight escort function will be activated.
HBA (High Beam Assist)	If this item is checked, High Beam Assist will be activated. * For more details, refer to "High Beam Assist (HBA) (if equipped)" on page 4-115.

\* The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

### 5. Door (if equipped)

Items	Explanation
Auto lock	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable on Shift : All doors will be automatically locked if the vehicle is shifted from the P (Park) position to the R (Reverse), N (Neutral), or D (Drive) position (with engine ON, it is activated).</li> <li>• Enable on speed: All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h (9.3 mph)</li> <li>• Off: The auto door unlock operation will be cancelled.</li> </ul>
Auto unlock	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On shift to P : All doors will be automatically unlocked if the gear is shifted to the P (Park) position (with engine ON, it is activated).</li> <li>• On key out/Vehicle Off (if equipped): All doors will be automatically unlocked when the ENGINE START/STOP button is set to the OFF position or the ignition key is removed from the ignition switch.</li> <li>• Off: The auto door unlock operation will be cancelled.</li> </ul>
Horn feedback	To activate or deactivate the horn feedback when door is locked with the folding key.
Power Tailgate	To activate or deactivate the Power Tailgate. * For more details, refer to "Power tailgate (if equipped)" on page 4-29.
Power Tailgate Opening Speed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fast/Normal</li> </ul> To adjust the power tailgate opening speed. * For more details, refer to "Power tailgate (if equipped)" on page 4-29.
Power Tailgate height	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Full Open/Level 3, 2, 1/User height setting</li> </ul> To adjust the power tailgate opening height. * For more details, refer to "Power tailgate (if equipped)" on page 4-29.
Smart Tailgate	To activate or deactivate the smart tailgate. * For more details, refer to "Smart tailgate (if equipped)" on page 4-34.
Remote window control	To activate or deactivate the remote window control. * For more details, refer to "Remote window closing/opening system (if equipped)" on page 4-41.

\* The information provided may differ depending on which systems are applicable to your vehicle.

## 6. Convenience (if equipped)

Items	Explanation
Rear Occupant Alert	If this item is checked, the Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) display will be activated. * For more details, refer to "Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) System" on page 4-21.
Service interval	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable service interval/Adjust interval/Reset</li> </ul>
Welcome mirror	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On door unlock / On driver approach To select the welcome mirror function.</li> </ul>

\* The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

## 7. Unit (if equipped)

Items	Explanation
Speedometer unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• km/h or MPH To select the Speedometer unit.</li> </ul>
Temperature unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• °C/°F To select the Temperature unit.</li> </ul>
Fuel economy unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• L/100km, km/L To select the Fuel economy unit. * For more details, refer to "Trip information (trip computer)" on page 4-76.</li> </ul>
Tyre pressure unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• psi, kPa, bar To select the Tyre pressure unit</li> </ul>

\* The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

## 8. Language

Items	Explanation
Language	To select language.

## 9. Reset

Items	Explanation
Reset	You can reset the menus in the User settings mode. All menus in the User settings mode are reset to factory settings, except language and service interval.

### Trip information (trip computer)

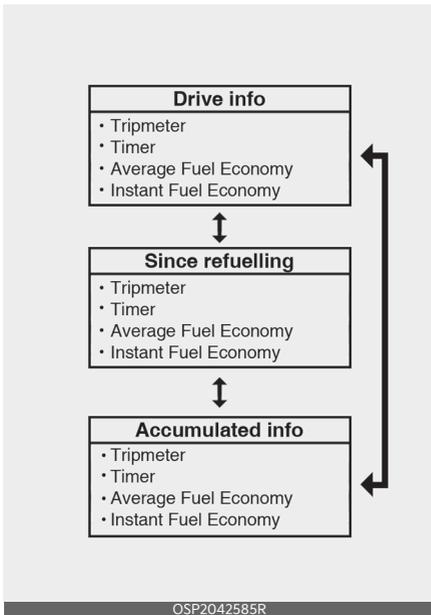
The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

**\* NOTICE**

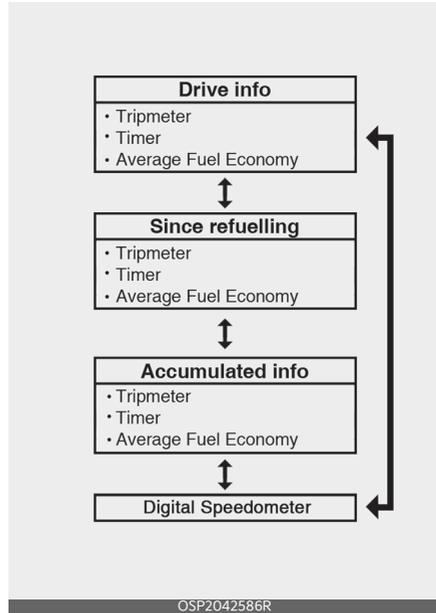
Some driving information stored in the trip computer resets if the battery is disconnected.

### Trip Modes

Type A



Type B



To change the trip mode, scroll the toggle the switch (∧ / ∨) on the steering wheel.

### Drive info mode

This display shows the trip distance (1), the total driving time (2), the average fuel efficiency (3), and the instant fuel economy (4, if equipped) information once per one ignition cycle.

Type A



Type B



### Since refuelling mode

This display shows the trip distance (1), the total driving time (2), the average fuel efficiency (3), and the instant fuel economy (4, if equipped).

Type A



Type B



- Fuel efficiency is calculated after the vehicle has run for more than 300 meters (0.2 miles).
- If opening the driver's door after turning off the engine or 3 minutes passes after restarting the engine, Driving Information is reset.
- If you press "OK" button for more than 1 second after the Driving Information is displayed, the information will be reset.
- If the engine is running, even when the vehicle is not in motion, the information will be accumulated.

- Fuel efficiency is calculated after the vehicle has run for more than 300 meters (0.2 miles).
- After refuelling more than 6 litres (1.6 gallons) and driving over 1 km/h, the Since refuelling will reset to default automatically.
- If you press "OK" button for more than 1 second after the Driving Information is displayed, the information will be reset.

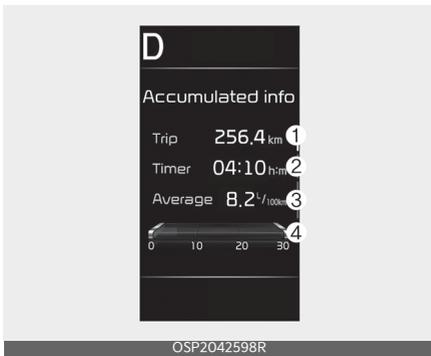
4

- If the engine is running, even when the vehicle is not in motion, the information will be accumulated.

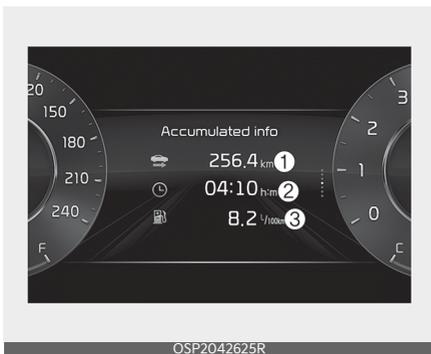
### Accumulated driving information mode

This display shows the accumulated trip distance (1), the total driving time (2), the average fuel efficiency (3), and the instant fuel economy (4, if equipped).

Type A



Type B



- Accumulated information is calculated after the vehicle has run for more than 300 meters (0.2 miles).
- If you press "OK" button for more than 1 second after the Cumulative Infor-

mation is displayed, the information will be reset.

- If the engine is running, even when the vehicle is not in motion, the information will be accumulated.

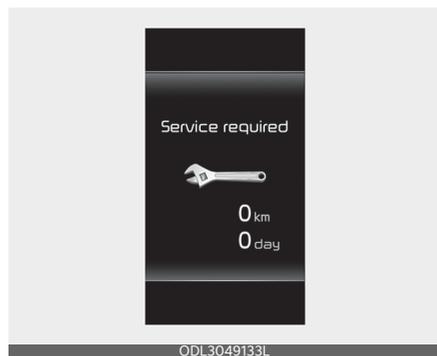
### Digital speedometer (for Type B cluster)



This mode displays the current speed of the vehicle.

### Service interval

This reminds you of scheduled maintenance information.



### Service in

It calculates and displays when you need a scheduled maintenance service (mileage or days).

If the remaining mileage or time reaches 1,500 km (900 miles) or 30 days, "Service in" message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.

**Service required**

If you do not have your vehicle serviced according to the already inputted service interval, "Service required" message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.

To reset the service interval to the mileage and days you inputted before:

- Press the OK button (Reset) for more than 1 second.

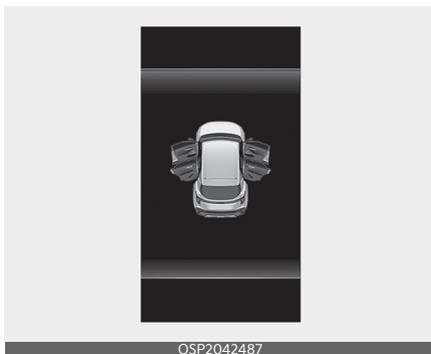
**\* NOTICE**

If any of the following conditions occurs, the mileage and days may be incorrect.

- The battery cable is disconnected.
- The battery is discharged.

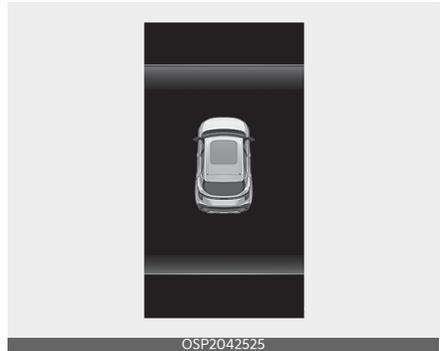
**LCD display messages**

**Door, bonnet, tailgate open**



- This warning is displayed indicating which door, the bonnet, the tailgate or the sunroof is open.

**Sunroof open**



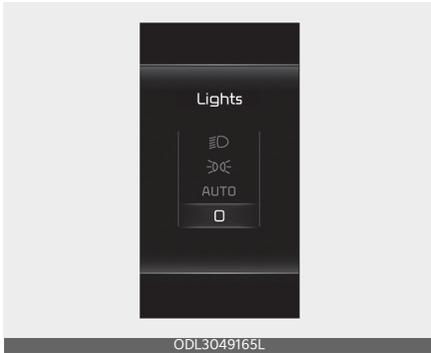
This warning is displayed if you turn off the engine when the sunroof is open.

**Lights mode**

Type A



Type B



This indicator displays which exterior light is selected using the lighting control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/Lights display function from the User settings mode in the cluster LCD display or the Settings in the Infotainment system screen.

Type B



This indicator displays which wiper speed is selected using the wiper control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/Lights display function from the User settings mode in the cluster LCD display or the Settings in the Infotainment system screen.

### Wiper mode

Type A



### Low washer fluid

- This warning message illuminates when the washer fluid reservoir is nearly empty.
- It means that you should refill the washer fluid.

### Engine has overheated

- This warning message illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is above 120 °C (248 °F). This means that the engine is overheated and may be damaged.

\* If your vehicle is overheated, refer to "If the engine overheats" on page 6-7.

### Shift to P (for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if you try to turn off the engine without the gear in P (Park) position.

- At this time, the ENGINE START/STOP button turns to the ACC position.

### Low key battery (for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if the battery of the smart key is discharged when the ENGINE START/STOP button changes to the OFF position.

### Press START button whilst turning wheel (for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the ENGINE START/STOP button is pressed.
- It means that you should press the ENGINE START/STOP button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left.

### Check steering wheel lock system (for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock normally when the ENGINE START/STOP button changes to the OFF position.

### Press clutch pedal to start engine (for smart key system and Manual Transmission)

- This warning message illuminates if the ENGINE START/STOP button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the clutch pedal.
- It means that you should depress the clutch pedal to start the engine.

### Key not in vehicle (for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you press the ENGINE START/STOP button.
- It means that you should always have the smart key with you.

### Key not detected (for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not detected when you press the ENGINE START/STOP button.

### Shift to P or N to start engine (for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if you try to start the engine with the shift lever not in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.

### Press brake pedal to start engine (for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if the ENGINE START/STOP button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.
- It means that you should depress the brake pedal to start the engine.

### 12V battery discharging due to additional electrical devices

The vehicle can detect self-discharge of the battery due to over-current that is generated by unauthorised electrical devices such as dashboard camera (dash cam) mounting during parking.

If the warning continues even after external electrical devices are removed, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.

### **Press START button again (for smart key system)**

- This warning message illuminates if you cannot operate the ENGINE START/STOP button when there is a problem with the ENGINE START/STOP button system.
- It means that you could start the engine by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button once more.
- If the warning illuminates each time you press the ENGINE START/STOP button, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### **Press START button with key (for smart key system)**

- This warning message illuminates if you press the ENGINE START/STOP button whilst the warning message "Key not detected" is illuminating.
- At this time, the immobiliser indicator light blinks.

### **Check BRAKE SWITCH fuse (for smart key system)**

- This warning message illuminates if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.
- It means that you should replace the fuse with a new one. If that is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP

## Warning and indicator lights

The warning light and indicator light indicate a situation where the driver should be careful and whether the various functions are activated.

### Warning lights

The warning light indicates situations that require the driver to pay attention.

#### \* NOTICE

### Warning lights

Make sure that all warning lights are OFF after starting the engine. If any light is still ON, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

### Air bag warning light

#### This warning light appears:

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
  - It appears for approximately 6 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the SRS.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Seat belt warning light

This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.

\* For more details, refer to "Seat belts" on page 3-17.

## Parking brake & brake fluid warning light

#### This warning light appears:

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
  - It appears for approximately 3 seconds
  - It remains on if the parking brake is applied.
- When the parking brake is applied.
- When the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
  - If the warning light appears with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in reservoir is low.

#### If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required (For more details, refer to "Brake/clutch fluid" on page 7-36). Then check all brake components for fluid leaks. If any leak on the brake system is still found, the warning light remains on, or the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle.

In this case, have the vehicle towed to a professional workshop and inspected. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Dual-diagonal braking system

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you

still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail. With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the vehicle.

Also, the vehicle will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working.

If the brakes fail whilst you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### WARNING

#### **Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light**

Driving the vehicle with a warning light ON is dangerous. If the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light appears with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

#### **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) warning light**

##### **This warning light appears:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
  - It appears for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ABS (The normal braking system will still be operational without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system).

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

#### **Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light**



##### **These two warning lights appear at the same time whilst driving:**

- When the ABS and regular brake system may not work normally.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### WARNING

#### **Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light**

When both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the brake system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking.

In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.

Have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### NOTICE

#### **Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light**

When the ABS Warning Light is on or both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or tripmeter may not

work. Also, the MDPS Warning Light may appear and the steering effort may increase or decrease.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light (if equipped)

#### This warning light appears:

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
  - It appears for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the EPB.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

\* For more details, refer to "Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) (if equipped)" on page 5-38.

#### \* NOTICE

### Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light

The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light may appear when the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly (This does not indicate malfunction of the EPB).

### Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS) warning light

#### This warning light appears:

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
  - It appears for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the MDPS.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Charging system warning light



#### This warning light appears:

- When there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system.

#### If there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the alternator drive belt for looseness or breakage.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)



### This warning light appears:

- When you set the ignition switch or the ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
  - The malfunction indicator light appears for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with either the emission control system or the engine or the vehicle powertrain. In this occurs, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

#### \* NOTICE

Driving with the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) on may cause damage to the emission control system which could affect drivability and/or fuel economy.

#### \* NOTICE

#### For Smartstream G1.6 T-GDi

If the enhanced engine protection system becomes activated due to lack of engine oil, engine power will be limited. If such condition continues repeatedly, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp will appear.

#### ▲ CAUTION

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) appears, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia rec-

ommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Engine oil pressure warning light



### This warning light appears:

- When the engine oil pressure is low.
- Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
- Turn the engine off and check the engine oil level (For more details, refer to "Engine oil and filter" on page 7-30). If the level is low, add oil as required.
- If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. Continued driving with the warning light on may cause engine failure.

#### \* NOTICE

- When the engine oil pressure decreases due to insufficient engine oil, etc., the Engine Oil Pressure warning light will appear.
- For Smartstream G1.6 T-GDi, the enhanced engine protection system which limits engine power will be activated. When the engine oil pressure is restored, the Engine Oil Pressure warning light and the enhanced engine protection system will turn off after the engine is restarted.

## Low fuel level warning light

### This warning light appears:

- When the fuel tank is nearly empty.

### If the fuel tank is nearly empty:

- Add fuel as soon as possible.

## CAUTION

### Low Fuel Level

Driving with the Low Fuel Level warning light on or with the fuel level below "E or 0" can cause the engine to misfire.

## Master warning light

### This warning light appears:

- This warning light informs the driver the following situations
  - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction\*
  - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked\*
  - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction\*
  - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked\*
  - High Beam Assist malfunction\*
  - Smart Cruise Control malfunction\*
  - Smart Cruise Control radar blocked\*
  - LED headlamp malfunction\*
  - Lamp malfunction, etc.

To identify the details of the warning look at the LCD display.

If the warning situation is solved, the master warning light will turn off.

\*: if equipped

## Low Tyre Pressure warning light (if equipped)

### This warning light appears:

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
    - It appears for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
  - When one or more of your tyres are significantly under inflated. (The location of the underinflated tyres are displayed on the LCD display).
- \* For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (if equipped)" on page 6-8.

### This warning light remains on after blinking for approximately 70 seconds or repeats blinking on and off at the intervals of approximately 3 seconds:

- When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.
 

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- \* For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (if equipped)" on page 6-8.

## WARNING

### Low tyre pressure

- Significantly low tyre pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.
- Continued driving on low pressure tyres will cause the tyres to overheat and fail.

## WARNING

### Safe Stopping

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors.
- If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

### LED headlamp warning light (if equipped)

#### This warning light appears:

- When there is a malfunction with the LED headlamp.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Forward Safety warning light (if equipped)

#### This warning light appears:

- Yellow:
  - When you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position, it appears for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
  - When Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is Off/disable/malfunction. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- Red:
  - When Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating, it appears blinking.
- \* For more details, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Front view camera only) (if equipped)" on page 5-54 or "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Sensor fusion) (if equipped)" on page 5-65.

### Icy Road warning light (if equipped)



- This warning light is to warn the driver the road may be icy
- When the temperature on the outside temperature gauge is approximately below 4 °C (39 °F), the Icy Road Warning Light and Outside Temperature Gauge blinks and then appears. Also, the warning chime sounds 1 time.

## \* NOTICE

If the icy road warning light appears whilst driving, you should drive more attentively and safely, refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.

### Indicator lights

### Electronic stability control (ESC) indicator light (if equipped)

#### This indicator light appears:

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
  - It appears for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.

- When there is a malfunction with the ESC system.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### This indicator light blinks:

- Whilst the ESC is operating.
- \* For more details, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system (if equipped)" on page 5-44.

### Electronic stability control (ESC)

#### OFF indicator light (if equipped)

#### This indicator light appears:

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
    - It appears for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
  - When you deactivate the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.
- \* For more details, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system (if equipped)" on page 5-44.

#### Immobiliser indicator light (without smart key) (if equipped)

#### This indicator light appears:

- When the vehicle detects the immobiliser in your key properly whilst the ignition switch is ON.
  - At this time, you can start the engine.
  - The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

#### This indicator light blinks:

- When there is a malfunction with the immobiliser system.
- In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

#### Immobiliser indicator light (with smart key) (if equipped)

#### This indicator light appears for up to 30 seconds:

- When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle properly whilst the ENGINE START/STOP button is ACC or ON.
  - At this time, you can start the engine.
  - The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

#### This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:

- When the smart key is not in the vehicle.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine.

#### This indicator light appears for 2 seconds and goes off:

- When the vehicle can not detect the smart key which is in the vehicle whilst the ENGINE START/STOP button is ON.
- In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**This indicator light blinks:**

- When the battery of the smart key is weak.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine. However, you can start the engine if you press the ENGINE START/STOP button with the smart key. (For more details, refer to "ENGINE START/STOP button (if equipped)" on page 5-8).
- When there is a malfunction with the immobiliser system.
 

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**Turn signal indicator light **

**This indicator light blinks:**

- When you turn the turn signal light on.
- If any of the following occurs, there may a malfunction with the turn signal system. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
  - The indicator light does not blink but appears.
  - The indicator light blinks more rapidly.
  - The indicator light does not appear at all.

**Low beam indicator light  (if equipped)**

**This indicator light appears:**

- When the headlights are on.

**High beam indicator light **

**This indicator light appears:**

- When the headlights are on and in the high beam position.
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

**High Beam Assist indicator light**

** (if equipped)**

**This indicator light appears:**

- When the high beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO light position.
- If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, High Beam Assist will switch the high beam to low beam automatically.

\* For more details, refer to "High Beam Assist (HBA) (if equipped)" on page 4-115.

**Lane Safety indicator light  (if equipped)**

**This indicator light appears:**

- Green: When Lane Keeping Assist operating conditions are satisfied.
- Gray: When Lane Keeping Assist operating conditions are not satisfied.
- Yellow: Whenever there is a malfunction with Lane Keeping Assist.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

\* For more details, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) (if equipped)" on page 5-78.

**Light ON indicator light** **This indicator light appears:**

- When the tail lights or headlights are on.

**Front fog indicator light**  (if equipped)**This indicator light appears:**

- When the front fog lights are on.

**Rear fog indicator light**  (if equipped)**This indicator light appears:**

- When the rear fog lights are on.

**Cruise indicator light**  CRUISE (if equipped)**This indicator light appears:**

- When Cruise Control is enabled.

\* For more details, refer to "Cruise Control (CC) (if equipped)" on page 5-108.

**AUTO HOLD indicator light**  
(AUTO HOLD)  (if equipped)**This indicator light appears:**

- White: When you activate the auto hold system by pressing the AUTO HOLD button.
- Green: When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal with the auto hold system activated.

- Yellow: When there is a malfunction with the auto hold system.  
In this case, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

\* For more details, refer to "AUTO HOLD (if equipped)" on page 5-42.

**SPORT mode indicator light****This indicator light appears:**

- When you select "SPORT" mode as drive mode.

\* For more details, refer to "Drive mode integrated control system" on page 5-52.

**ECO mode indicator light****This indicator light appears:**

- When you select "ECO" mode as drive mode.

\* For more details, refer to "Drive mode integrated control system" on page 5-52.

**Downhill Brake Control (DBC) Indicator Light**  (if equipped)**This indicator light appears:**

- When you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
  - It appears for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you activate the system by pressing the DBC button.

**This indicator light blinks:**

- When the DBC is operating.

**This indicator light appears yellow:**

- When there is a malfunction with the DBC system.

If this occurs, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

\* For more details, refer to "Downhill Brake Control (DBC) (if equipped)" on page 5-49".

**All Wheel Drive (AWD) LOCK indicator light  (if equipped)**

**This indicator light appears:**

- When you select AWD lock mode by pressing the AWD LOCK button.
  - The AWD lock mode is to increase the drive power when driving on wet pavement, snow covered roads and/or off-road.

**\* NOTICE**

**AWD Lock Mode**

Do not use AWD LOCK mode on dry paved roads or highway, it can cause noise, vibration or damage of AWD related parts.

\* For more details, refer to "All Wheel Drive (AWD) system (if equipped)" on page 5-13.

**Infotainment system vehicle settings (if equipped)**



Vehicle Settings in the infotainment system provide user options for the settings including door lock/unlock, convenience features, and driver assistance.

**WARNING**

Do not operate the 'Vehicle Settings' whilst driving. This may cause distraction resulting in an accident.

**Setting your vehicle**



[A]: Settings

1. Select 'Settings' on the infotainment system screen.



[A]: Vehicle

2. Select 'Vehicle' and change the settings for features.

### Vehicle Settings menu

1. Driver assistance
2. Head-up display
3. Cluster
4. Climate
5. Seat
6. Door
7. Convenience

#### \* NOTICE

The information provided may differ depending on which features are applicable to your vehicle.

#### \* INFORMATION

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## Head-Up Display (HUD) (if equipped)

The head up display is a transparent display which projects a shadow of some information of the instrument cluster and navigation on the HUD screen.



1. Combiner
2. Shutter

The hidden screen will go up when you press the screen operation switch on the right side of the lower part of crash pad and if you press the switch again, the screen will return to its original hidden position.



- The head up display image on the HUD screen may be invisible when:
  - Sitting posture is bad.
  - Wearing a polarized sunglasses.

- There is an object on the cover of the head up display.
- Driving on a wet road.
- An inadequate lighting is turned on inside the vehicle.
- Any light comes from the outside.
- Wearing an inadequate glasses to your eyesight.
- If the head up display image is not shown well, adjust the height, rotation or illumination of the head up display in the cluster.
- When the head up display needs inspection or repair, Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

4. SCC set speed information (if equipped)
5. SCC vehicle distance information (if equipped)
6. Lane Safety information (if equipped)
7. Blind-Spot Safety information (if equipped)
8. Warning lights (Low fuel)
9. Infotainment system information
10. Lane Following Assist information (if equipped)

**\* NOTICE**

Road Signs and Turn By Turn navigation information are available depending on the region.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Head-Up Display**

- Do not place any accessories on the Head Up Display shutter. It might fall into Head Up Display and can damage to Head Up Display.

**Head Up Display Information**



1. Turn By Turn navigation information (if equipped)
2. Road signs
3. Speedometer

**Head up Display Setting**

On the LCD display, you can change the head up display settings as follows.

1. Display height
2. Rotation
3. Brightness
4. Content selection

\* For more details, refer to "User settings mode (if equipped)" on page 4-70.

## Rear View Monitor (RVM) (if equipped)

Rear View Monitor will activate when the back-up light is ON with the ignition switch ON and the shift lever in the R (Reverse) position. Rear View Monitor is a supplemental function that shows behind the vehicle through Infotainment system whilst backing-up.

### Detecting sensor

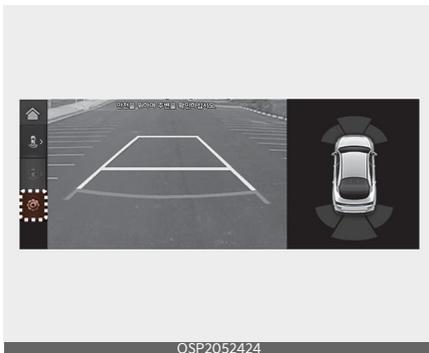
[1]: Wide-rear view camera



Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

### Rear View Monitor settings

#### Camera settings



You can change Rear View Monitor 'Display contents' and 'Display settings' or by touching the setup icon (⚙️) on the screen whilst Rear View Monitor is operating, or selecting 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Parking safety → Camera settings' from the Settings menu whilst the engine is on.

- Display contents: To change the settings of rear view with parking guidance, Rear View whilst driving
- Display settings: To change the screen's brightness and contrast.

#### Warning methods (or Warning volume)

You can adjust the Warning methods (or Warning volume) with the ignition switch or ENGINE START/ STOP button in the ON position.

Parking safety priority : Select 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume) → Parking safety priority' on the Infotainment system for safe parking. The audio volume will temporarily decrease to warn the driver with the audible warning.

#### \* NOTICE

- Ensure that Warning methods (or Warning volume) you have set may apply to the Warning volume of other Driver assistance systems.
- Warning methods (or Warning volume) will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

- Descriptions of each Driver assistance system may be slightly different from the owner's manual after updating the software of your infotainment system. In this case, scan the QR code in the infotainment system manual to access the web manual for checking the changes.
- Depending on your region or update, the menu may be displayed as 'Warning sound', 'Warning methods' or 'Warning volume'.

## Rear View Monitor operation

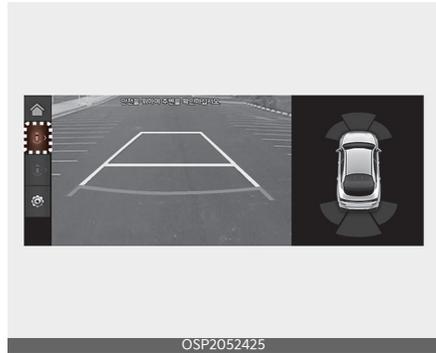
### Parking/View button



Press the Parking/View button (1) to turn on Rear View Monitor.

Press the button again to turn off the function.

### Rear view



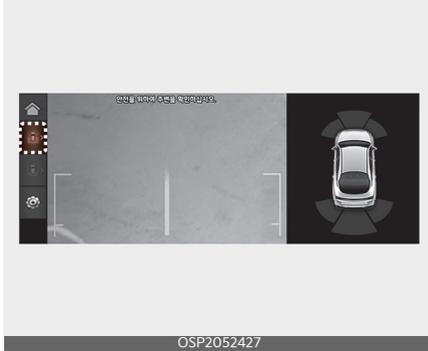
### Operating conditions

- Shift the gear to R (Reverse), the image will appear on the screen.
- Press the Parking/View button (1) whilst the gear is in P (Park), the image will appear on the screen.
- Pressing the View icon with the Rear top view on the screen.

### Off conditions

- The rear view cannot be turned off when the gear is in R (Reverse).
- Press the Parking/View button (1) again whilst the gear is in P (Park) with the rear view on the screen, the rear view will turn off.
- Shift the gear from R (Reverse) to P (Park), the rear view will turn off.

## Rear top view



When you touch the  icon, the top view is displayed on the screen and shows the distance from the vehicle in the back of your vehicle whilst parking.

### Extended Rear View Monitor

The rear view will maintain showing on the screen to help you when parking.

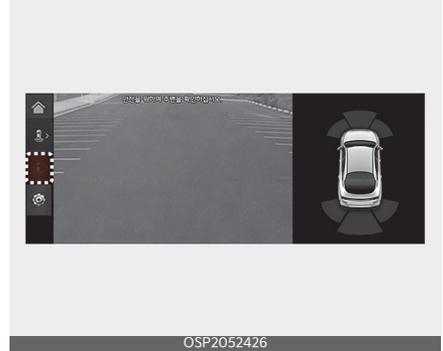
### Operating conditions

- Shift the gear from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive), the rear view will appear on the screen.
- The vehicle speed is below approximately 10 km/h (6 mph).

### Off conditions

- When vehicle speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph), the rear view will turn off.
- Press the Parking/View button (1), the rear view will turn off.
- Shift the gear to P (Park), the rear view will turn off.

## Rear View whilst driving



The driver is able to check the rear view on the screen whilst driving, it is to assist with safe driving.

### Operating conditions

Press the Parking/View button (1) whilst the gear is in D (Drive) or N (Neutral), the driving rear view will appear on the screen.

### Off conditions

- Press the Parking/View button (1) again, the driving rear view will turn off.
- Press one of the infotainment system button, the driving rear view will turn off.
- Shift the gear to P (Park), the driving rear view will turn off.

### When operating

If the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), whilst Driving rear view is displayed on the screen, the screen will change to rear view with parking guidance.

## Rear View Monitor malfunction and limitations

### Rear View Monitor malfunction

When Rear View Monitor is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not display normally, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Limitations of Rear View Monitor

When the vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or when the vehicle is parked in an indoor parking lot, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- The rear view camera does not cover the complete area behind the vehicle. The driver should always check the rear area directly through the inside and outside rearview mirror before parking or backing up.
- The image shown on the screen may differ from the actual distance of the object. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.
- Always keep the rear view camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Rear View Monitor may not operate normally. However, do not use chemical solvents such as strong detergents containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (petrol, acetone etc.). This may damage the camera lens.

## Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) (if equipped)

Reverse Parking Distance Warning will help warn the driver if a person, an animal or an object is detected within a certain distance when the vehicle is moving in reverse.

### Detecting sensor

[1]: Rear ultrasonic sensors



Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

## Reverse Parking Distance Warning Operation

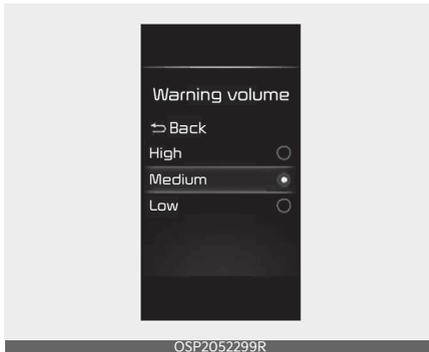
### Parking Safety button



- Press Parking Safety (P) button to turn Reverse Parking Distance Warning on and off.
- Reverse Parking Distance Warning will turn on automatically when the gear is shifted to R (Reverse).
- If vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph), Reverse Parking Distance Warning OFF and indicator will turn off. When the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), even if the button is repressed, the warning will not turn off and Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate to assist safe parking.

## Reverse Parking Distance Warning settings

### Warning methods (or Warning volume)



You can adjust the Warning methods (or Warning volume) with the ignition switch or ENGINE START/ STOP button in the ON position.

- Warning volume : Select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Warning volume' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume)' on the Infotainment system.

### \* NOTICE

- Ensure that Warning methods (or Warning volume) you have set may apply to the Warning volume of other Driver assistance systems.
- Warning methods (or Warning volume) will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- Descriptions of each Driver assistance system may be slightly different from the owner's manual after updating the software of your infotainment system. In this case, scan the QR code in the infotainment system manual to access the web manual for checking the changes.
- Depending on your region or update, the menu may be displayed as 'Warning sound', 'Warning methods' or 'Warning volume'.

## Operation of Reverse Parking Distance Warning

### Reverse Parking Distance Warning

Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate under the following conditions.

- Shift the gear to R (Reverse).
- The vehicle's speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).

Types of warning sound	Indicator
When an object is 60 cm to 120 cm (24 inches to 48 inches) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps intermittently	
When an object is 30 cm to 60 cm (12 inches to 24 inches) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps more frequently.	
When an object is within 30 cm (12 inches) of the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps continuously.	

### Reverse Parking Distance Warning Malfunction and Precautions

#### Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction

After starting the vehicle, a beep will sound once when the gear is shifted to R (Reverse) to indicate Reverse Parking Distance Warning is operating normally. However, if one or more of the following occurs, first check whether the ultrasonic sensor is damaged or blocked with foreign material. If it still does not work properly, Kia recommends visiting an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- The audible warning does not sound.
- The buzzer sounds intermittently.
- The warning message appears on the cluster.



#### Limitations of Reverse Parking Distance Warning

Reverse Parking Distance Warning may not operate normally when:

- Moisture is frozen to the sensor (Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate normally when it is melted.)
- Sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or water (Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate normally when such foreign material are removed.)
- The weather is extremely hot or cold
- The sensor or sensor assembly is disassembled

- The surface of the sensor is pressed hard or an impact is applied with a hard object
- The surface of the sensor is scratched with a sharp object
- The sensors or its surrounding area is directly sprayed with high pressure washer

Reverse Parking Distance Warning may malfunction when:

- Heavy rain or water spray is present
- Water flows on the surface of the sensor
- Affected by another vehicle's sensors
- The sensor is covered with snow
- Driving on uneven road, gravel roads or bushes
- Objects that generates ultrasonic waves are near the sensor
- Installing the license plate differently from the original location
- The vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
- Attaching equipments or accessories around the ultrasonic sensors

The following objects may not be detected:

- Sharp or slim objects, such as ropes, chains or small poles.
- Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
- Objects smaller than 100 cm (40 inches) length and narrower than 14 cm (6 inches) in diameter.
- Pedestrians, animals or objects that are very close to the ultrasonic sensors

## WARNING

- Reverse Parking Distance Warning is a supplemental function. The operation of Reverse Parking Distance Warning can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the rear view before and whilst parking.
- Your vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle due to the malfunction of Reverse Parking Distance Warning.
- Pay close attention when driving near objects, pedestrians, and especially children. Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors, due to the objects distance, size material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.
- Parking Distance Warning indicator may not occur sequentially depending on vehicle speed or obstacle shape.
- If Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning needs repair, Kia recommends visiting an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) (if equipped)

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will help warn the driver if a person, an animal or an object is detected within a certain distance from the ultrasonic sensors when the vehicle is moving forward or in reverse.

[1]: Front ultrasonic sensors



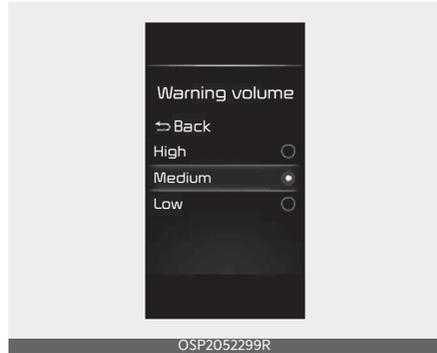
[2]: Rear ultrasonic sensors



Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

## Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning Settings

### Warning methods (or Warning volume)



You can adjust the Warning methods (or Warning volume) with the ignition switch or ENGINE START/ STOP button in the ON position.

- Warning volume : Select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume)' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume)' on the Infotainment system.

### \* NOTICE

- Ensure that Warning methods (or Warning volume) you have set may apply to the Warning volume of other Driver assistance systems.
- Warning methods (or Warning volume) will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- Descriptions of each Driver assistance system may be slightly different from

the owner's manual after updating the software of your infotainment system. In this case, scan the QR code in the infotainment system manual to access the web manual for checking the changes.

- Depending on your region or update, the menu may be displayed as 'Warning sound', 'Warning methods' or 'Warning volume'.

### Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)

You can set the Parking Distance Warning to be ON at low speeds. To use Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning) function, select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Parking safety → Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Parking safety → Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)' on the infotainment system with the Engine ON.

### Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning Operation

#### Parking Safety button



- When Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is off (button indicator light off), if you shift the gear to R

(Reverse), Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will automatically turn on.

- If you shift the gear to R (Reverse), Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will not turn off even if you press the Parking Safety (P ) button for your safety.

### Forward Parking Distance Warning

Forward Parking Distance Warning will operate when one of the condition is satisfied.

- The gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to D (Drive)
- The gear is in D (Drive) and the Parking Safety (P ) button indicator light is on
- Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning) is selected from the Settings menu and the gear is in D (Drive)
- This function warns when Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning) is selected and the gear is in D (Drive). ('User settings → Driver assistance → Parking safety → Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Parking safety → Auto PDW (Parking Distance Warning)' on the infotainment system)
- Vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph)

#### \* NOTICE

- Forward Parking Distance Warning does not operate when the vehicle's forward speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph) even when the function is on (Parking Safety button indicator is on). Forward Parking Distance Warning will operate again when the vehi-

cle's forward speed decreases below 10 km/h (6 mph).

- When the vehicle's forward speed is above 30 km/h (18 mph), the Forward Parking Distance Warning will turn off (Parking Safety button indicator off). Although you drive below 10 km/h (6 mph) again, Forward Parking Distance Warning will not automatically turn on.

Distance from object	Warning indicator when driving forward	Warning sound
60~100 cm (24~40 inches)		Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm (12~24 inches)		Beeps more frequently
within 30 cm (12 inches)		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will appear on the cluster or infotainment system screen whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.
- Distance from object may be detected differently when obstacles are not located in front of the sensor.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

### Reverse Parking Distance Warning

Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate when one of the condition is satisfied.

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse).
- The vehicle's rearward speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).

#### \* NOTICE

When the vehicle's rearward speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph), both the front and rear ultrasonic sensors will detect objects. However, the front ultrasonic sensors can detect a person, animal or object when it is within 60 cm (24 inches) from the sensors.

Distance from object	Warning indicator		Warning sound
	When driving backward		
60 ~120 cm (24~48 inches)			Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm (12~24 inches)			Buzzer beeps frequently
within 30 cm (12 inches)			Buzzer beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will appear on the cluster or infotainment system screen whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.

- Distance from object may be detected differently when obstacles are not located in front of the sensor.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

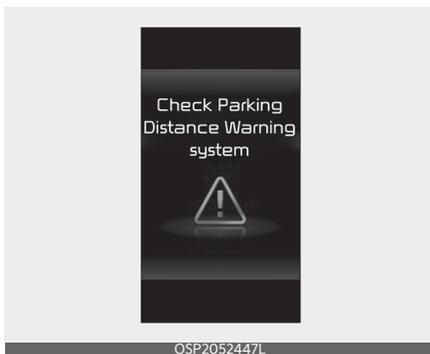
## Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction and precautions

### Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction

After starting the vehicle, a beep will sound once when the gear is shifted to R (Reverse) to indicate Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is operating normally.

However, if one or more of the following occurs, first check whether the ultrasonic sensor is damaged or blocked with foreign material. If it still does not work properly, Kia recommends visiting an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- The audible warning does not sound.
- The buzzer sounds intermittently.
- The warning message appears on the cluster.



### Limitations of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning may not operate normally when:

- Moisture is frozen to the sensor (Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate normally when it is melted.)
- Sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or water (Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate normally when such foreign material are removed.)
- The weather is extremely hot or cold
- The sensor or sensor assembly is disassembled
- The surface of the sensor is pressed hard or an impact is applied with a hard object
- The surface of the sensor is scratched with a sharp object
- The sensors or its surrounding area is directly sprayed with high pressure washer

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning may malfunction when:

- Heavy rain or water spray is present
- Water flows on the surface of the sensor

## Features of your vehicle

- Affected by another vehicle's sensors
- The sensor is covered with snow
- Driving on uneven road, gravel roads or bushes
- Objects that generates ultrasonic waves are near the sensor
- Installing the license plate differently from the original location

## Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW)

- The vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
- Attaching equipments or accessories around the ultrasonic sensors

The following objects may not be detected:

- Sharp or slim objects, such as ropes, chains or small poles.
- Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
- Objects smaller than 100 cm (40 inches) in length and narrower than 14 cm (6 inches) in diameter.
- Pedestrians, animals or objects that are very close to the ultrasonic sensors

### **WARNING**

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is a supplemental function. The operation of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the front and rear views before and whilst parking.

- Your vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle due to the malfunction of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning.
- Pay close attention when driving near objects, pedestrians, and especially children. Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.

- Parking Distance Warning indicator may not occur sequentially depending on vehicle speed or obstacle shape.
  - If Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning needs repair, Kia recommends visiting an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- 

## Lighting

This vehicle is equipped with a variety of lights to illuminate the interior and exterior of the vehicle.

### CAUTION

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the headlight and interior light on for a prolonged time whilst the engine is not running.

---

## Battery saver function

The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged if the lights are left in the ON position. The system automatically shuts off the parking lights after the engine is off and the driver's door is opened. However, the position lamps stay ON even when the driver-side door is opened if the light switch is operated after the engine is turned off. If necessary, to keep the lamps on turn the position lamps OFF and ON again using the headlamp switch on the steering column after the engine is turned off.

## Headlight escort function

If you turn the ENGINE START/STOP button to the ACC or OFF position with the headlights ON, the headlights remain on for about 5 minutes. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlights can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the folding key (or smart key) twice or turning the light switch to the OFF position.

Headlight escort function is activated or deactivated when you select 'User settings → Lights → Headlight time-out' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle →

Lights → Headlight time-out' on the infotainment system.

**\* INFORMATION**

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

**Daytime Running Light (DRL) (if equipped)**

The Daytime Running Light (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day.

The DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, and it is especially helpful after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL will turn the dedicated lamp OFF when:

- The headlight switch is on.
- The vehicle is off.
- The front fog light is on.
- Engaging the Parking Brake.

**Traffic Change (For Europe)**

The low beam light distribution is asymmetric. If you go abroad to a country with opposite traffic direction, this asymmetric part will dazzle oncoming car driver. To prevent dazzle, ECE regulation demand several technical solutions (ex. automatic change system, adhesive sheet, down aiming). This headlamps are designed not to dazzle opposite drivers. So, you need not change your headlamps in a country with opposite traffic direction.

**Lighting control**

The light switch has a headlight and a position lamp position.

Type A



OSP2042032L

Type B



OSP2042599L

Type C



OSP2049447R

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

1. OFF position

- 2. Auto light position
- 3. Position & Tail lamp
- 4. Headlight position

### Position & Tail lamp

Type A



Type B



Type C



When the light switch is in the position lamp position, the front position lamp and auxiliary lamp (if equipped), tail, license light will turn ON.

#### \* NOTICE

Auxiliary lamp will be ON only in position lamp  condition.

### Head light (Low Beam)

Type A



Type B



Type C



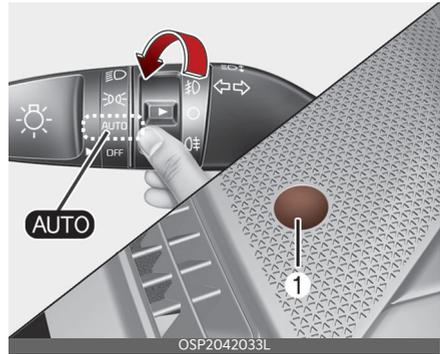
When the light switch is in the head light position, head light (low beam), tail, license light will turn ON.

**\* NOTICE**

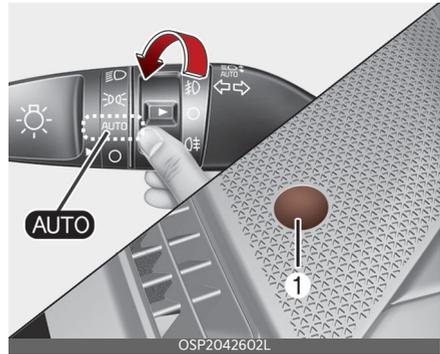
The ignition switch must be in the ON position to turn on the headlights.

**Auto light**

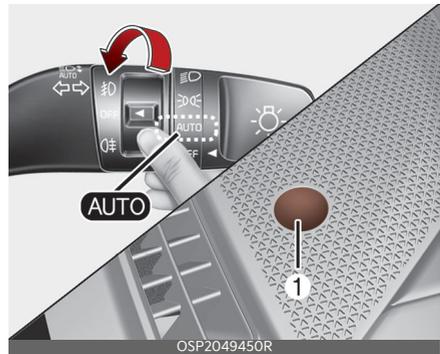
Type A



Type B



Type C



When the light switch is in the AUTO light position, the taillights and head-

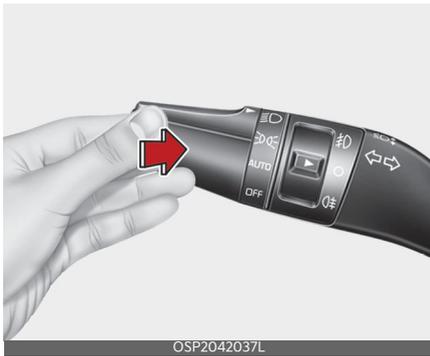
lights will turn ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

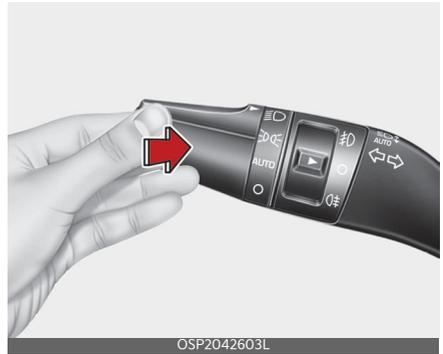
- Never place anything over the sensor (1) located on the instrument panel as this will ensure better auto-light system control.
- Don't clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleaner may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.
- If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windscreen, the Auto light system may not work properly.

**Operating high beam** 

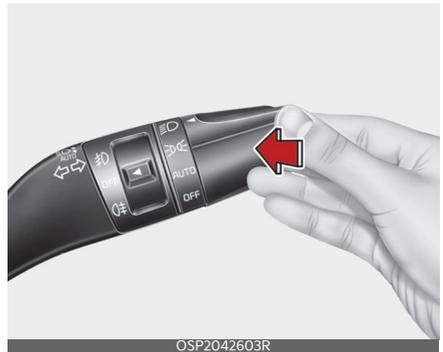
Type A



Type B



Type C



To turn on the high beam headlamp:

- Push the lever away from you.

The lever will return to its original position.

The high beam indicator will light when the headlight high beams are switched on.

**WARNING**

Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.

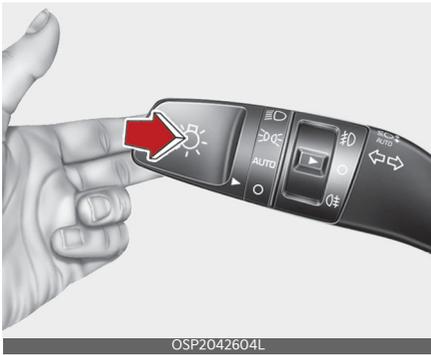
To flash the headlights:

- Pull the lever towards you.

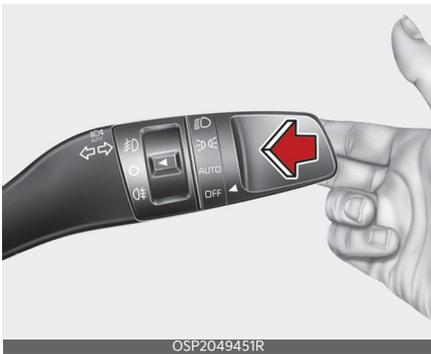
Type A



Type B

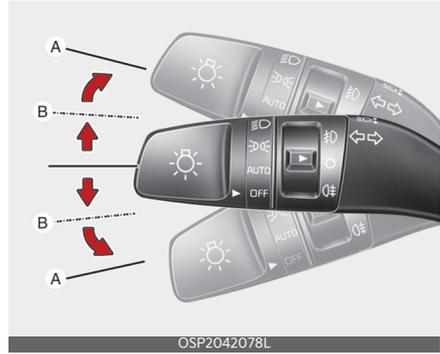


Type C

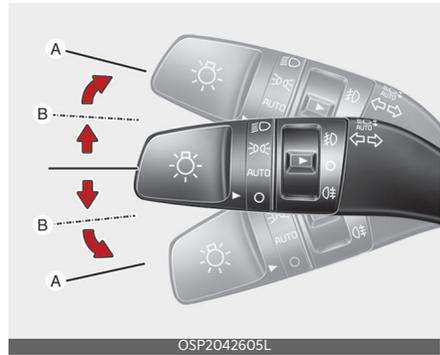


### Operating turn signals and lane change signals

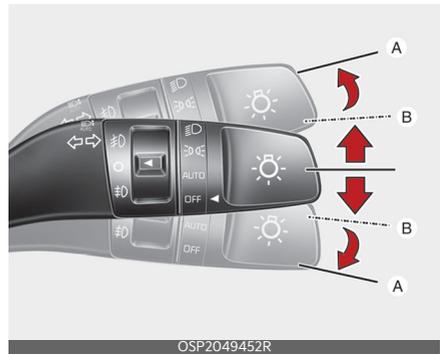
Type A



Type B



Type C



It will return to the normal (low beam) position when released. The headlight switch does not need to be on to use this flashing feature.

The ENGINE START/STOP button must be on for the turn signals to function.

To turn on the turn signals:

- Move the lever up or down (A).  
The green arrow indicators on the instrument panel indicate which turn signal is operating.  
They will self-cancel after a turn is completed. If the indicator continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to the OFF position.

To signal a lane change:

- Move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B).

The lever will return to the OFF position when released.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

### One-touch lane change function

To activate a one-touch lane change function, move the turn signal lever slightly and then release it. The lane change signals will blink 3, 5 or 7 times.

You can activate or deactivate the One touch turn indicator function or choose the number of blinking (3, 5, or 7) by selecting 'Lights → One touch turn indicator'. ('User settings → Lights → One touch turn indicator' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Lights → One touch turn indicator' on the infotainment system)

#### \* INFORMATION

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

#### \* NOTICE

If an indicator flash is abnormally quick or slow, a bulb may be burned out or have a poor electrical connection in the circuit.

### Operating front fog light $\neq$ (if equipped)

Type A



Type B



Type C



The fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch (1) is turned to the on position after the headlight is turned on.

To turn off the fog lights:

Fog lights are designed to provide improved visibility when visibility is poor due to fog, rain or snow, etc.

- Turn the fog light switch (1) to the ON position again.

#### **CAUTION**

When in operation, the fog lights consume large amounts of vehicle electrical power. Only use the fog lights when visibility is poor.

### Operating rear fog light (if equipped)

Type A



Type B



OSP2042607L

Type C



OSP2049454R

To turn the rear fog lights on, turn the rear fog light switch (1) to the on position when the headlight is turned on.

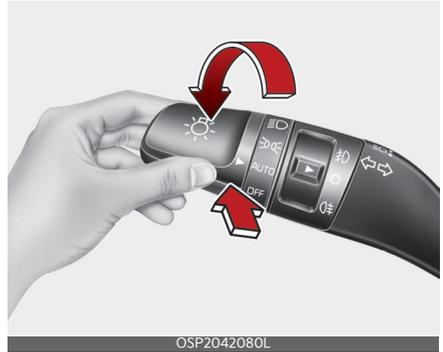
Also, the rear fog lights turn on when the rear fog light switch is turned on after the front fog light switch (if equipped) is turned on and the headlight switch is in the parklight position.

To turn the rear fog lights off:

- Turn the rear fog light switch to the ON position again.

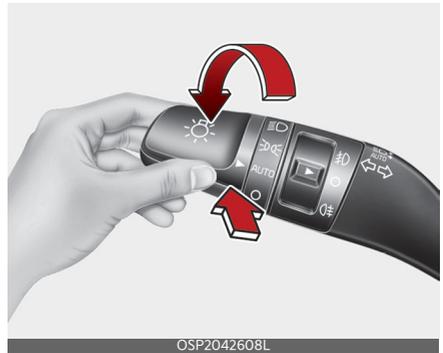
## High Beam Assist (HBA) (if equipped)

Type A



OSP2042080L

Type B



OSP2042608L

Type C



OSP2049080R

High Beam Assist is a function that automatically adjusts the headlamp range (switches between high beam and low beam) depending on the brightness of detected vehicles and certain road conditions.

### Detecting sensor

[1]: Front view camera

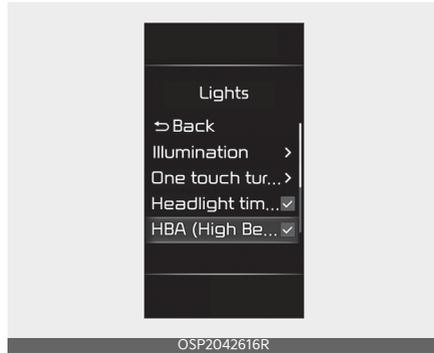


The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect ambient light and brightness whilst driving. Refer to the picture for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

#### \* NOTICE

- Always keep the front view camera in good condition to maintain optimal performance of High Beam Assist.
- For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Sensor fusion) (if equipped)" on page 5-65.

### High Beam Assist setting



With the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position, select 'User settings' on Lights → HBA (High Beam Assist) on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Lights → HBA (High Beam Assist)' on the infotainment system.

#### ⚠ WARNING

For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.

### High Beam Assist operation

#### Display and control

- After selecting 'HBA (High Beam Assist)' in the Settings menu, High Beam Assist will operate by following the procedure below.
  - Place the headlamp switch in the AUTO position and push the headlamp lever towards the instrument cluster. High Beam Assist  indicator light will appear on the cluster and the function will be enabled.
  - When the function is enabled, high beam will turn on when vehicle

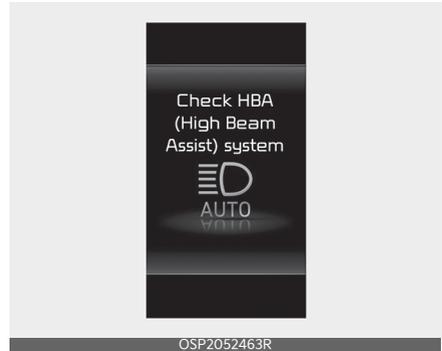
speed is above 30 km/h (20 mph). When vehicle speed is below 20 km/h (12 mph), high beam will not turn on.

- The High Beam  indicator light will appear on the cluster when high beam is on.
- When High Beam Assist is operating, if the headlamp lever or switch is used, the function operates as follow:
  - If the headlamp lever is pulled towards you when the high beam is off, the high beam will turn on without High Beam Assist cancelled. When you let go of the headlamp lever, the lever will move to the middle and the high beam will turn off.
  - If the headlamp lever is pulled towards you when the high beam is on by High Beam Assist, low beam will be on and the function will turn off.
  - If the headlamp switch is placed from AUTO to another position (headlamp/position/off), High Beam Assist will turn off and the corresponding lamp will turn on.
- When High Beam Assist is operating, high beam switches to low beam if any of the following conditions occur:
  - When the headlamp of an oncoming vehicle is detected.
  - When the tail lamp of a vehicle in front is detected.
  - When the headlamp or tail lamp of a motorcycle or a bicycle is detected.
  - When the surrounding ambient light is bright enough that high beams are not required.

- When streetlights or other lights are detected.

## High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations

### High Beam Assist malfunction



When High Beam Assist is not working properly, the 'Check HBA (High Beam Assist) system' warning message will appear and  warning light will appear on the cluster. In this case, have the function inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Limitations of High Beam Assist

High Beam Assist may not work properly in the following situations:

- Light from a vehicle is not detected because of lamp damage, or because it is hidden from sight, etc.
- Headlamp of a vehicle is covered with dust, snow or water.
- A vehicle's headlamps are off but the fog lamps are on and etc.
- There is a lamp that has a similar shape as a vehicle's lamp.
- Headlamps have been damaged or not repaired properly.
- Headlamps are not aimed properly.

- Driving on a narrow curved road, rough road, uphill or downhill.
- Vehicle in front is partially visible on a crossroad or curved road.
- There is a traffic light, reflecting sign, flashing sign or mirror ahead.
- There is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).
- The road conditions are bad such as being wet, iced or covered with snow.
- A vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.
- The vehicle is tilted from a flat tyre or is being towed.
- Light from a vehicle is not detected because of exhaust fume, smoke, fog, snow, etc.

**\* NOTICE**

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Sensor fusion) (if equipped)" on page 5-65.

**⚠ WARNING**

- At times, High Beam Assist may not work properly. The function is for your convenience only. It is the responsibility of the driver for safe driving practices and always check the road conditions for your safety.
- When High Beam Assist does not operate normally, change the headlamp position manually between high beam and low beam.

**Headlight levelling device (if equipped)**



To adjust the headlight beam level according to the number of the passengers and loading weight in the luggage area, turn the beam levelling switch.

The higher the number of the switch position, the lower the headlight beam level. Always keep the headlight beam at the proper levelling position, or headlights may dazzle other road users.

Listed below are the examples of proper switch settings. For loading conditions other than those listed below, adjust the switch position so that the beam level may be the nearest as the condition obtained according to the list.

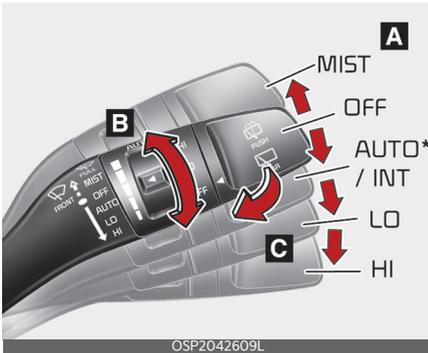
Loading condition	Switch position
Driver only	0
Driver + Front passenger	0
Full passengers (including driver)	1
Full passengers (including driver) + Maximum permissible loading	2
Driver + Maximum permissible loading	3

## Wipers and washers

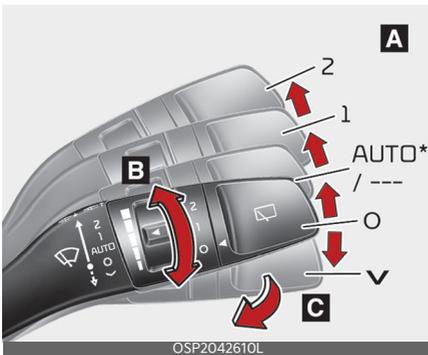
The wipers and washers remove foreign substances from the windscreen and rear window, helping to maintain visibility.

### Front windscreen wiper/washer

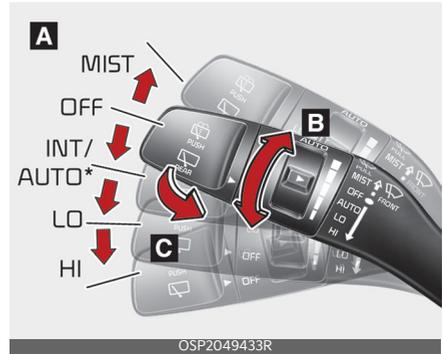
Type A



Type B

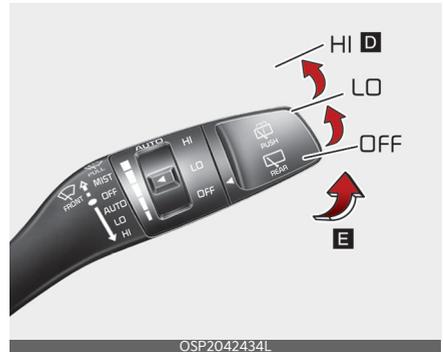


Type C

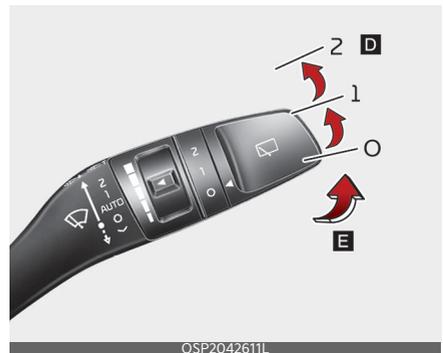


### Rear windscreen wiper/washer

Type A

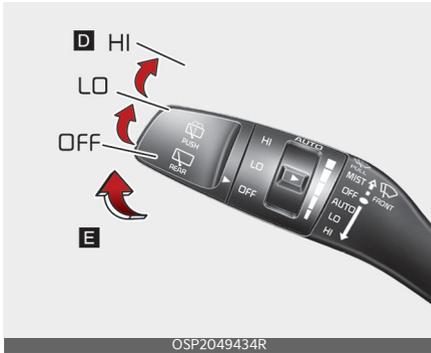


Type B



4

Type C



**A: Wiper speed control (front)**

- MIST/ V - Single wipe
- OFF/ O - Off
- INT/--- - Intermittent wipe
- AUTO\* - Auto control wipe
- LO/ 1 - Low wiper speed
- HI/ 2 - High wiper speed

**B: Intermittent control wipe time adjustment**

**C: Wash with brief wipes (front)**

**D: Rear wiper/washer control**

- HI/ 2 - Continuous wipe
- LO/ 1 - Intermittent wipe
- OFF/ O - Off

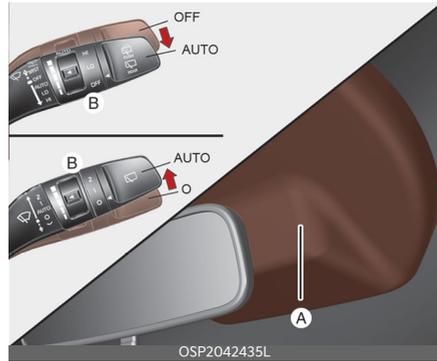
**E: Wash with brief wipes (rear)**

**\* NOTICE**

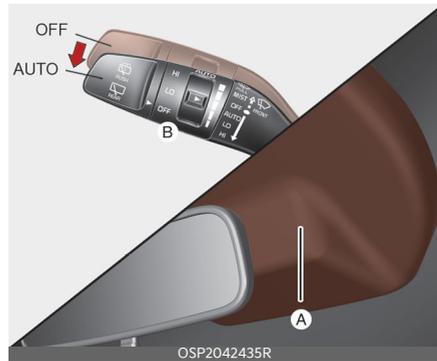
If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windscreen, defrost the windscreen for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windscreen wipers to ensure proper operation. If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the wiper and washer system.

**Auto control (if equipped)**

Type A, B



Type C



The rain sensor (A) located on the upper end of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wiper stops.

To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob (B).

If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when the ignition switch is ON, the wiper will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to OFF position when the wiper is not in use.

**CAUTION**

When the ignition switch is ON and the windscreen wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode, use caution in the following situations to avoid any injury to the hands or other parts of the body:

- Do not touch the upper end of the windscreen glass facing the rain sensor.
- Do not wipe the upper end of the windscreen glass with a damp or wet cloth.
- Do not put pressure on the windscreen glass.

**CAUTION**

- When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the OFF position to stop the auto wiper operation.  
The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode whilst washing the vehicle.
- Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the driver side windscreen glass. Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.
- When starting the vehicle in winter, set the wiper switch in the OFF position. Otherwise, wipers may operate and ice may damage the windscreen wiper blades. Always remove all snow and ice and defrost the windscreen properly prior to operating the windscreen wipers.
- When tinting the windscreen, be careful of any fluid getting into the sensor located in the top centre of the front windscreen. It may damage the related parts.

**Operating windscreen washers**

Type A



OSP2042436L

Type B



OSP2042612L

Type C



OSP2049436R

1. Move the wiper speed control switch to In OFF position.

2. Pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windscreen and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles. Use this function when the windscreen is dirty. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

If the washer does not work, check the washer fluid level. If the fluid level is not sufficient, you will need to add appropriate non-abrasive windscreen washer fluid to the washer reservoir.

The reservoir filler neck is located in the front of the engine compartment on the driver side.

**CAUTION**

To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.

**WARNING**

Do not use the washer in freezing temperatures without first warming the windscreen with the defrosters; the washer solution could freeze on the windscreen and obscure your vision.

**CAUTION**

- To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windscreen, do not operate the wipers when the windscreen is dry.
- To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.
- To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.

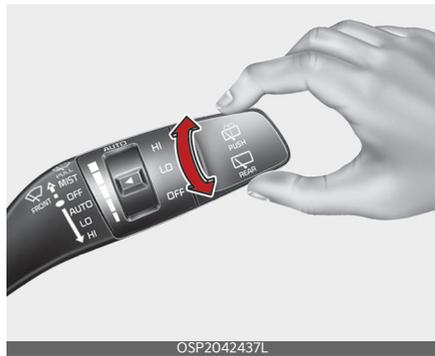
- To prevent possible damage to the wipers and washer system, use anti-freezing washer fluids in the winter season or cold weather.

**Operating rear window wiper and washer switch**

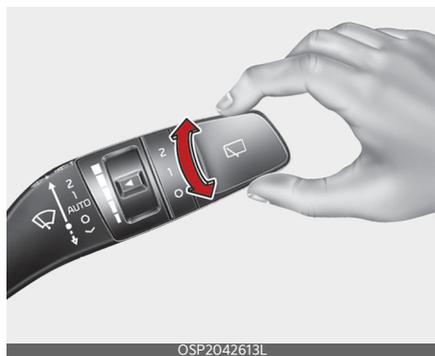
The rear window wiper and washer switch is located at the end of the wiper and washer switch lever.

- Turn the switch to the desired position to operate the rear wiper and washer.

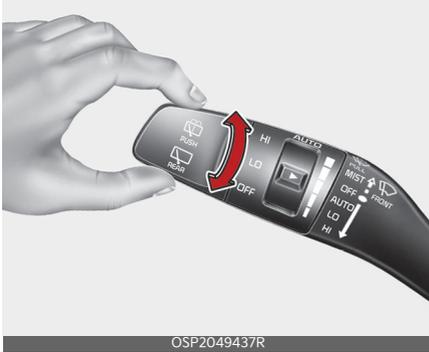
Type A



Type B



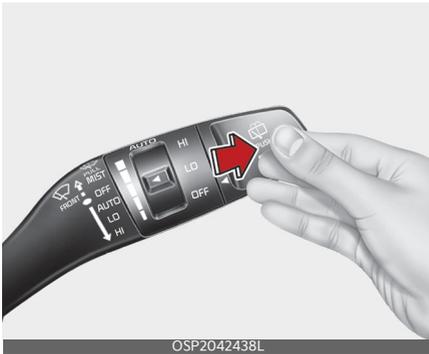
Type C



OSP2049437R

- HI/ 2 - Normal wiper operation
- LO/ 1 - Intermittent wiper operation
- OFF/ O - Wiper is not in operation
- Push the lever away from you to spray rear washer fluid and to run the rear wipers 1~3 cycles.

Type A



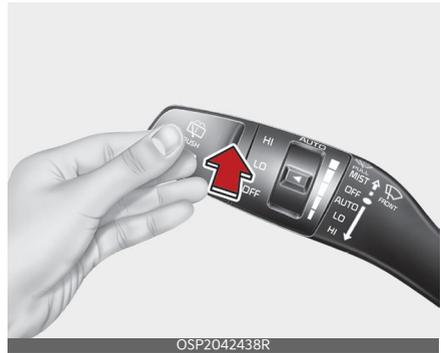
OSP2042438L

Type B



OSP2042614L

Type C



OSP2042438R

4

The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

### Heated washer nozzle (if equipped)

The heated washer nozzle function defreeze the washer nozzles in freezing weather.

The heated washer nozzle will turn on and off automatically when the ignition switch is in ON or when the engine is running in following conditions:

- Turns ON when the outside temperature is below 5°C, and OFF when it is over 10°C.

- The washer fluid defreezing speed may be slower when the ignition is in ON, than compared to when the engine is running.
- When the ignition is in ON, after 20 minutes of operation, the system will turn off automatically to prevent possible battery discharge.
- After the engine is running, the washer fluid will defrost after 5 to 10 minutes.
- If the engine has been started within the operating temperature, the heated nozzle remains ON even after 20 minutes.

### \* NOTICE

In below conditions, the heated washer nozzle may not function properly.

- The washer fluids in the washer reservoir is frozen.
- Outside temperature sensor is malfunctioning.

## Interior lights

This vehicle is equipped with lights throughout the vehicle to illuminate the interior.

### ⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the engine is not running.

It may cause battery discharge.

### ⚠ WARNING

Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. Accidents could happen because the view may be obscured by interior lights.

## Automatic turn off function

The interior lights automatically turn off approximately 20 minutes after the ENGINE START/STOP button is turned off, if the lights are in the ON position.

If your vehicle is equipped with the theft alarm system, the interior lights automatically turn off approximately 5 seconds after the system is armed.

## Map lamp

Type A



OSP2042460L

Type B



Type C



- Press the lens (1) to turn ON the map lamp.  
To turn the map lamp OFF press the lens (1) again.
-  (2): DOOR mode
  - The map lamp and room lamp come on when a door is opened. The lamps go out after approximately 30 seconds.
  - The map lamp and room lamp come on for approximately 30 seconds when doors are unlocked with a smart key as long as the doors are not opened.

- The map lamp and room lamp will stay on for approximately 20 minutes if a door is opened with the ENGINE START/STOP button in the ACC or OFF position.
- The map lamp and room lamp will stay on continuously if the door is opened with the ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position.
- The map lamp and room lamp will go out immediately if the ENGINE START/STOP button is changed to the ON position or all doors are locked.
- To turn off the DOOR mode, press the DOOR button (2) once again (not pressed).
-  (3): Press this switch to turn the front and rear room lamps on and off.

**\* NOTICE**

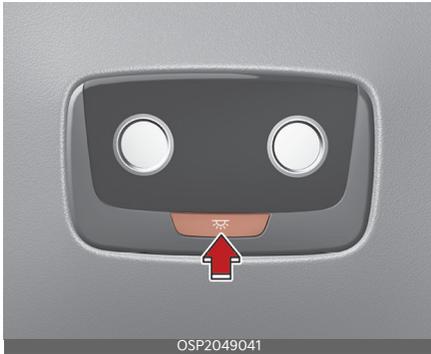
The DOOR mode and ROOM mode can not be selected at a time.

**Room lamp**

Type A



Type B



Press the switch to turn the room lamp on and off.

### Luggage room lamp



The luggage room lamp comes on when the tailgate is opened.

### CAUTION

The luggage room lamp comes on as long as the tailgate opens. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, close the tailgate securely after using the luggage room.

### Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)



Push the switch to turn the light on or off.

- ☰: The lamp will turn on if this button is pressed.
- : The lamp will turn off if this button is pressed.

### CAUTION

#### Vanity mirror lamp

Always close the lid of the vanity mirror in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sun visor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sun visor.

### Glove box lamp (if equipped)

The glove box lamp comes on when the glove box is opened.

**⚠ CAUTION**

To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, close the glove box securely after using the glove box.

**Defroster****⚠ CAUTION**

To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.

**\* NOTICE**

If you want to defrost and defog the front windscreen, refer to "Windscreen defrosting and defogging" on page 4-146.

## Defroster

The vehicle is equipped with a defroster for removing frost or fog from the rear window.

### ⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.

If you want to defrost and defog the front windscreen, refer to "Windscreen defrosting and defogging" on page 4-146.

## Rear window defroster

Type A



Type B



Type C



The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the rear window, whilst the engine is running. To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button.

The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.

If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.

The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off.

To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

## Outside rearview mirror defroster (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with the outside rearview mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster

## Climate control system

The climate control system uses cooling and heating to help maintain a pleasant environment inside the vehicle.

### System operation

#### Ventilation

1. Set the mode to the  position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

#### Heating

1. Set the mode to the  position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.
  - If the windscreen fogs up, set the mode to the  or  position.

#### Operation tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.

- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just at the base of the windscreen. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent fog from forming on the inside of the windscreen:
  - Set the air intake control to the fresh air position and the fan speed to the desired position.
  - Turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

### Air conditioning (A/C)

All Kia air conditioning systems are filled with R-134a refrigerant.

1. Start the vehicle. Press the A/C button.
2. Set the mode to the  position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside-air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

### CAUTION

#### Excessive Air conditioning Use

When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely whilst driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause vehicle overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates vehicle overheating.

### CAUTION

The air conditioning system should only be used with the windows and sunroof closed to prevent condensation inside the vehicle that may cause damage to electrical components.

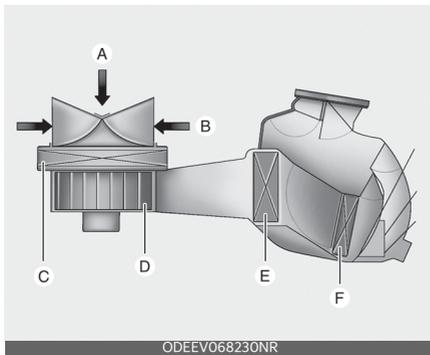
### Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in vehicle speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal characteristic of system operation.
- To ensure maximum system performance, the air conditioning system should be ran for a few minutes each month.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal characteristic of system operation.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling; however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.

- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal characteristic of system operation.

### Climate control air filter

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system.



- A: Outside air
- B: Recirculated air
- C: Climate control air filter
- D: Blower
- E: Evaporator core
- F: Heater core

If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease. This leads to moisture accumulating on the inside of the windscreen even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, have the climate control air filter replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### \* NOTICE

- Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent air conditioner filter inspections and changes are required.
- When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Air conditioning refrigerant label

Example - Type A



Example - Type B



\* The actual air conditioning refrigerant label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Each symbol and specification on the air conditioning refrigerant label is represented below:

1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant
3. Classification of Compressor lubricant
4. Caution
5. Flammable Refrigerant
6. To requires Registered Technician to service Air Conditioning system
7. Service manual



OSP2089007L

The refrigerant label is located on the underside of the bonnet.

Refer to "Refrigerant label" on page 8-13 for more detail on the location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

### Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a bad influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, have the system inspected by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### **WARNING**

#### Vehicles equipped with R-134a



Because the refrigerant is at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

### **WARNING**

#### Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf



Since the refrigerant is mildly flammable and operated at high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant are used.

All refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment.

Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment.

Failure to heed these warnings can lead to serious injuries.

## Manual climate control system

The manual climate control system uses cooling and heating to help maintain a pleasant environment inside the vehicle.

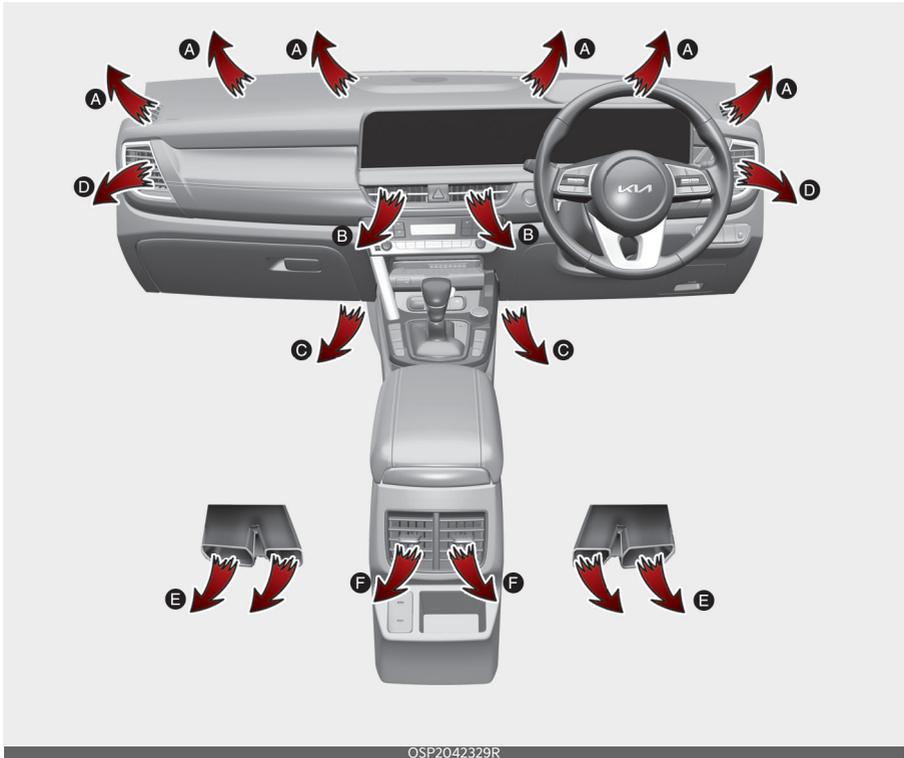


1. Fan speed control knob
2. Air intake control button
3. Mode selection knob
4. Rear window defroster
5. Temperature control knob
6. Air conditioning (A/C) button

### **CAUTION**

Operating the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the engine is running.

## Heating and air conditioning



1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.  
For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;
  - Heating: 
  - Cooling: 
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.  
If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

## Mode selection

The mode selection buttons control the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.



Air can be directed to the floor, dashboard outlets, or windscreen. Five symbols are used to represent Face, Bi-Level, Floor, Floor-Defrost and Defrost air position.

### Face-Level (B, D, F)

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

### Bi-Level (B, C, D, E, F)

Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

### Floor-Level (A, C, D, E)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windscreen, side window defrosters and side air vents.

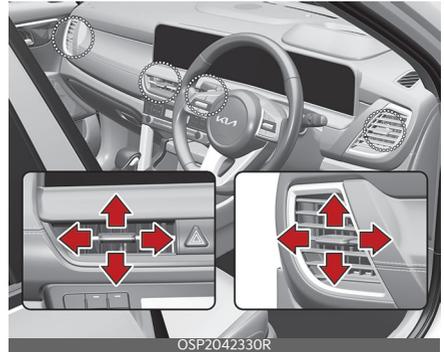
### Floor/Defrost-Level (A, C, D, E)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windscreen with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters and side air vents.

### Defrost-Level (A, D)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters and side air vents.

## Instrument panel vents



You can adjust the direction of air delivered from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

## Temperature control

The temperature control knob allows you to control the temperature of the air flowing from the ventilation system.



To change the air temperature in the passenger compartment, turn the knob

to the right for warm and hot air or to the left for cooler air.

### Controlling air intake



To change the air intake control position. The air intake control is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

- Push the desired control button

### Recirculated air position



The indicator light on the button illuminates when the recirculated air position is selected.

With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

### Outside (fresh) air position



The indicator light on the button will turn off when the outside (fresh) air position is selected.

With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

### \* NOTICE

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and make the air in the passenger compartment stale.

In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the re-circulated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

### ⚠ WARNING

- Continuously using the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.
- Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.
- Continuously using the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible whilst driving.

### Controlling fan speed

The fan speed control knob allows you to control the fan speed of the air flowing from the ventilation system.

The ENGINE START/STOP button must be in the ON position for fan operation.

To change the fan speed:

- Turn the knob to the right for higher speed or left for lower speed.

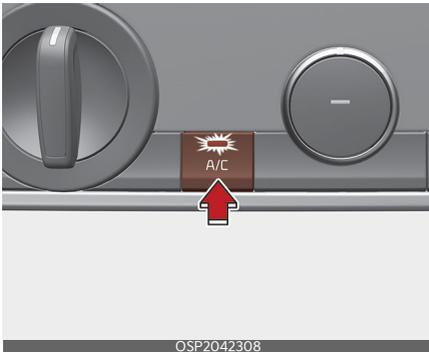


### Turning off the blowers

To turn off the blowers:

- Turn the fan speed control knob to the "0" position.

### Air conditioning (A/C)



- Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).
- Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

### Automatic climate control system

The automatic climate control system uses cooling and heating to help maintain a pleasant environment inside the vehicle.

Type A



Type B



- 1. Fan speed control button
- 2. Air intake control button
- 3. Mode selection button
- 4. Rear window defroster button
- 5. Temperature control button/ knob
- 6. Air conditioning (A/C) button
- 7. OFF button
- 8. Front windscreen defroster button
- 9. AUTO (automatic control) button
- 10. Climate control display

**\* NOTICE**

Operating the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the engine is running.

**Heating and air conditioning automatically**

1. Press the AUTO button.

The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically by setting the temperature.

Type A



Type B



2. Press the temperature control button and turn the temperature control switch to the desired temperature.



OSP2062058L

**\* NOTICE**

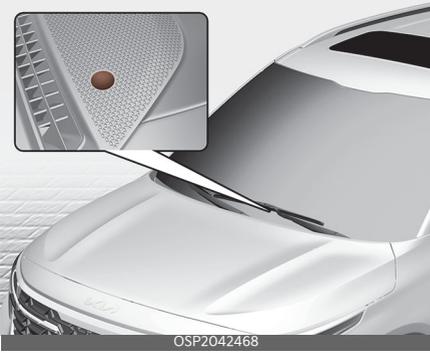
- To turn the automatic operation off, select any button or switch of the following:
    - Mode selection button
    - Air conditioning button
    - Front windscreen defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windscreen defroster function. The AUTO sign will illuminate on the information display once again.)
    - Fan speed control button
- The selected function will be controlled manually whilst other functions operate automatically.
- For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 22 °C (72 °F).

**\* NOTICE**

Never place anything over the sensor located on the instrument panel to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.

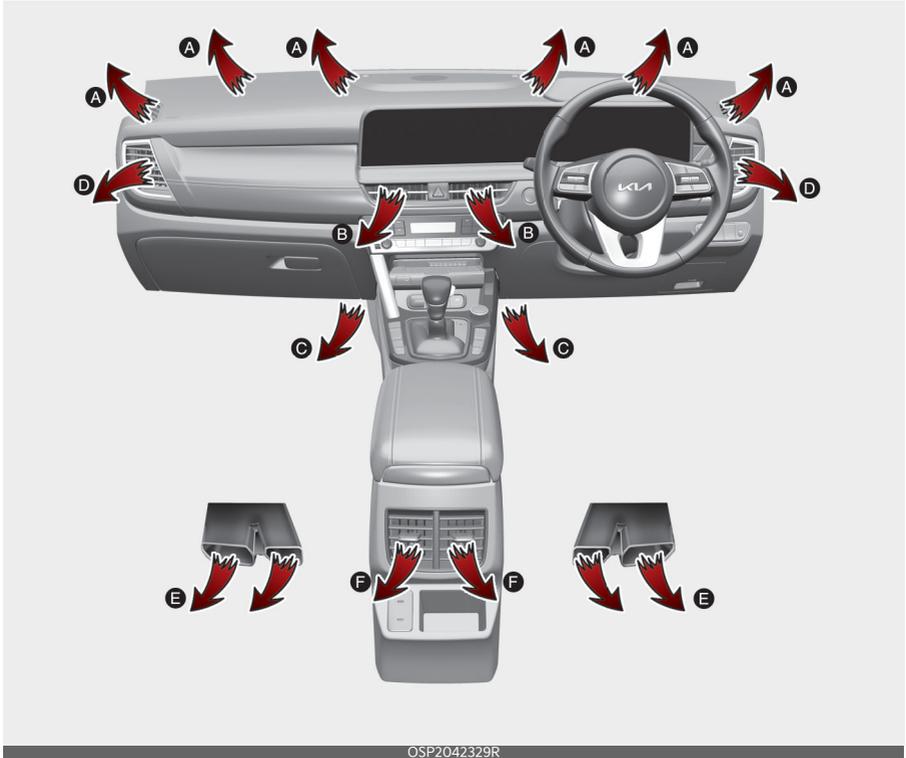
Features of your vehicle

Automatic climate control system



## Heating and air conditioning manually

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pressing buttons other than the AUTO button.



In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons selected.

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
  - For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;
    - Heating: 
    - Cooling: 
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.
  - Press the AUTO button in order to convert to fully automatic control of the system.

### Mode selection

The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Type A



Type B



The air flow outlet ports are switched in the following sequence:



#### Floor-Level (A, C, D, E)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windscreen, side window defrosters and side air vents.

#### Floor/Defrost-Level (A, C, D, E)

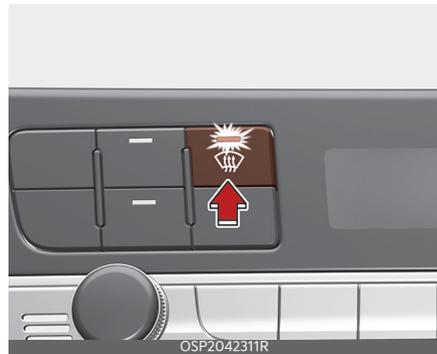
Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windscreen with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters and side air vents.

#### Defrost-Level (A, D)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters and side air vents.

#### Defrost mode

Type A



Type B

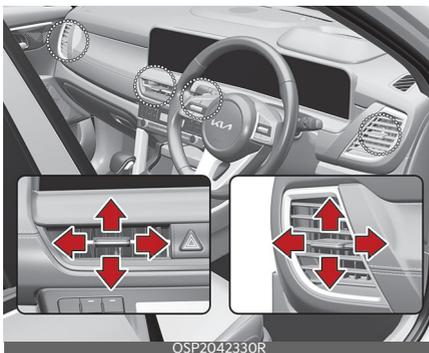


When you select the defrost mode, the following system settings will be made automatically:

- The air conditioning system will be turned on.
- The outside (fresh) air position will be selected.
- The fan speed will be set to the high speed.

To turn the defrost mode off, press the mode button or defrost button again or AUTO button.

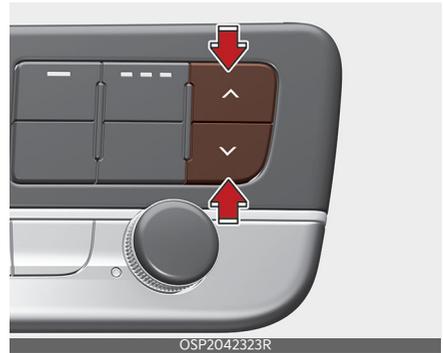
### Instrument panel vents



You can adjust the direction of air delivered from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

### Temperature control

Type A



Type B



Press the temperature control button and turn the temperature control switch to the desired temperature.

When pressing the button, the temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5 °C. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously. (for type A)

When rotating the knob, the temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5 /C. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.(for type B)

## Changing temperature scale

You can switch the temperature mode from Centigrade to Fahrenheit as follows:

- Whilst pressing the OFF button, press the AUTO button for 3 seconds or more.

The display will change from Centigrade to Fahrenheit, or from Fahrenheit to Centigrade. If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Centigrade.

## Controlling air intake

To change the air intake control position: This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

- Push the desired control button.

## Recirculated air position



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

## Outside (fresh) air position



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

## \* NOTICE

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.

In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

## ⚠ WARNING

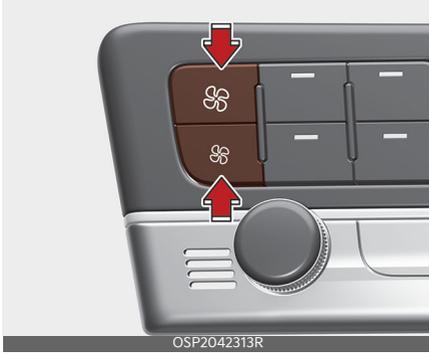
- Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.
- Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.
- Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible whilst driving.

## Fan speed control

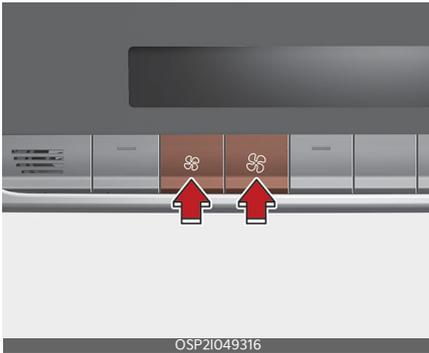
The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by operating the fan speed control button.

The higher the fan speed is, the more air is delivered.

Type A



Type B

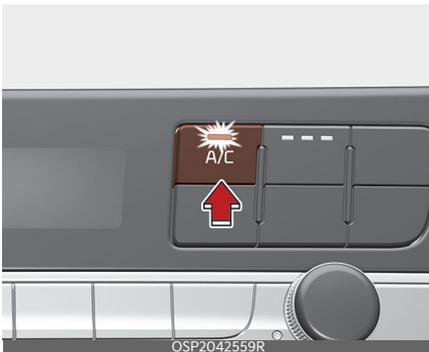


To turn the fan speed control off:

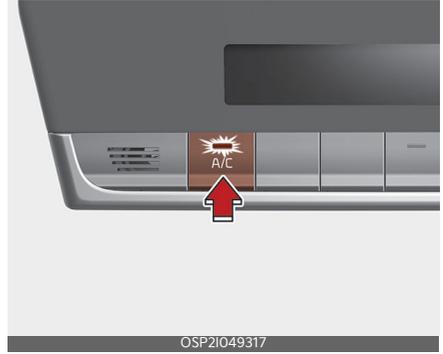
- Press the OFF button.

### Air conditioning (A/C)

Type A



Type B



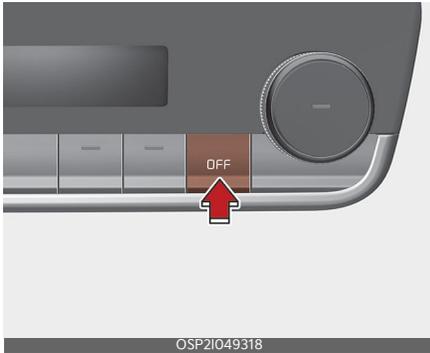
- Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).
- Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

### OFF mode

Type A



Type B



- Press the OFF button to turn off the air climate control system. However, you can still operate the mode and air intake buttons as long as the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ON position.

## Windscreen defrosting and defogging

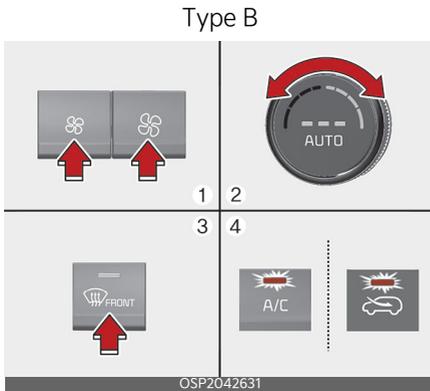
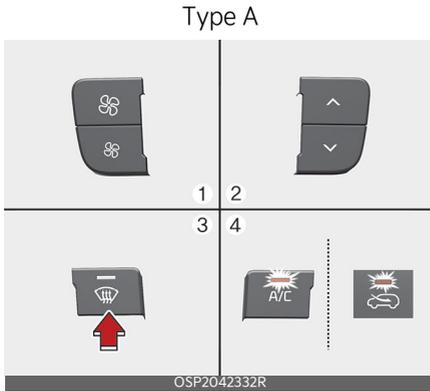
When the windscreen is covered with frost or moisture, the front view is blurred, you should remove the frost and moisture.

### Defogging inside windscreen with manual climate control system



1. Select any fan speed except "0" position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Select the  or  position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically. If the air conditioning and outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, press the corresponding button manually.

### Defogging inside windscreen with the automatic climate control



1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
  2. Select desired temperature.
  3. Press the defroster button (👑).
  4. The outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically and the air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature.
- If the air conditioning and outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button manually. If the 👑 position is

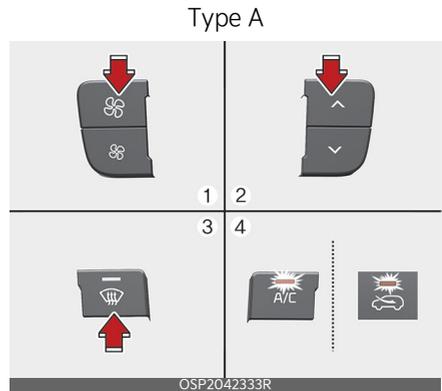
selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.

### Defrosting outside windscreen with manual climate control system

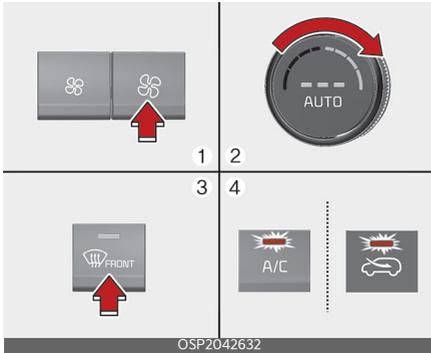


1. Set the fan speed to the highest (extreme right) position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot position.
3. Select the 👑 position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically.

### Defrosting outside windscreen with automatic climate control



Type B



1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button (🚗).
4. The outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically and the air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature.

**Defogging logic (if equipped)**

To reduce the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windscreen, the air intake or air conditioning is controlled automatically according to certain conditions such as 🚗 or 🚗 position.

To cancel automatic defogging logic or return to the automatic defogging logic, do the following.

**Canceling/returning automatic defogging logic on manual climate control system**

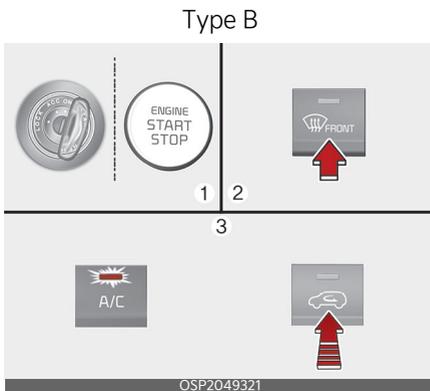
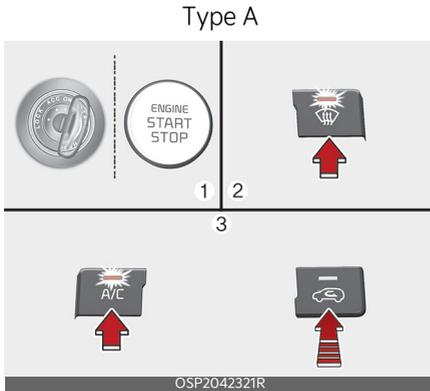


1. Turn the ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
2. Select the (🚗) position.
3. Press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The indicator light in the air intake control button will blink 3 times. It indicates that the defogging logic is cancelled or returned to the programmed status.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.

### Canceling/returning automatic defogging logic on automatic climate control system



1. Turn the ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
2. Press the defroster button (  ).
3. Whilst pressing the air conditioning (A/C) button, press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The recirculation indicator blinks 3 times in 0.5 second of intervals. It indicates that the defogging logic is cancelled or returned to the programmed status.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.

### Auto defogging system (if equipped)



Auto defogging reduces the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windscreen by automatically sensing the moisture of inside the windscreen.

Auto Defog System is activated when you select 'Settings → Vehicle → Climate → Defog/Defrost options → Auto defog' from the Settings in the Infotainment System screen.

#### \* INFORMATION

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.



This indicator illuminates when the auto defogging system senses the moisture of inside the windscreen and

operates.

If more moisture is in the vehicle, higher steps operate as follow.

(For European region)

- Step 1: Outside air position
- Step 2: Blowing air flow toward the windscreen
- Step 3: Increasing air flow toward the windscreen
- Step 4: Operating the air conditioning. (For except european region)
- Step 1: Operating the air conditioning.
- Step 2: Outside air position
- Step 3: Blowing air flow toward the windscreen
- Step 4: Increasing air flow toward the windscreen  
(Step could be changed according to the out side temperature)

**To cancel or reset the Auto Defogging System**

Press the front windscreen defroster button for 3 seconds when the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ON position.

When the ADS system is cancelled, Indicator on the button will blink 3 times per 0.5 sec and the position "ADS OFF" will be displayed on the climate control information screen.

When the ADS system is reset, Indicator on the button will blink 6 times per 0.25 sec and the position "ADS OFF" will be disappeared on the climate control information screen.

You can set or release the Auto Defogging System on the Climate Information selection screen.

Auto Defog System is activated when you select 'Settings → Vehicle → Climate → Defog/Defrost options → Auto defog' from the Settings in the Infotainment System screen.

If the battery is discharged or detached, the auto defogging system will be reset. Adjust the feature accordingly.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Pressing one of Air intake recirculation, A/C OFF, Wind Direction Mode selection Buttons will deactivate the Auto Defogging System. To secure a driver's vision, never push air recirculation, A/C OFF, Wind Direction Buttons whilst the Auto Defogging System is running.
- Do not forcibly remove the sensor cover on the top of windscreen glass on the driver's side in the car. Removing the cover can damage the sensor.

**Automatic Air Ventilation**

When operating heater and air conditioner for the vehicle ventilation, if you maintain the Recirculation mode for 30 minutes or over at low temperature, it automatically changes to Fresh mode.

**Automatic Air Ventilation control procedure**

When set up or release the automatic air ventilation function, select the Mode Selection  button at heater or air conditioner on. And press the Air Intake Control button for 5 times or over within 3seconds together within 3 seconds together with pressing the Air conditioning button.

When release the automatic ventilation function, the Recirculation mode indicator will blink 3 times at 0.5 second intervals and air direction, air volume, Recirculation/Fresh mode, and air conditioner is automatically controlled.

When it set the automatic ventilation function, the Recirculation mode indicator will blink 6 times at 0.25 seconds

intervals and air direction, air volume, Recirculation/Fresh mode, and air conditioner is automatically controlled. Auto dehumidify is activated when you select 'Settings → Vehicle → Climate → Automatic ventilation → Auto dehumidify' from the Settings in the Infotainment System screen.

### \* INFORMATION

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### Activate upon Washer Fluid Use

To prevent the odor from entering to inside the vehicle, the ventilation system changes to Recirculated Air Mode for a whilst when the windscreen washer fluid sprayed.

### System setting

1. ENGINE START/STOP button is ON.
2. Select Floor-Level (🌀) air flow direction by pressing Mode Selection button.
3. With pressing Air Conditioning button, press the Recirculated Air button more than 4 times within 2 seconds.
4. If the system is set up, the indicator on Recirculated Air button will blink 6 times.

### System cancellation

1. ENGINE START/STOP button is ON.
2. Select Floor-Level (🌀) air flow direction by pressing Mode Selection button.
3. With pressing Air Conditioning button, press the Recirculated Air button more than 4 times within 2 seconds.
4. If the system is cancelled, the indicator on Recirculated Air button will blink 3 times.

Activation on washer fluid is activated when you select 'Settings → Vehicle → Climate → Activation on washer fluid use → Internal air circulation' from the Settings in the Infotainment System screen.

### \* INFORMATION

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

### Sunroof inside air recirculation (if equipped)

The outside (fresh) air position is automatically selected, when the sunroof is opened. When you select the recirculated air position, the system maintains the recirculated air position for 3 minutes and then automatically converts to the outside (fresh) air position.

When the sunroof is closed, the air intake position will return to the original position that was selected.

## Storage compartment

These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or passengers.

### ⚠ CAUTION

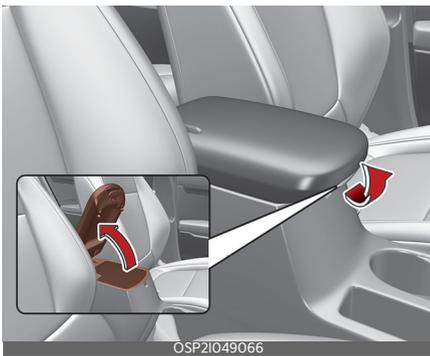
- To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartment.
- Always keep the storage compartment covers closed whilst driving. Do not attempt to place so many items in the storage compartment that the storage compartment cover cannot close securely.

### ⚠ WARNING

#### Flammable materials

Do not store, propane cylinders or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.

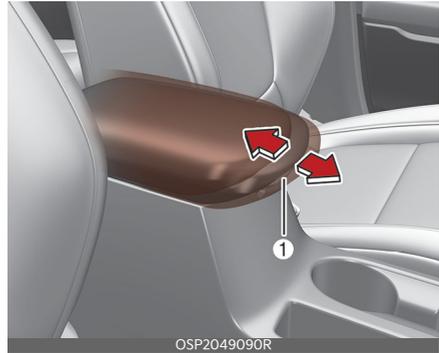
## Centre console storage



To open the centre console storage:

- Pull up the lever.

## Sliding armrest



To move forward:

- Grab the lever (1) in front portion of the armrest and pull it forward.

To move rearward:

- Grab the lever (1) in front portion of the armrest and push it rearward.

### ⚠ WARNING

Do not grab the front portion of the armrest when moving the armrest rearward. It may pinch your fingers.

## Glove box



To open the glove box:

- Pull the handle and the glove box will automaticall open.

Close the glove box after use.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Glove Box**

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed whilst driving.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not keep food in the glove box for a long time.

**Luggage net holder**



To keep items from shifting in the cargo area, you can use the 4 holders located in the cargo area to attach the luggage net.

**⚠ CAUTION**

To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, be careful when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage compartment.

**⚠ WARNING**

Avoid eye injury. DO NOT overstretch the luggage net, ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's

recoil path. DO NOT use when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.

**Luggage board**

You can place reflector triangle and etc. under the luggage board.

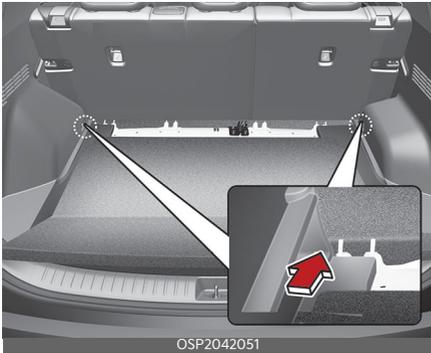


1. Grasp the handle on the top of the cover and lift it.
2. Fold the rear part of luggage board forward.
3. Lift up luggage board frontward. (Luggage board stand itself)

**Increase cargo space**

If you want to increase cargo space:

1. Grasp the handle on the top of the cover and lift it.
2. Fold the rear part of the luggage board forward.
3. Pull the luggage board hinge to the end of sliding slot and it will fall down lower to increase cargo space.

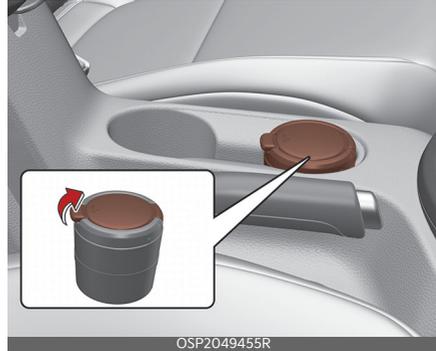


4. Slide it forward (refer to the above pictures).

## Interior features

There are various features inside the vehicle for the convenience of the occupants.

### Ashtray (if equipped)



- To use the ashtray, open the cover.
- To clean or empty the ashtray, pull it out. Use the ashtray by leaning it to the cup holder right beside.

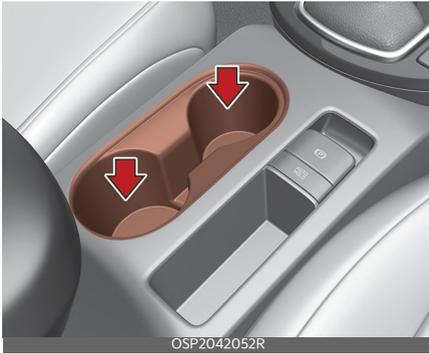
### **⚠ WARNING**

#### Ashtray use

- Do not use the vehicle's ashtrays as waste receptacles.
- Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.

## Cup holder

Front



Rear (if equipped)



Cups or small beverage cans may be placed in the cup holders.

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### Hot liquids

- Do not place uncovered cups with hot liquid in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you burn yourself. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.
- To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or unsecured

bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a vehicle that is heated up. It may explode.

### **\* NOTICE**

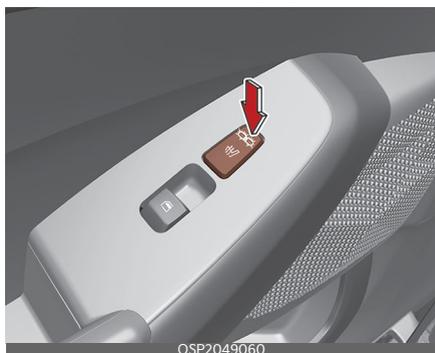
- Keep your drinks sealed whilst driving to prevent spilling your drink. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/ electronic parts.
- When cleaning spilled liquids, do not dry the cup holder at high temperature. This may damage the cup holder.

## Seat warmer (if equipped)

Front seat



Rear seat (if equipped)



With the ignition switch in the ON position:

The seat warmer is provided to warm the front seats during cold weather.

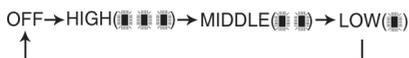
- Push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

### Temperature control (Manual)

- Each time you press the switch, the temperature setting of the seat will change as follows:

Front seat



Rear seat (if equipped)



- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

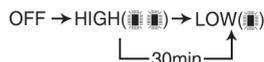
### Temperature control (Automatic)

The seat warmer starts to automatically control the seat temperature in order to prevent low-temperature burns after being manually turned ON.

Front seat



Rear seat (if equipped)



You may manually press the button to increase the seat temperature. However, it soon returns to the automatic mode again.

- When pressing the switch for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmer operating, the seat warmer will turn OFF.
- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ON position.

### \* NOTICE

With the seat warmer switch in the ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the surface of the heater or seats.

- To prevent overheating the seat warmer, do not place anything on the seats that insulates against heat, such as blankets, cushions or seat covers whilst the seat warmer is in operation.
- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers. Damage to the seat warming components could occur.
- Do not change the seat cover. It may damage the seat warmer or airventilation system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Seat warmer burns**

Passengers should use extreme caution when using seat warmers due to the possibility of excess heating or burns. The seat warmer may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. In particular, the driver must exercise extreme care for the following types of passengers:

1. Infants, children, elderly or handicapped persons, or hospital outpatients
2. Persons with sensitive skin or those that burn easily
3. Fatigued individuals
4. Intoxicated individuals
5. Individuals taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness (sleeping pills, cold tablets, etc.)

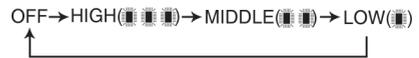
**Air ventilation seat (if equipped)**

Front seat



The temperature setting of the seat changes according to the switch position.

- To ventilate your seat cushion, press the switch. Each time you press the switch, the airflow will change as follows:



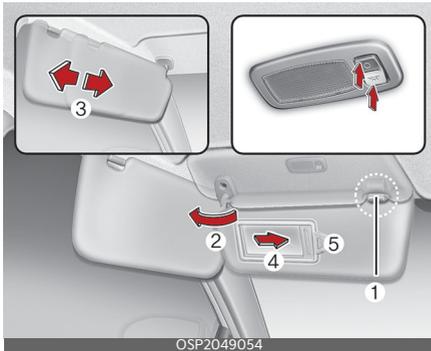
The seat warmer (with air ventilation) defaults to the OFF position whenever the ENGINE START/STOP button is turned on.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Seat damage**

When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the air ventilation seat.

## Sun visor



Use the sun visor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.

- To use the sun visor, pull it downward.
- To use the sun visor for the side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2). You can slide the sun visor if necessary (3). (if equipped)
- To use the vanity mirror, pull down the visor and slide the mirror cover (4).

The ticket holder (5) is provided for holding a tollgate ticket.

### **⚠ WARNING**

For your safety, do not block your view when using the sun visor.

### **\* NOTICE**

Do not put several tickets in the ticket holder at one time. This could cause damage to the ticket holder.

## USB charger (if equipped)

The USB car charger allows drivers to charge their digital devices like smartphones, and PC tablets.

Front



Rear



Plug the cable to the USB port, charging will begin.

The USB car charger is available with either the ACC on or the ignition on. We recommend you connect the USB port and digital devices with the engine running. See the display screen of the device to check its charging process completion. Your smartphone or table PC could get heated up whilst charging. This is no reason to worry, as it doesn't impact life or functions of the device. For the safety reason, charging can be stopped if the battery gets heated up to a certain point of temperature that the devices can be negatively affected. Charging some digital devices is not available or requires

special dedicated adapters if their charging methods don't fit the way the USB car charger works. Quick Charge 2.0 is available on the smart phone or the table PC equipped with fast charging capabilities. The applicable is as follows: (<https://www.qualcomm.com/documents/quick-charge-device-list>)

The smart phone or PC tablet without fast charging is charged at a regular speed.

Rated output:

- Digital devices with fast charging:
  - 9.0 V, 1.67 A
- Digital devices with normal charging:
  - 5.0 V, 2.1 A

### **⚠ CAUTION**

- Use the USB car charger with the ignition on. Otherwise, Vehicle battery can be discharged.
- Use the official USB cable of the manufacturer of the digital device to be charged.
- Make sure that any foreign object, drinks, and water do not come into contact with the USB car charger. Water or foreign object can damage the USB charger.
- Do not use the device those current consumption exceeds 2.1 A.
- Do not connect an electrical device that generates excessive electromagnetic noise to the USB car port. If you do so, noise can be caused or vehicle electronic devices can be interrupted whilst audio or AV is on.
- If the charger is connected incorrectly, it can cause serious damage on the devices. Please note that damages due to incorrect usage are not covered by warranty service.

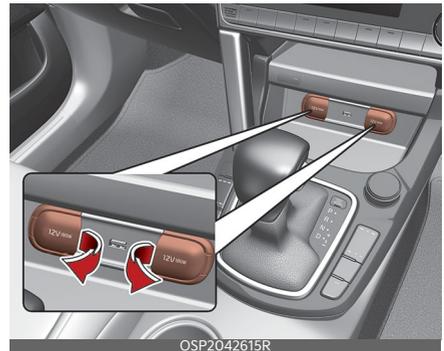
## Power outlet

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems.

Type A



Type B



The devices should draw less than 10 amps with the vehicle on.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Use the power outlet only when the vehicle is on and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the vehicle off could cause the battery to discharge.

- Only use 12 V electric accessories which are less than 10 A in electric capacity.
- Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.
- Close the cover when not in use.
- Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.
- Push the plug in as far as it will go. If good contact is not made, the plug may overheat and the fuse may open.
- Plug in battery equipped electronic devices with reverse current protection. The current from the battery may flow into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and cause system malfunction.



Firmly close all doors, and ignition switch is ON. To start wireless charging, place the smart phone equipped with wireless charging function on the wireless charging pad.

For best wireless charging results, place the smart phone on the centre of the charging pad.

The wireless charging system is designed for one smart phone equipped with Qi only. Please refer to the smart phone accessory cover or the smart phone manufacturer homepage to check whether your smart phone supports Qi function.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Electric shock**

Do not put a finger or a foreign object (pen, etc.) into a power outlet and do not touch with a wet hand. You may get an electric shock.

**⚠ WARNING**

If any metallic object such as coins is located between the wireless charging system and the smart phone, the charging may be disrupted. Also, the metallic object may heat up.

**Wireless smart phone charging system (if equipped)**

A wireless smart phone charging system is located in front of the centre console.

**Wireless smart phone charging**

1. Remove any object on the smart phone charging pad including the smart key. If there is any foreign object on the pad other than a smart phone, the wireless charging function may not operate properly.

2. Place the smart phone on the centre of the wireless charging pad.
3. The indicator light will change to orange once the wireless charging begins. After the charging is complete, the orange light will change to green.
4. You can choose to turn the wireless charging function to either ON or OFF by selecting the Settings in the Infotainment System screen.

You may activate or deactivate this function from the Settings in the Infotainment System screen as 'Settings → Vehicle → Convenience → wireless charging system',

If the wireless charging does not work, gently move your smart phone around the pad until the charging indicator light turns yellow. Depending on the smart phone, the charging indicator light may not turn green even after the charging is complete.

If the wireless charging is not functioning properly, the orange light will blink and flash for ten seconds then turn off. In such cases, remove the smart phone from the pad and replace it on the pad again, or double check the charging status.

If you leave the smart phone on the charging pad when the vehicle ignition is in OFF, the vehicle will alert you through warning messages and sound (applicable for vehicles with voice guidance function) after the 'Good bye' function on the instrument cluster ends.

#### \* NOTICE

For some manufacturers' smart phones, the system may not warn you even though the smart phone is left on the wireless charging unit. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart

phone and not a malfunction of the wireless charging.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

- When the interior temperature of the wireless charging system rises above a set temperature, the wireless charging will cease to function. After the interior temperature drops below the threshold, the wireless charging function will resume.
- If there is any metallic object between the smart phone and the wireless charging pad, immediately remove the smart phone. Remove the metallic object after it has completely cooled down.
- The wireless charging may not function properly when there is a heavy accessory cover on the smart phone.
- The wireless charging will stop when using the wireless smart key search function to prevent radio wave disruption.
- The wireless charging will stop when the smart key is moved out of the vehicle with the ignition in ON.
- The wireless charging will stop when any of the doors is opened (applicable for vehicles equipped with smart keys).
- The wireless charging will stop when the vehicle is turned OFF.
- The wireless charging will stop when the smart phone is not in complete contact with the wireless charging pad.
- Items equipped with magnetic components such as credit card, telephone card, bankbook, any transportation ticket and such may

become damaged during wireless charging.

- Place the smart phone on the centre of the charge pad for best results. The smart phone may not charge when placed near the rim of the charging pad. When the smart phone does get charged, it may heat up excessively.
- For smart phones without built-in wireless charging system, an appropriate accessory has to be equipped.
- Smart phones of some manufacturers may display messages on weak current. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart phone and does not imply a malfunction on wireless charging function.
- The indicator light of some manufacturers' smart phones may still be yellow after the smart phone is fully charged. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart phone and not a malfunction of the wireless charging.
- When any smart phone without a wireless charging function or a metallic object is placed on the charging pad, a small noise may sound. This small sound is due to the vehicle discerning compatibility of the object placed on the charging pad. It does not affect your vehicle or the smart phone in any way.
- The wireless mobile phone charging system may not support certain mobile phones, which are not verified for the Qi specification (  ).
- For certain mobile phones with their own protection, the wireless charging speed may decrease and the wireless charging may stop.

## Coat hook

A Coat hook is next to the rear grab handle.



\* This actual feature may differ from the illustration.

### CAUTION

#### Hanging clothing

Do not hang heavy clothes, since they may damage the hook.

### WARNING

Do not hang other objects such as hangers or hard objects except clothes. Also, do not put heavy, sharp or breakable objects in the clothing's pockets. In an accident or when the curtain air bag is inflated, it may cause vehicle damage or body injury.



## Floor mat anchor(s) (if equipped)



When using a floor mat on the front floor carpet, make sure it attaches to the floor mat anchor(s) in your vehicle. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward.

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### After market floor mat

- Do not install after market floor mats that are not capable of being securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors. Unsecured floor mats can interfere with pedal operation.
- Use floor mats not too thick and designed to be properly secured on the floor to avoid the interference with pedals. Make sure that installing the floor mats without removing plastic films on carpets may damage or break floor mat fix rings, resulting in the mats to be unsecured. Especially for a driver's seat, the unsecured mats may cause unintended acceleration/brake. Ensure to remove all the plastic films on the carpets before installing the mats.

The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.

- Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.
- Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.
- Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (e.g., all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.

## Cargo area cover

Use the cargo area cover to hide items stored in the cargo area.

## Removal and installation

To remove the cargo area cover:

1. Remove straps from both sides of the cargo area cover.



2. Whilst lifting the cover up, hold the area near the front slots. Then, pull up the cover at approximately 45° angle.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not place objects on the cargo area cover. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Since the cargo area cover may be damaged or malformed, do not put luggage on it when it is used.

**Exterior features****Roof rack (if equipped)**

If the vehicle has a roof rack, you can load cargo on top of your vehicle.



Crossbars and fixing components needed to install the roof rack on your vehicle may be obtained from an authorised Kia dealer/service partner or other qualified shop.

**\* NOTICE**

- The crossbars (if equipped) should be placed in the proper load carrying positions prior to placing items onto the roof rack.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position cargo onto the roof rack in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.
- When the roof rack is not being used to carry cargo, the crossbars may need to be repositioned if wind noise is detected.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- When carrying cargo on the roof rack, take the necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.

- When carrying large objects on the roof rack, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.
- When you are carrying cargo on the roof rack, do not operate the sunroof. (if equipped)

items on the roof rack are securely fastened.

**⚠ WARNING**

- The following specification is the maximum weight that can be loaded onto the roof rack. Distribute the load as evenly as possible across the cross-bars (if equipped) and roof rack and secure the load firmly.

ROOF RACK	100 kg EVENLY DISTRIBUTED
-----------	------------------------------

Loading cargo or luggage in excess of the specified weight limit on the roof rack may damage your vehicle.

- The vehicle centre of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof rack. Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt manoeuvres or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or roll-over resulting in an accident.
- Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof rack. Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof rack. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses. This could cause the items to fall off the roof rack and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.
- To prevent damage or loss of cargo whilst driving, check frequently before or whilst driving to make sure the

## Infotainment system

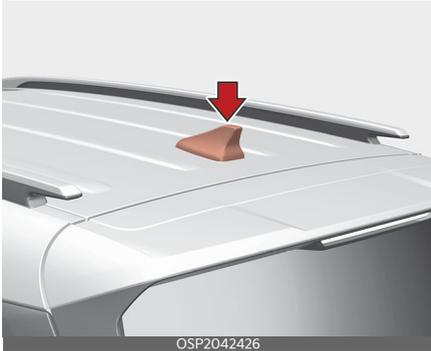
### \* NOTICE

If you install an after market HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic device may malfunction.

\* If your vehicle is equipped with Infotainment system, refer to a separately supplied manual for detailed information.

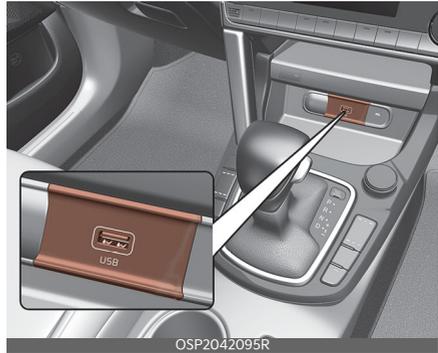
## Antenna

### Shark fin antenna



The shark fin antenna will receive both AM and FM signals and the transmit data.

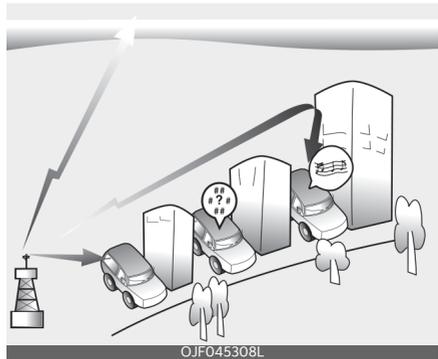
## USB port



You can use a USB port to plug in an USB.

## How vehicle radio works

### FM reception



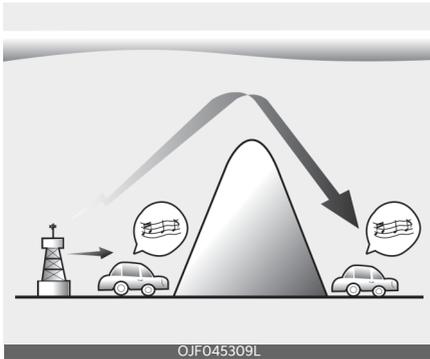
AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your vehicle. This signal is then received by the radio and sent to your vehicle speakers.

When a strong radio signal has reached your vehicle, the precise engineering of your infotainment system ensures the best possible quality reproduction. However, in some cases the signal coming to

your vehicle may not be strong and clear.

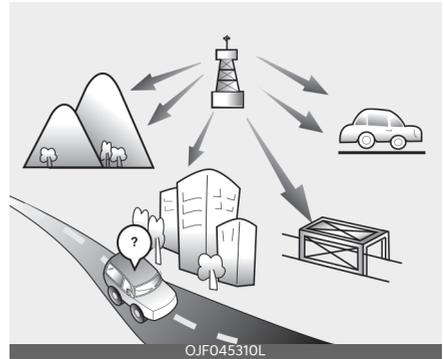
This can be due to factors, such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.

### AM (MW, LW) reception



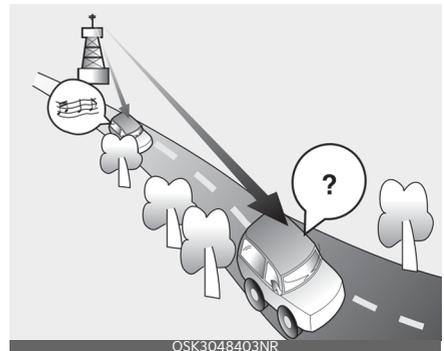
AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long, low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight out into the atmosphere. In addition, they curve around obstructions so that they can provide better signal coverage.

### FM radio station

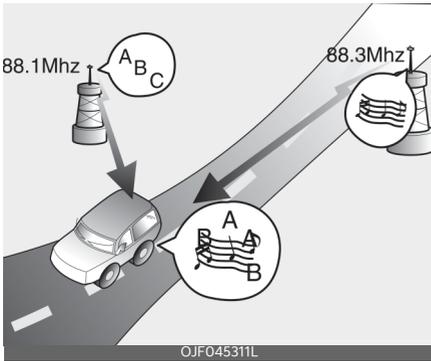


FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade at short distances from the station. Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, or other obstructions. These can result in certain listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio. The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:

- **Fading** - As your vehicle moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another stronger station.



- Flutter/Static - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.
- Station Swapping - As a FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.



- Multi-Path Cancellation - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

### Using a mobile phone or a two way radio

When a mobile phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the infotainment system. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, use the

mobile phone at a place as far as possible from the audio equipment.

#### **CAUTION**

When using a communication system such as a mobile phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a mobile phone or a radio set is used with an internal antenna alone, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect safe operation of the vehicle.

#### **WARNING**

Do not use a mobile phone whilst driving. Stop at a safe location to use a mobile phone.

<b>Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.....</b>	<b>5-5</b>
<b>Before driving .....</b>	<b>5-5</b>
<b>Key positions.....</b>	<b>5-6</b>
• Ignition switch position.....	5-6
• Starting the engine.....	5-7
• Stopping the engine (Manual Transmission).....	5-8
<b>ENGINE START/STOP button.....</b>	<b>5-8</b>
• Illuminated ENGINE START/STOP button.....	5-8
• ENGINE START/STOP button position .....	5-8
• Starting the engine.....	5-11
<b>All Wheel Drive (AWD) system .....</b>	<b>5-13</b>
• AWD mode.....	5-13
• For safe All Wheel Drive (AWD) operation.....	5-15
<b>Manual transmission .....</b>	<b>5-18</b>
• Manual transmission operation.....	5-18
• Good driving practices .....	5-20
<b>Automatic transmission.....</b>	<b>5-21</b>
• Automatic transmission operation.....	5-21
• Shift lock system .....	5-25
• Good driving practices .....	5-26
<b>Intelligent variable transmission (IVT).....</b>	<b>5-28</b>
• Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) operation .....	5-28
• Shift lock system .....	5-32
• Shift-lock override.....	5-32
• Good driving practices .....	5-33
<b>Brake system.....</b>	<b>5-34</b>
• Power brakes.....	5-34
• Parking Brake (Hand type).....	5-36
• Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	5-37
• Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).....	5-38

# 5 Driving your vehicle

• AUTO HOLD .....	5-42
• Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system .....	5-44
• Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) system .....	5-47
• Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) .....	5-48
• Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) .....	5-48
• Downhill Brake Control (DBC) .....	5-49
• Good braking practices .....	5-51
<b>Drive mode integrated control system .....</b>	<b>5-52</b>
<b>Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)</b>	
<b>(Front view camera only) .....</b>	<b>5-54</b>
• Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings .....	5-55
• Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation .....	5-56
• Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations .....	5-58
<b>Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)</b>	
<b>(Sensor fusion) .....</b>	<b>5-65</b>
• Basic function .....	5-65
• Junction Turning function .....	5-65
• Detecting sensor .....	5-65
• Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings .....	5-66
• Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation .....	5-68
• Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations .....	5-71
<b>Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) .....</b>	<b>5-78</b>
• Detecting sensor .....	5-78
• Lane Keeping Assist settings .....	5-78
• Lane Keeping Assist operation .....	5-79
• Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations .....	5-82
<b>Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) .....</b>	<b>5-84</b>
• Detecting sensor .....	5-85
• Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist settings .....	5-85
• Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation .....	5-87

• Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations.....	5-89
<b>Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA) .....</b>	<b>5-93</b>
• Manual Speed Limit Assist operation.....	5-93
<b>Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA) .....</b>	<b>5-96</b>
• Intelligent Speed Limit Assist settings.....	5-96
• Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operation.....	5-98
• Auto set speed change (if Infotainment system equipped).....	5-99
• Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations.....	5-100
<b>Driver Attention Warning (DAW) .....</b>	<b>5-102</b>
• Driver Attention Warning settings .....	5-103
• Driver Attention Warning operation .....	5-103
• Driver Attention Warning malfunction and limitations.....	5-104
<b>Cruise Control (CC) .....</b>	<b>5-108</b>
• Cruise Control operation.....	5-108
<b>Smart Cruise Control (SCC) .....</b>	<b>5-111</b>
• Overtaking Acceleration Assist .....	5-111
• Detecting sensor.....	5-111
• Smart Cruise Control settings.....	5-111
• Smart Cruise Control operation.....	5-112
• Smart Cruise Control malfunction and limitations .....	5-120
<b>Lane Following Assist (LFA) .....</b>	<b>5-125</b>
• Detecting sensor.....	5-125
• Lane Following Assist settings.....	5-126
• Lane Following Assist malfunction and limitations.....	5-129
• Limitations of Lane Following Assist.....	5-129
<b>Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA) .....</b>	<b>5-129</b>
• Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist settings.....	5-130
• Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation.....	5-131
• Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations.....	5-134

# 5 Driving your vehicle

<b>Declaration of conformity .....</b>	<b>5-139</b>
• The radio frequency components (Front radar) complies .....	5-139
• The radio frequency components (Rear corner radar) complies.....	5-142
<b>Economical operation.....</b>	<b>5-147</b>
<b>Special driving conditions .....</b>	<b>5-149</b>
<b>Winter driving .....</b>	<b>5-152</b>
<b>Trailer Towing .....</b>	<b>5-155</b>
• Hitches.....	5-156
• Safety chains.....	5-156
• Trailer brakes.....	5-156
• Driving with a trailer .....	5-157
• Maintenance when trailer towing .....	5-160
• If you do decide to pull a trailer.....	5-160
<b>Vehicle weight.....</b>	<b>5-164</b>

## Driving your vehicle

### Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.

The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose.

If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the vehicle, have the exhaust system checked as soon as possible by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

#### **WARNING**

#### Engine exhaust

Do not inhale exhaust fumes or leave your engine running in an enclosed area for a prolonged time. Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless gas that can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.

## Before driving

Before getting into the vehicle, you should examine the car and its surroundings. After getting into the vehicle, you should check a number of things before driving.

### Before entering vehicle

- Be sure that all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean.
- Check the condition of the tyres.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

### Necessary inspections

Fluid levels, such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid should be checked on a regular basis, at the exact interval depending on the fluid. Further details are provided in "Maintenance" on page 7-4.

### Before starting

- Close and lock all doors.
- Position the seat so that all controls are easily reached.
- Buckle your seat belt.
- Adjust the inside and outside rear view mirrors.
- Be sure that all lights work.
- Check all gauges.
- Check the operation of warning lights when the ENGINE START/STOP button is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light is not on.

For safe operation, be sure you are familiar with your vehicle and its equipment.

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### **Check surroundings**

Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before putting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### **Loose objects**

Securely store items in your vehicle. When you make a sudden stop or turn the steering wheel rapidly, loose objects may drop on the floor and it could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident.

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### **Proper footwear**

Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots, sandals, etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedals.

## **Key positions (if equipped)**

### **Ignition switch position**



#### **LOCK (1)**

The steering wheel locks to protect against theft. The ignition key can be removed only in the LOCK position.

#### **ACC (Accessory) (2)**

The steering wheel is unlocked and electrical accessories are operative.

### **\* NOTICE**

If difficulty is experienced turning the ignition switch to the ACC position, turn the key whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

#### **ON (3)**

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. This is the normal running position after the engine is started.

Do not leave the ignition switch ON if the engine is not running to prevent battery discharge.

## START (4)

Turn the ignition switch to the START position to start the engine. The engine will crank until you release the key; then it returns to the ON position. The brake warning light can be checked in this position.

### WARNING

#### Ignition switch

- Never turn the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC whilst the vehicle is moving. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.
- The anti-theft steering column lock is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in 1st gear for the manual transmission, set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.
- Never reach for the ignition switch, or any other controls through the steering wheel whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area could cause a loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.
- Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move whilst driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.

#### Starting the engine

### WARNING

- Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots, etc.) may

interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal, and the clutch. (if equipped)

- Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed. The vehicle can move and lead to an accident.
- Wait until the engine rpm is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if the brake pedal is released when the rpm is high.

## Manual Transmission

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transmission into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst turning the ignition switch to the start position.
3. Turn the ignition switch to START and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

It should be started **without depressing the accelerator pedal**.

4. Do not wait for the engine to warm up whilst the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

## Automatic Transmission/Intelligent Variable Transmission

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. Place the transmission shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully. You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.
3. Turn the ignition switch to START and hold it there until the engine starts (a

maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

It should be started **without depressing the accelerator pedal**.

4. Do not wait for the engine to warm up whilst the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

### Stopping the engine (Manual Transmission)

1. Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped and keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed.
2. Shift the transmission into Neutral whilst depressing the clutch pedal and brake pedal.
3. Engage the parking brake whilst depressing the brake pedal.
4. Turn the ignition key to the LOCK position and remove it.

## ENGINE START/STOP button (if equipped)

### Illuminated ENGINE START/STOP button



The light will go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed. It will also go off immediately when the theft-alarm system is armed.

### ENGINE START/STOP button position

Your vehicle is equipped with four different ignition positions.

## OFF

### With manual transmission

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), stop the vehicle then press the ENGINE START/STOP button.

### With automatic transmission/ Intelligent variable transmission

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), press the ENGINE START/STOP button with the shift lever in the P (Park) position. When you press the ENGINE START/STOP button without the shift

lever in the P (Park) position, the ENGINE START/STOP button will not change to the OFF position but to the ACC position.

### Vehicles equipped with anti-theft steering column lock

The steering wheel locks when the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the OFF position to protect you against theft.

It locks when the door is opened.

If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound. Try locking the steering wheel again. If the problem is not solved, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

In addition, if the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the OFF position after the driver's door is opened, the steering wheel will not lock and the warning chime will sound. In such a situation, close the door. Then the steering wheel will lock and the warning chime will stop.

#### \* NOTICE

If the steering wheel doesn't unlock properly, the ENGINE START/STOP button will not work. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

#### \* NOTICE

You are able to turn off the engine (START/RUN) or vehicle power (ON), only when the vehicle is not in motion.

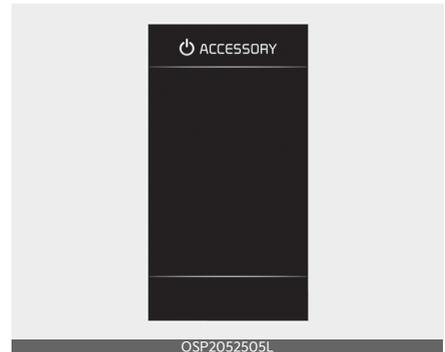
#### ⚠ CAUTION

In an emergency situation whilst the vehicle is in motion, you are able to turn the engine off and to the ACC position by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button for more than 2 seconds or 3 times successively within 3 seconds.

If the vehicle is still moving, to restart the vehicle:

- Manual transmission - Press the ENGINE START/STOP button with shift lever in neutral and clutch pedal depressed.
- Automatic transmission/Intelligent variable transmission - Press the ENGINE START/STOP button when vehicle speed is 5 km/h or over.

### ACC (Accessory)



#### With manual transmission

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button when the button is in the OFF position without depressing the clutch pedal.

### With automatic transmission/ Intelligent variable transmission

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button whilst it is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal.

The steering wheel unlocks and electrical accessories are operational.

If the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC position for more than 1 hour, the button is turned off automatically to prevent battery discharge.

### ON

#### With manual transmission

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button when the button is in the ACC position without depressing the clutch pedal.

### With automatic transmission/ Intelligent variable transmission

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button whilst it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. Do not leave the ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position for a long time. The battery may discharge, because the engine is not running.

### START/RUN

#### With manual transmission

To start the engine, depress the clutch pedal and brake pedal, then press the ENGINE START/STOP button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

### With automatic transmission/ Intelligent variable transmission

To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the ENGINE START/STOP button with the shift lever in the P (Park) or the N (Neutral) position. For your safety, start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

#### \* NOTICE

If you press the ENGINE START/STOP button without depressing the clutch pedal for manual transmission vehicles or without depressing the brake pedal for automatic transmission/Intelligent variable transmission vehicles, the engine will not start and the ENGINE START/STOP button changes as follow:  
OFF → ACC → ON → OFF or ACC

#### \* NOTICE

If you leave the ENGINE START/STOP button in the ACC or ON position for a long time, the battery will discharge.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- Never press the ENGINE START/STOP button whilst the vehicle is in motion. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident and severe damage to the intelligent variable transmission.
- The anti-theft steering column lock is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park), set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.

- Never reach for the ENGINE START/STOP button or any other controls through the steering wheel whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in the area could cause loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.
- Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move whilst driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.

## Starting the engine

### ⚠ WARNING

- Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal engaged. The vehicle can move and lead to an accident.
- Wait until the engine rpm is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if the brake pedal is released when the rpm is high.

## Starting the engine with smart key

At the time that the vehicle doors are opened or when the ENGINE START/STOP button is pressed the vehicle will check for the smart key.

If the smart key is not in the vehicle, the "🔑" indicator and a message "Key is not in the vehicle" will appear on the instrument cluster and LCD display. And if all doors are closed, the chime will sound for 5 seconds. The indicator or warning will turn off whilst the vehicle is moving. Always have the smart key with you.

### ⚠ WARNING

The engine will start, only when the smart key is in the vehicle. Never allow

children or any person who is unfamiliar with the vehicle touch the ENGINE START/STOP button or related parts. Pushing the ENGINE START/STOP button whilst the smart key is in the vehicle may result in unintended engine activation and/or unintended vehicle movement.

### ⚠ CAUTION

If the engine stalls whilst the vehicle is in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If the traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position whilst the vehicle is still moving and press the ENGINE START/STOP button in an attempt to restart the engine.



### \* NOTICE

- If the battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button with the smart key.

When you press the ENGINE START/STOP button directly with the smart key, the smart key should contact the button at a right angle.

- When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you cannot start the engine normally. Replace the fuse with a new one. If it is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button for 10 seconds whilst it is in the ACC position. The engine can start without pressing the brake pedal. But for your safety always press the brake pedal before starting the engine.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

- Do not press the ENGINE START/STOP button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.
- Do not turn the ignition switch to the START position with the engine running. It may damage the starter.

## Starting the engine

1. Carry the smart key or leave it inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure the parking brake is firmly applied.
3. **Manual Transmission** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transmission into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst starting the engine.

**Automatic Transmission/Intelligent Variable Transmission** - Place the transmission shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.

4. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button.

It should be started without depressing the accelerator pedal.

5. Do not wait for the engine to warm up whilst the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

### **\* NOTICE**

If the ENGINE START/STOP button is pressed once more whilst the engine is pre-heating, the engine may start.

## Stopping the engine (Manual Transmission)

1. Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped and keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed.
2. Shift the transmission into Neutral whilst depressing the clutch pedal and brake pedal.
3. Engage the parking brake whilst depressing the brake pedal.
4. Turn the ignition key to the LOCK position and remove it.

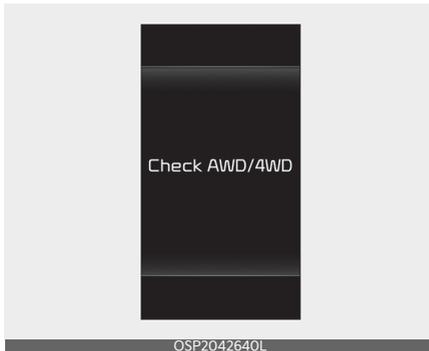
## All Wheel Drive (AWD) system (if equipped)

The All Wheel Drive (AWD) system delivers engine power to front and rear wheels for maximum traction.

AWD is useful when extra traction is required, such as when driving slippery, muddy, wet, or snow-covered roads.

If the system determines there is a need for four wheel drive, the engine's driving power will be distributed to all four wheels automatically.

### LCD display for warning message



If the AWD system malfunctions, a warning message will be displayed. Have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner immediately.

### **⚠ WARNING**

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:

- Do not drive in conditions that exceed the vehicle's intended design such as challenging off-road conditions.
- Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.

- Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.
- The risk of a rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.
- Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.
- In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.

### AWD mode

AWD helps the vehicle's performance by controlling 4 wheels.



You can switch from AWD AUTO mode to AWD Lock mode by pressing AWD Lock mode switch.

## AWD transfer mode selection

Transfer mode	Selection button	Indicator light	Description
AWD AUTO	-		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AWD AUTO is used when driving on roads in normal conditions, roads in urban areas, and on highways.</li> <li>• All wheels are in operation when a vehicle travels at a constant speed. Required tractions are applied on front and rear wheels vary depending on road and driving conditions, which will be automatically controlled by the computing system.</li> <li>• When the cluster's AWD Auto display mode is selected, the cluster displays the status of how four wheels' traction forces are distributed.</li> </ul>
AWD LOCK			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The main goal of AWD Lock mode is to allow a driver to maximize the vehicle's traction under extreme driving conditions such as unpaved off-road, sandy roads, and muddy roads.</li> <li>• When AWD Lock mode illuminates, the cluster does not display the front/rear wheel traction force distribution status.</li> <li>• Press the AWD Lock mode switch again to switch back to AWD Auto.</li> </ul>

### \* NOTICE

#### Normal road conditions

- Maintain AWD Auto mode when driving on roads in normal conditions.
- When driving under normal road conditions (especially when cornering) in AWD Lock mode, a driver may find minor mechanical vibration or noise, which is extremely normal phenomenon, not a malfunction. When AWD Lock mode is released, such noise or vibration will be immediately gone.

### \* NOTICE

AWD (All Wheel Drive) vehicle must be towed with all wheels off the ground, either on a flatbed tow truck or using dollies.

### ⚠ CAUTION

The AWD vehicle should never be towed with the wheels on the ground. This can cause serious damage to the transmission or the AWD system.

## For safe All Wheel Drive (AWD) operation

### ⚠ WARNING

#### All Wheel Drive

The conditions of on-road or off-road that demand All Wheel Drive mean all functions of your vehicle are exposed to extreme stress than under normal road conditions. Slow down and be ready for changes in the composition and traction of the surface under your tyres. If you have any doubt about the safety of the conditions you are facing, stop and consider the best way to proceed.

- Do not try to drive in deep standing water or mud since such conditions can stall your engine and clog your exhaust pipes. Do not drive down steep hills since it requires extreme skill to maintain control of the vehicle.



- When you are driving up or down hills drive as straight as possible. Use extreme caution in going up or down steep hills, since you may flip your vehicle over depending on the grade, terrain and water/mud conditions.



### ⚠ WARNING

#### Hills

Driving across the contour of steep hills can be extremely dangerous. This danger can come from slight changes in the wheel angle which can destabilize the vehicle or, even if the vehicle is maintaining stability under power, it can lose that stability if the vehicle stops its forward motion. Your vehicle may roll over without warning and without time for you to correct a mistake that could cause serious injury or death.

- You must learn how to corner in a AWD vehicle. Do not rely on your experience in conventional FWD vehicles when cornering the vehicle in AWD mode. For starters, you must drive slower in AWD.

### ⚠ WARNING

#### All Wheel Drive (AWD)

Reduce speed when you turn corners. The centre of gravity of AWD vehicles is higher than that of conventional FWD vehicles, making them more likely to roll over when you turn corners too fast.

**⚠ WARNING****Steering wheel**

Do not grab the inside of the steering wheel when you are driving on unpaved roads. You may hurt your arm by a sudden steering manoeuvre or from steering wheel rebound due to impact with objects on the ground. You could lose control of the steering wheel.

- Always hold the steering wheel firmly when you are driving on unpaved roads.
- Make sure all passengers are wearing seat belts.

**⚠ WARNING****Wind danger**

If you are driving in heavy wind, the vehicle's higher centre of gravity decreases your steering control capacity and requires you to drive more slowly.

- If you need to drive in the water, stop your vehicle, set your transfer to the AWD LOCK mode and drive at less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

**⚠ WARNING****Driving through water**

Drive slowly. If you are driving too fast in water, the water can get into the engine compartment and wet the ignition system, causing your vehicle to suddenly stop. If this happens and your vehicle is in a tilted position, your vehicle may roll over.

**\* NOTICE**

- Do not drive in water if the level is higher than the bottom of the vehicle.

- Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. Press the brake pedal several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking forces return.
- Shorten your scheduled maintenance interval if you drive in offroad conditions such as sand, mud or water (refer to "Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions" on page 7-25). Always wash your vehicle thoroughly after off-road use, especially cleaning the bottom of the vehicle.
- Since the driving torque is always applied to the 4 wheels the performance of the AWD vehicle is greatly affected by the condition of the tyres. Be sure to equip the vehicle with four tyres of the same size and type.
- A full time All Wheel Drive vehicle cannot be towed by an ordinary tow truck. Make sure that the vehicle is placed on a flat bed truck for moving.

**⚠ WARNING****All Wheel Drive (AWD) driving**

- Avoid high cornering speed.
- Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.
- The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at high speed.
- In a collision, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die compared to a person wearing a seat belt.
- Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over-steers to re-enter the roadway. In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer

sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

#### **Mud or snow**

If one of the front or rear wheels begins to spin in mud, snow, etc. the vehicle can sometimes be driven out by engaging the accelerator pedal further; however avoid running the engine continuously at high rpm because doing so could damage the AWD system.

#### **Driving in sand or mud**

- Maintain slow and constant speed. Operate the accelerator pedal slowly to ensure safe driving (wheel-slip prevention).
- Use tyre chains driving in mud if necessary.
- Keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- Reduce vehicle speed and always check the road condition.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent getting stuck.
- When the vehicle is stuck in snow, sand or mud, the tyres may not operate.
- This is to protect the transmission and not a malfunction.

### **\* NOTICE**

Moving the car forcibly to get out of mud or sand can cause damage/overheat of the engine or damage/breakdown of the transmission, differential or AWD system as well as damage to tyres. If excessive wheel slip occurs after entering a sandy/muddy road, the vehicle may fall into the sand/mud. When it

happens, put a stone or a tree branch under the tyre, and then try to pull out the car, or try to get it unstuck by repeatedly moving forwards and backwards.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Your vehicle is equipped with tyres designed to provide safe ride and handling capability. Do not use tyres and wheels that are different in size and type from the originally installed ones. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to steering failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tyres, be sure to equip all four tyres with the tyre and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity.

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### **Jacked vehicle**

Whilst the full-time AWD vehicle is being raised on a jack, never start the engine or cause the tyres to rotate.

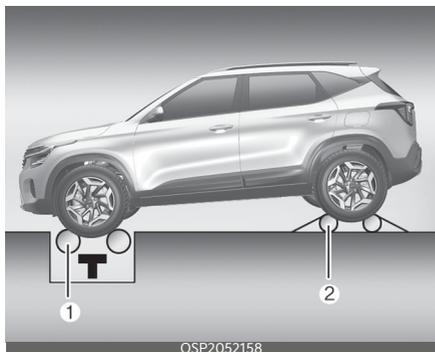
There is the danger that rotating tyres touching the ground could cause the jack to go off the vehicle and to jump forward.

- Full-time AWD vehicles must be tested on a special four wheel chassis dynamometer.

### **\* NOTICE**

Never engage the parking brake whilst performing these tests.

- A full-time AWD vehicle should not be tested on a FWD roll tester. If a FWD roll tester must be used, perform the following:



1. Check the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.
2. Place the front wheels on the roll tester (1) for a speedometer test as shown in the illustration.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Place the rear wheels on the temporary free roller (2) as shown in the illustration.

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### **Dynamometer testing**

Keep away from the front of the vehicle whilst the vehicle is in gear on the dynamometer. This is very dangerous as the vehicle can jump forward and cause serious injury or death.

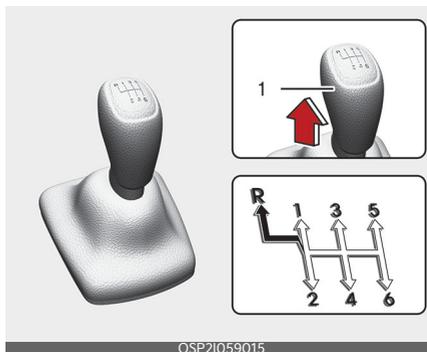
### **⚠ CAUTION**

- When lifting up the vehicle, do not operate front and rear wheel separately. All four wheels should be operated.
- If you need to operate the front wheel and rear wheel when lifting up the vehicle, you should release the parking brake.

## **Manual transmission (if equipped)**

The manual transmission has 6 forward gears.

### **Manual transmission operation**



⇨ The shift lever can be moved without pulling the button (1).

➡ The button (1) should be pressed when moving the shift lever into reverse.

This shift pattern is imprinted on the shift knob. The transmission is fully synchronized in all forward gears so shifting to either a higher or a lower gear is easily accomplished.

Depress the clutch pedal down fully whilst shifting, then release it slowly.

If your vehicle is equipped with an ignition lock switch, the engine will not start when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal. (if equipped)

The shift lever must be returned to the neutral position before shifting into R (Reverse).

Push the button located immediately below the shift knob and pull the gear-shift lever to the left sufficiently, and then shift into reverse (R) gear position.

Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped before shifting into R (Reverse). Never operate the engine with the tachometer (rpm) in the red zone.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

- When downshifting from fifth gear to fourth gear, caution should be taken not to inadvertently press the shift lever sideways in such a manner that the second gear is engaged. Such a drastic downshift may cause the engine speed to increase to the point that the tachometer will enter the red-zone. Such over-revving of the engine and transmission may possibly cause engine damage.
- Do not downshift more than 2 gears or downshift the gear when the engine is running at high speed (5,000 rpm or higher). Such a downshifting may damage the engine, clutch and the transmission.
- During cold weather, shifting may be difficult until the transmission lubricant is warmed up. This is normal and not harmful to the transmission.
- If you've come to a complete stop and it's hard to shift into 1st or R (Reverse), leave the shift lever at N (Neutral) position and release the clutch. Press the clutch pedal back down, and then shift into 1st or R (Reverse) gear position.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

- To avoid premature clutch wear and damage, do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. Also, don't use the clutch to hold the vehicle stopped on an uphill grade, whilst waiting for a traffic light, etc.

- Do not use the shift lever as a handrest during driving, as this can result in premature wear of the transmission shift forks.
- To prevent possible damage to the clutch system, do not start with the 2nd (second) gear engaged except when you start on a slippery road.
- Do not overload the vehicle. Driving with the vehicle overloaded could cause abnormal friction heat to the clutch disk and damage the clutch cover and disk.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Before leaving the driver's seat, always set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Then make sure the transmission is shifted into 1st gear when the vehicle is parked on a level or uphill grade, and shifted into R (Reverse) on a downhill grade. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.
- Do not use the engine brake (shifting from a high gear to lower gear) rapidly on slippery roads.  
The vehicle may slip causing an accident.

## **Using the clutch**

The clutch should be pressed all the way to the floor before shifting, then released slowly. The clutch pedal should always be fully released whilst driving. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal whilst driving. This can cause unnecessary wear. Do not partially engage the clutch to hold the vehicle on an incline. This causes unnecessary wear. Use the foot brake or parking brake to hold the vehi-

cle on an incline. Do not operate the clutch pedal rapidly and repeatedly.

### CAUTION

When operating the clutch pedal, press the clutch pedal down fully. If you don't press the clutch pedal fully, the clutch may be damaged or noise may occur.

### WARNING

#### Using the clutch

Depress the clutch pedal as far as possible. Be aware not to apply the pedal again before it returns to the normal position.

If the pedal is repeatedly depressed before returning to its normal position, the clutch system might be damaged.

Do not overload the vehicle. Starting or driving a vehicle in this situation generates too much frictional heat to the clutch disk which might cause damage to the clutch cover and disk.

When starting the vehicle or driving backwards, releasing the clutch pedal too soon after shifting the lever might turn off the engine and lead to an accident.

#### Downshifting

When you must slow down in heavy traffic or whilst driving up steep hills, downshift before the engine starts to labour. Downshifting reduces the chance of stalling and gives better acceleration when you again need to increase your speed. When the vehicle is travelling down steep hills, downshifting helps maintain safe speed and prolongs brake life.

#### Good driving practices

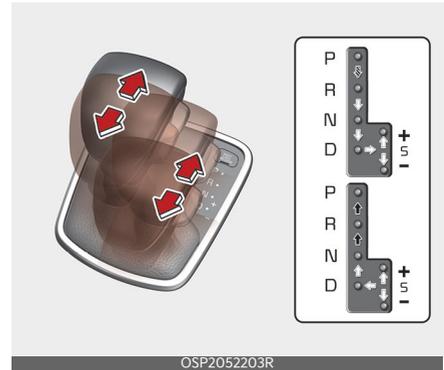
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This is extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear.
- Don't "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. This will help avoid over-revving the engine, which can cause damage.
- Slow down when you encounter cross winds. This gives you much better control of your vehicle.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into reverse. The transmission can be damaged if you do not.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.

### WARNING

- Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.
- Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.
- Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.

- The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.
- Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.
- In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.
- Never exceed posted speed limits.

## Automatic transmission (if equipped)



➡ Depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting.

➡ Press the lock release button when shifting.

➡ The shift lever can be shifted freely.

### Automatic transmission operation

The automatic transmission has 8 (or 6) forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically, depending on the position of the shift lever.

#### \* NOTICE

The first few shifts on a new vehicle, if the battery has been disconnected, may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and the shifting sequence will adjust after shifts are cycled a few times by the TCM (Transmission Control Module) or PCM (Powertrain Control Module).

For smooth operation, depress the brake pedal when shifting from N (Neutral) to a forward or reverse gear.

**⚠ WARNING****Automatic transmission**

- Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).
- Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position; then set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.
- Do not use the engine brake (shifting from a high gear to lower gear) rapidly on slippery roads.

The vehicle may slip causing an accident.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- To avoid damage to your transmission, do not accelerate the engine in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brakes on.
- When stopped on an incline, do not hold the vehicle stationary with engine power. Use the service brake or the parking brake.
- Do not shift from N (Neutral) or P (Park) into D (Drive), or R (Reverse) when the engine is above idle speed.

**LCD display for warning message**

A warning message is displayed on the LCD in a warning condition.

**Transmission overheated**

- When driving under severe conditions such as repeated sudden starts and sudden acceleration, the transmission may overheat, and a warning sound and a warning message appear on the instrument cluster due to the self-protection mode.
- If this occurs, pull over to a safe location, stop the vehicle with the engine running, apply brakes and shift the gear to P (Park), and allow the transmission to cool.
- If the warning message continues to appear, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer to prevent unexpected accidents.

## Vehicle power limited



- If the transmission continues to drive overheating and reaches its maximum temperature, the above warning message appears. In this case, the vehicle limits transmission power by its self protection mode.
- When such a situation occurs, normal driving is restricted until the transmission goes down to normal temperature, so after moving the vehicle to a safe place, shift the gear to P (Park) with the engine running and wait several minutes until the warning on the screen disappears.
- If the warning message continues to appear, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer to prevent unexpected accidents.

## Transmission cooled



- When the message "Trans cooled. Resume driving" appears you can continue to drive your vehicle.

## Transmission ranges

The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

### P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park). This position locks the transmission and prevents the front wheels from rotating.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion will cause the drive wheels to lock which will cause you to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake. Always make sure the shift lever is latched in the P (Park) position and set the parking brake fully.
- Never leave a child unattended in a vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

The transmission may be damaged if you shift into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion.

---

**R (Reverse)**

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transmission if you shift into R whilst the vehicle is in motion, except as explained in "Rocking the vehicle" on page 5-150.

---

**N (Neutral)**

The wheels and transmission are not engaged. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or service brakes are applied.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not drive with the shift lever in N (Neutral).

The engine brake will not work and lead to an accident.

---

**Parking in N (Neutral) gear**

Follow below steps when parking and you want the vehicle to move when pushed.

1. After parking your vehicle, step on the brake pedal and move the shift lever to P with the ignition button in ON or whilst the engine is running.
2. If the parking brake is applied unlock the parking brake.

- For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles, push the brake pedal with the ignition button in ON or whilst the engine is running to disengage the parking brake. If AUTO HOLD function is used whilst driving (If AUTO HOLD indicator is on in the cluster), press AUTO HOLD switch and AUTO HOLD function should be turn off.

3. Whilst pressing the brake pedal, turn the ignition button OFF.

- For smart key equipped vehicles, the ignition switch can be moved to OFF only when the shift lever is in P.

4. Change the gear shift lever to N (Neutral) whilst pressing the brake pedal and pushing SHIFT LOCK RELEASE button or inserting, pressing down a tool (e.g., flathead screw-driver) into the SHIFT LOCK RELEASE access hole at the same time. Then, the vehicle will move when external force is applied.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- With the exception of parking in neutral gear, always park the vehicle in P (Park) for safety and engage the parking brake.
- Before parking in N (Neutral) gear, first make sure the parking ground is level and flat. Do not park in N gear on any slopes or gradients. If parked and left in N, the vehicle may move and cause serious damage and injury.
- After the ignition switch has been turned off, the electronic parking brake cannot be disengaged.
- For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles with AUTO HOLD

function used whilst driving, if the ignition button has been turned OFF, the electronic parking brake will be engaged automatically. Therefore, AUTO HOLD function should be turned off before the ignition button is turned off.

## D (Drive)

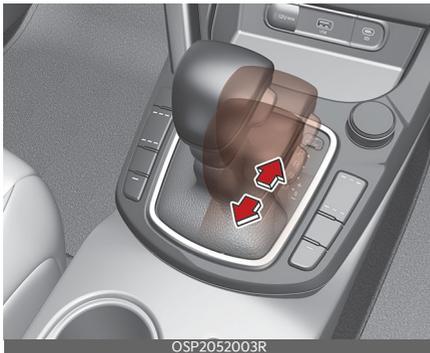
This is the normal forward driving position. The transmission will automatically shift through a 8(or 6)-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing grades, depress the accelerator fully, at which time the transmission will automatically downshift to the next lower gear.

### \* NOTICE

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).

## Sports mode



Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, sports mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return

to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In sports mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to make gearshifts rapidly. In contrast to a manual transmission, the sports mode allows gearshifts with the accelerator pedal depressed.

- Up (+): Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.
- Down (-): Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

### \* NOTICE

- In sports mode, the driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.
- In sports mode, only the 6 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.
- In sports mode, downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.
- In sports mode, when the engine rpm approaches the red zone shift points are varied to upshift automatically.
- To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the shift lever is operated.

## Shift lock system

For your safety, the automatic transmission has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse):

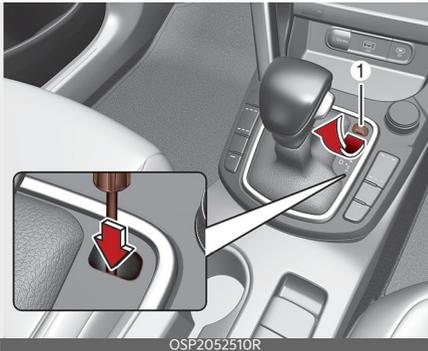
1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Always fully depress the brake pedal before and whilst shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the vehicle.

## Shift-lock override



If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, and then do the following:

1. Place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Carefully remove the cap covering (1) the shift-lock release access hole.
4. Insert a tool (e.g., flathead screwdriver) into the access hole and press down on the tool.
5. Move the shift lever.
6. Remove the tool from the shift-lock override access hole then install the cap.

If the shift lever does not move even after performing this procedure, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Ignition key interlock system (if equipped)

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position.

## Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.

- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transmission in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.
- Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.
- In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.
- Never exceed posted speed limits.

### WARNING

- When driving uphill or downhill, always shift to D (Drive) for driving forward or shift to R (Reverse) for driving backwards, and check the gear position indicated on the cluster before driving.  
Driving in the opposite direction of the selected gear can lead to a dangerous situation by shutting off the engine and affecting the braking performance.
- Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.
- Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.
- Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.
- The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.

### WARNING

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

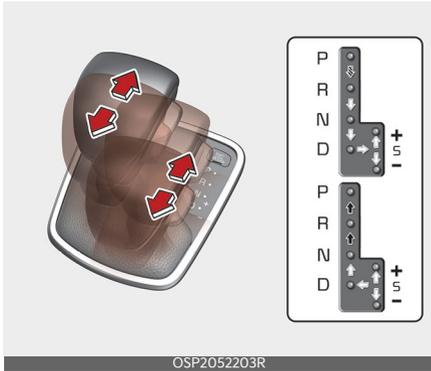
### Moving up a steep grade from a standing start

To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator gradually whilst releasing the service brakes.

**When accelerating from a stop on a steep hill, the vehicle may have a tendency to roll backwards.**

## Intelligent variable transmission (IVT) (if equipped)

The Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) automatically shifts depending on speed, accelerate pedal position. The individual speeds are selected automatically, depending on the position of the shift lever.



- Depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting.
- Press the lock release button when shifting.
- The shift lever can be shifted freely.

### Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) operation

For smooth operation, depress the brake pedal when shifting from N (Neutral) to a forward or reverse gear.

### WARNING

#### Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT)

- Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a car into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).
- Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position; then set the

parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.

- Do not use the engine brake (shifting from a high gear to lower gear) rapidly on slippery roads. The vehicle may slip causing an accident.

### CAUTION

- To avoid damage to your transmission, do not accelerate the engine in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brakes on.
- When stopped on an incline, do not hold the vehicle stationary with engine power. Use the service brake or the parking brake.
- Do not shift from N (Neutral) or P (Park) into D (Drive), or R (Reverse) when the engine is above idle speed.

### LCD display for warning message

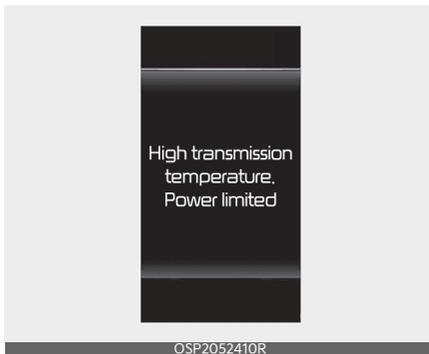
A warning message is displayed on the LCD in a warning condition.

### Transmission overheated



- When driving under severe conditions such as repeated sudden starts and sudden acceleration, the transmission may overheat, and a warning sound and a warning message appear on the instrument cluster due to the self-protection mode.
- If this occurs, pull over to a safe location, stop the vehicle with the engine running, apply brakes and shift the gear to P (Park), and allow the transmission to cool.
- If the warning message continues to appear, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer to prevent unexpected accidents.

## Vehicle power limited

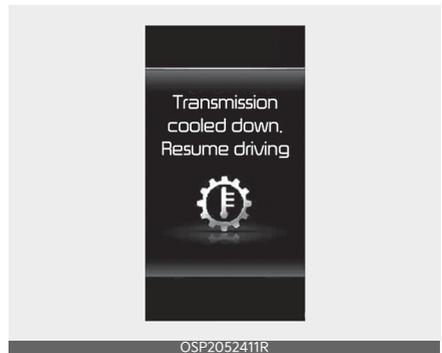


- If the transmission continues to drive overheating and reaches its maximum temperature, the above warning message appears. In this case, the vehicle limits transmission power by its selfprotection mode.
- When such a situation occurs, normal driving is restricted until the transmission goes down to normal temperature, so after moving the vehicle to a safe place, shift the gear to P (Park)

with the engine running and wait several minutes until the warning on the screen disappears.

- If the warning message continues to appear, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer to prevent unexpected accidents.

## Transmission cooled



- When the message "Trans cooled. Resume driving" appears you can continue to drive your vehicle.

## Transmission ranges

The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

### P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park). This position locks the transmission and prevents the front wheels from rotating.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion will cause the drive wheels to lock which will cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

- Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake. Always make sure the shift lever is latched in the P (Park) position and set the parking brake fully.
- Never leave a child unattended in a vehicle.

### ⚠ CAUTION

The transmission may be damaged if you shift into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion.

### ⚠ CAUTION

The RPM (revolution per minute) may increase or decrease when performing the Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) self-diagnosis.

## R (Reverse)

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

### ⚠ CAUTION

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transmission if you shift into R whilst the vehicle is in motion, except as explained in "Rocking the vehicle" on page 5-150.

## N (Neutral)

The wheels and transmission are not engaged. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or service brakes are applied.

### ⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with the shift lever in N (Neutral).

The engine brake will not work and lead to an accident.

## Parking in N (Neutral) gear

Follow below steps when parking and you want the vehicle to move when pushed.

1. After parking your vehicle, step on the brake pedal and move the shift lever to P with the ignition button in ON or whilst the engine is running.
2. If the parking brake is applied unlock the parking brake.
  - For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles, push the brake pedal with the ignition button in ON or whilst the engine is running to disengage the parking brake. If AUTO HOLD function is used whilst driving (If AUTO HOLD indicator is on in the cluster), press AUTO HOLD switch and AUTO HOLD function should be turn off.
3. Whilst pressing the brake pedal, turn the ignition button OFF.
  - For smart key equipped vehicles, the ignition switch can be moved to OFF only when the shift lever is in P.
4. Change the gear shift lever to N (Neutral) whilst pressing the brake pedal and pushing SHIFT LOCK RELEASE button or inserting, pressing down a tool (e.g., flathead screw-driver) into the SHIFT LOCK RELEASE access hole at the same time. Then, the vehicle will move when external force is applied.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- With the exception of parking in neutral gear, always park the vehicle in P (Park) for safety and engage the parking brake.
- Before parking in N (Neutral) gear, first make sure the parking ground is level and flat. Do not park in N gear on any slopes or gradients.  
If parked and left in N, the vehicle may move and cause serious damage and injury.
- After the ignition switch has been turned off, the electronic parking brake cannot be disengaged.
- For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles with AUTO HOLD function used whilst driving, if the ignition button has been turned OFF, the electronic parking brake will be engaged automatically. Therefore, AUTO HOLD function should be turned off before the ignition button is turned off.

**D (Drive)**

This is the normal forward driving position. The transmission will automatically shift, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing grades, depress the accelerator fully, at which time the transmission will automatically downshift to the next lower gear.

**\* NOTICE**

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).

**Sports mode**

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, sports mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

SPORT mode manages the driving dynamics by automatically adjusting the steering effort, and the engine and transmission control logic for enhanced driver performance.

In sports mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to make gearshifts rapidly. In contrast to a manual transmission, the sports mode allows gearshifts with the accelerator pedal depressed.

- Up (+): Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.
- Down (-): Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

**\* NOTICE**

- In sports mode, the driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.
- In sports mode, only the 8 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever

to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.

- In sports mode, downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.
- In sports mode, when the engine rpm approaches the red zone shift points are varied to upshift automatically.
- To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gear-shifts when the shift lever is operated.
- When SPORT mode is activated:
  - The engine rpm will tend to remain raised over a certain length of time even after releasing the accelerator.
  - Upshifts are delayed when accelerating.
- In SPORT mode, the fuel efficiency may decrease.

### Shift lock system (if equipped)

For your safety, the Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse):

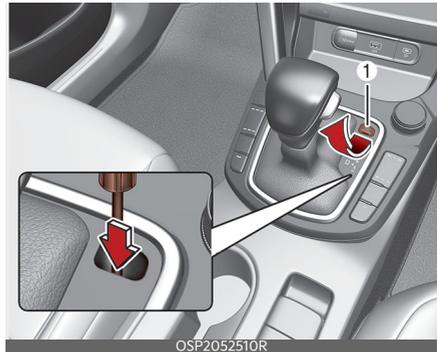
1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Always fully depress the brake pedal before and whilst shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the vehicle.

### Shift-lock override



If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, and then do the following:

1. Place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Carefully remove the cap covering (1) the shift-lock release access hole.
4. Insert a tool (e.g., flathead screwdriver) into the access hole and press down on the tool.
5. Move the shift lever.
6. Remove the tool from the shift-lock override access hole then install the cap.

If the shift lever does not move even after performing this procedure, have the system inspected by a professional

workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transmission in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

### WARNING

- When driving uphill or downhill, always shift to D (Drive) for driving forward or shift to R (Reverse) for driving backwards, and check the gear position indicated on the cluster before driving.  
Driving in the opposite direction of the selected gear can lead to a dangerous situation by shutting off the engine and affecting the braking performance.
- Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.
- Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.
- Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.
- The risk of a rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.
- Losing control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.
- In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.
- Never exceed posted speed limits.

### WARNING

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rock-

ing operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

---

### Moving up a steep grade from a standing start

To move up a steep grade from a standing start:

1. Depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive).
2. Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake.
3. Depress the accelerator gradually whilst releasing the service brakes.

## Brake system

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes, parking brake, and various braking systems for safe driving.

### Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event that the power-assisted brakes lose power because of a stalled engine or some other reason, you can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than you normally would. The stopping distance, however, will be longer.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

#### \* NOTICE

- When stepping on the brake pedal under a certain driving or weather condition you may witness your car make a sound of squealing or some other noises. This is not a brake malfunction but a normal phenomenon.
  - When driving on the road to which deicing chemicals are applied, the vehicle may witness noises from the brake or abnormal abrasion of tyres because of such deicing chemicals. You should operate brake additionally so that you would be able to remove the deicing chemicals on the brake disk and pad under a safe traffic condition.
-

**⚠ CAUTION****Brake Pedal**

Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormally high brake temperatures which can cause excessive brake lining and pad wear.

**⚠ WARNING****Steep hill braking**

Avoid continuous application of the brakes when descending a long or steep hill by shifting to a lower gear. Continuous brake application will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.

Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, apply them lightly whilst maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal.

**Brake Over Accelerator**

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power.

If you experience this condition, take the following steps:

1. Apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. Move the transmission to P (Park), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake.

3. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference.

If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to a professional workshop and inspected. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**Disc brakes wear indicator**

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high-pitched warning sound from your front brakes or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you press the brake pedal.

Always replace the front or rear brake pads as pairs.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.
- Always replace the front or rear brake pads as pairs.

**⚠ CAUTION****Replace brake pads**

Do not continue to drive with worn brake pads. Continuing to drive with worn brake pads can damage the braking system and result in costly brake repairs.

**⚠ WARNING****Brake wear**

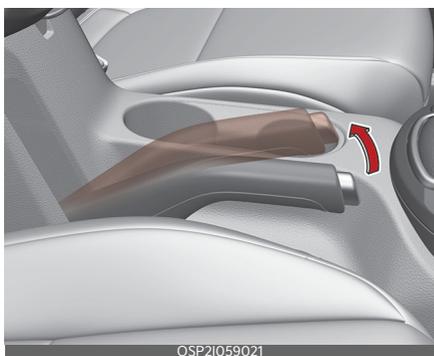
Do not ignore high pitched wear sounds from your brakes. If you ignore this audible warning, you will eventually lose braking performance, which could lead to a serious accident.

### \* NOTICE

Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does contribute to brake noise.

## Parking Brake (Hand type) (if equipped)

### Applying the parking brake



To engage the parking brake:

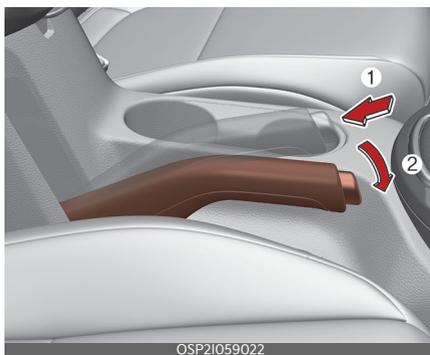
1. Apply the foot brake and then pull up the parking brake lever as far as possible.

In addition it is recommended that when parking the vehicle on a incline, the shift lever should be in a low gear on manual transmission vehicles.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Driving with the parking brake applied will cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.
- Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and make endanger driving safety.

## Releasing the parking brake



To release the parking brake:

1. Apply the foot brake and pull up the parking brake lever slightly.
2. Depress the release button (1) and lower the parking brake lever (2) whilst holding the button.

If the parking brake does not release or does not release all the way, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- Be cautious when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the shift lever in first or reverse gear (manual transmission). If your vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If your vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If there is no kerb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the vehicle from rolling, block the wheels.
- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If

there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the shift lever in first or reverse gear (manual transmission) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

- Do not hold the vehicle on the upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transmission to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

### WARNING

- Never allow a passenger to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.
- All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.



Check the brake warning light by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off.

If the brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released whilst engine is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution whilst operating the

vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location or repair shop.

### Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

The Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking. So the vehicle remains stable and can still be steered.

ABS (or ESC) will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving manoeuvres. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions. The vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds in the following circumstances:

- When driving on rough, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tyre chains installed
- When driving on roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface heights.

Driving in these conditions increases the stopping distance for your vehicle.

The ABS continuously senses the speed of the wheels. If the wheels are going to lock, the ABS repeatedly modulates the hydraulic brake pressure to the wheels.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a "tik-tik" sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

In order to obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as

hard as possible to allow the ABS to control the force being delivered to the brakes.

### \* NOTICE

A click sound may be heard in the vehicle compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the vehicle is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Anti-lock Brake System is functioning properly.

Even with the Anti-lock Brake System, your vehicle still requires sufficient stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you. Always slow down when cornering. The Anti-lock Brake System cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speeds.

On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the Anti-lock Brake System may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

The ABS warning light will stay on for approximately 3 seconds after the ENGINE START/STOP button is ON.



During that time, the ABS will go through self diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and have operated your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the

ABS warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and stop the vehicle.

Restart the vehicle. If the ABS warning light goes off, then your ABS is normal. Otherwise, you may have a problem with the ABS. Contact a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### \* NOTICE

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the vehicle may not run as smoothly and the ABS warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS has malfunctioned.

- Do not pump your brakes!
- Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.

## Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) (if equipped)

### Applying the parking brake



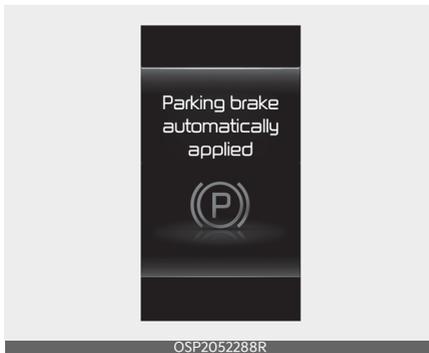
### To apply the EPB (electronic parking brake) manually:

1. Stop the vehicle.

- Depress the brake pedal and pull up the EPB switch. Make sure the warning light comes on.

### EPB may be automatically applied when:

- Requested by other systems.
- If the driver applies the AUTO HOLD function whilst the engine is ON then turn the engine off, the EPB may be applied again automatically.



- If the driver turns the engine off by mistake whilst Auto Hold (if equipped) is operating, EPB will be automatically applied. But if the driver turns the engine off and push the EPB switch in 1 second, the EPB does not apply.

### Emergency braking

- If there is a problem with the brake pedal whilst driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only whilst you are holding the EPB switch. If you hand off the EPB switch, the braking force is lost. If you hold the EPB switch and the vehicle stop, the EPB is applied.
  - The braking distance may be longer than under normal braking conditions.
- \* EPB stands for Electronic Parking Brake.

### ⚠ WARNING

Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and endanger driving safety.

### ⚠ CAUTION

If you continuously notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends visiting an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Releasing the parking brake



#### To release the EPB manually:

Press the EPB switch in the following condition.

- Have the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position.
- Depress the brake pedal.  
Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

### To release EPB automatically (manual transmission):

1. Close the driver's door, engine bonnet and tailgate.
2. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
3. Start the engine.
4. Depress the clutch pedal with the gear engaged.
5. Depress the accelerator pedal whilst releasing the clutch pedal.

#### \* NOTICE

#### Manual transmission

A vehicle towing a trailer on a hill or on an incline may slightly roll backwards when starting the vehicle. To prevent the situation follow the below instructions.

1. Depress the clutch pedal and select a gear.
2. Keep pulling up the EPB switch.
3. Depress the accelerator pedal and slowly release the clutch pedal.
4. If the vehicle starts off with enough driving power release the EPB switch.

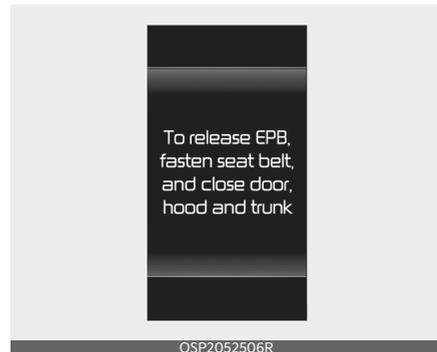
Do not follow the above procedure when driving on a flat level ground. The vehicle may suddenly move forward.

### To release EPB automatically (automatic transmission):

1. Close the driver's door, engine bonnet and tailgate.
2. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
3. Start the engine.
4. If the shift lever is in P (Park), depress the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Rear) or D (Drive), the EPB is released automatically. Make sure the brake warning light goes off.
5. If the shift lever is in N (Neutral), depress the brake pedal and shift out

of N (Neutral) to R (Rear) or D (Drive), the EPB is released automatically. Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

- If you try to drive off depressing the accelerator pedal with the EPB applied, but doesn't release automatically, a warning will sound once and a message will appear.



- If the driver's seat belt is not fastened, driver's door is opened, the engine bonnet is opened in D or the tailgate is opened in D or R, a warning will sound once and a message will appear.
- If there is a problem with the vehicle, a warning may sound once and a message may appear. If the above situation occurs, depress the brake pedal and release EPB by pressing the EPB switch.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.
- Do not place any objects around the EPB switch. They could release the EPB switch.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the shift lever in place of the parking brake. Set the parking brake and make sure the shift lever is securely positioned in P (Park). Use wheel chokes if necessary.
- In winter or cold conditions, the EPB may freeze. Park the vehicle with the shift lever in P on the even and safe place without applying the EPB. And use wheel chokes.
- Do not drive your vehicle with the EPB applied. It may cause excessive wear of brake pad and brake rotor.
- A click sound may be heard whilst operating or releasing the EPB, but these conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.
- When leaving your keys with a parking lot attendant or valet, make sure to inform him/her how to operate the EPB.
- When the battery is drained, the EPB does not apply or release. In this case, jump start your vehicle.

## Malfunction of EPB

Type A



Type B



If the EPB malfunction indicator remains on, it indicates that the EPB may have malfunctioned. If this occurs, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends visiting an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. The EPB malfunction indicator may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the EPB.

### ⚠ CAUTION

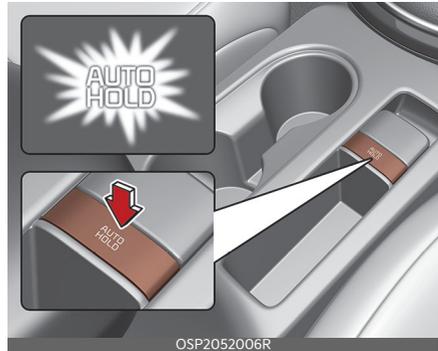
- The EPB warning light may illuminate if the EPB switch operates abnormally. Shut the engine off and turn it on again after a few minutes. The warning light will go off and the EPB switch will operate normally. However, if the EPB warning light is still on, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- If the parking brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks even though the EPB switch was pulled up, the EPB is not applied. If the parking brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, then pull it up. Once more press it back to its original position and pull it back up. If the EPB warning does not go off, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### AUTO HOLD (if equipped)

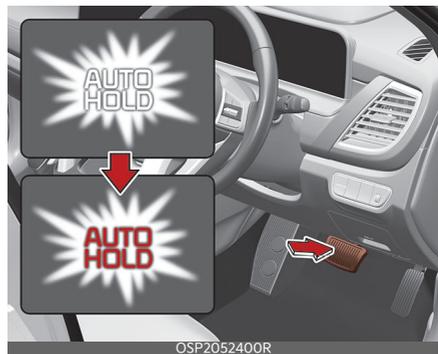
The Auto Hold is designed to maintain the vehicle in a standstill even though the brake pedal is not pressed after the driver brings the vehicle to a complete stop by pressing the brake pedal.

#### Applying Auto Hold function

1. Press the brake pedal and start the vehicle.
2. Press the Auto Hold button. The white AUTO HOLD indicator will come on indicating the system is in standby.



Before the Auto Hold will engage, the driver's door and engine bonnet must be closed and the tailgate must be closed.



When coming to a complete stop by pressing the brake pedal, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from white to green indicating the AUTO HOLD is engaged. The vehicle will remain at a standstill even if you release the brake pedal.

If EPB is applied, Auto Hold will be released.

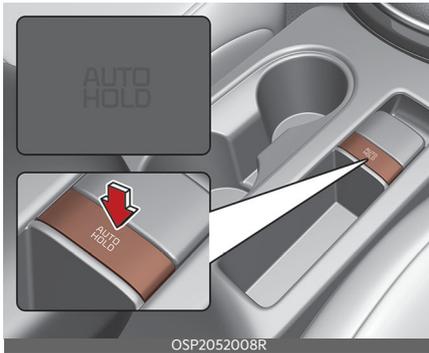
If you press the accelerator pedal with the shift lever in D (Drive) or Manual mode, the Auto Hold will be released automatically and the vehicle will start to move. The indicator changes from green

to white indicating the Auto Hold is in standby and the EPB is released.

When driving off from Auto Hold by pressing the accelerator pedal, always check the surrounding area near your vehicle.

Slowly press the accelerator pedal for a smooth launch.

### Canceling Auto Hold function



- To cancel the Auto Hold operation, press the Auto Hold switch. The AUTO HOLD indicator will go out.
- To cancel the Auto Hold operation when the vehicle is at a standstill, press the Auto Hold switch whilst pressing the brake pedal.
- If the AUTO HOLD indicator lights up yellow, the Auto Hold is not working properly. Take your vehicle to a professional workshop and have the system checked. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

#### \* NOTICE

- The following are conditions when the Auto Hold will not engage (Auto Hold light will not turn green and the Auto Hold system remains in stand by):
  - The driver's door is opened
  - The engine bonnet is opened
  - The shift lever is in P (Park) or R (Reverse)
  - The EPB is applied
- For your safety, the Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB under any of the following conditions (Auto Hold

light remains white and the EPB automatically applies):

- The driver's door is opened.
- The engine bonnet or tailgate is opened.
- The vehicle is in a standstill for more than 10 minutes.
- The vehicle is standing on a steep slope.
- The vehicle moved for a few seconds.

In these cases, the brake warning light comes on, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, and a warning sounds and a message will appear to inform you that EPB has been automatically engaged. Before driving off again, press foot brake pedal, check the surrounding area near your vehicle and release parking brake manually with the EPB switch.



#### ⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, do not activate Auto Hold whilst driving downhill, backing up or parking your vehicle.

If there is a malfunction with the driver's door or engine bonnet or tailgate open detection system, the Auto Hold may not work properly.

Take your vehicle to a professional workshop and have the system checked.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

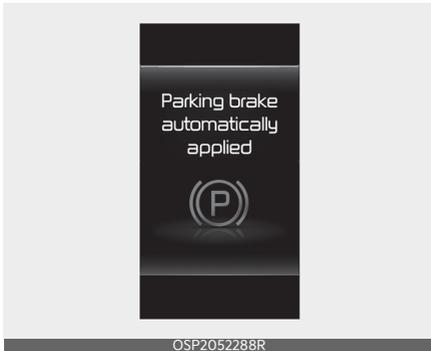
**\* NOTICE**

A click or electric brake motor whine sound may be heard whilst operating or releasing the EPB, but these conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.

**Warning messages**

The Auto Hold function will display a warning message with sound under certain conditions.

When the EPB is applied from Auto Hold, a warning will sound and a message will appear.



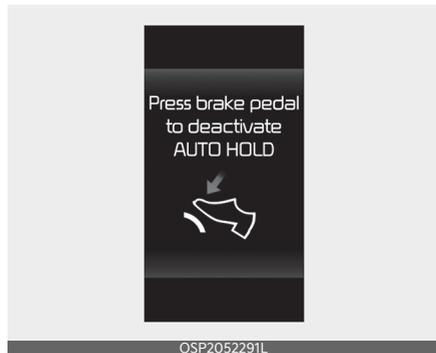
When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.



**\* NOTICE**

When this message is displayed, the Auto Hold and EPB may not operate. For your safety, press the brake pedal.

If you do not apply the brake pedal when you release the Auto Hold by pressing the [AUTO HOLD] switch, a warning will sound and a message will appear.



**Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system (if equipped)**

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is designed to stabilize the vehicle during cornering manoeuvres.



OSP2052009R

ESC applies the brakes on individual wheels and intervenes with the vehicle management system to stabilize the vehicle.

ESC will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt manoeuvres and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents.

Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding manoeuvres that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving - including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.

### **WARNING**

Never drive too fast for the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. Electronic stability Control (ESC) will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt manoeuvres and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents. Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding manoeuvres that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving - including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.

The ESC system is an electronic system designed to help the driver maintain vehicle control under adverse conditions. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Factors including speed, road conditions and driver steering input can all affect whether ESC will be effective in preventing a loss of control. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a "tik-tik" sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.

### **\* NOTICE**

A click sound may be heard in the vehicle compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the vehicle is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Electronic Stability Control system is functioning properly.

## **ESC operation**

### **ESC ON condition**

- When the ENGINE START/STOP button is turned ON, ESC and ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds, then ESC is turned on.
- Press the ESC OFF button for at least half a second after turning the vehicle ON to turn ESC off. (ESC OFF indicator will illuminate). To turn the ESC on, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light will go off).
- When starting the vehicle, you may hear a slight ticking sound. This is the

ESC performing an automatic system self-check and does not indicate a problem.

### When operating

 When the ESC is in operation, the ESC indicator light blinks.

When the Electronic Stability Control is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.

When moving out of the mud or driving on a slippery road, pressing the accelerator pedal may not cause the vehicle rpm (revolutions per minute) to increase.

### ESC operation off

 This car has 2 kinds of ESC off states.

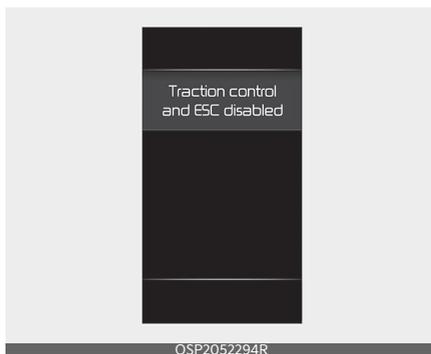
If the vehicle stops when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the vehicle, the ESC will automatically turn on again.



### ESC off state 1

To turn off the traction control function and only operate the brake control function of the ESC, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF ) for less than 3

seconds and the ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF ) will illuminate.



### ESC off state 2

To turn off the traction control function and the brake control function of the ESC, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF ) for more than 3 seconds. ESC

OFF indicator light (ESC OFF ) will illuminate and ESC OFF warning chime will sound. At this state, the car stability control function does not operate any more.

### Indicator light

ESC indicator light



ESC OFF indicator light



When ENGINE START/STOP button is turned to ON, the indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating or illuminates when ESC fails to operate.

The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

### **WARNING**

#### **Electronic Stability Control**

Drive carefully even though your vehicle has Electronic Stability Control. It can only assist you in maintaining control under certain circumstances.

### **ESC OFF usage**

#### **When driving**

- ESC should be turned on for daily driving whenever possible.
- To turn ESC off whilst driving, press the ESC OFF button whilst driving on a flat road surface.

### **WARNING**

#### **Operating ESC**

Never press the ESC OFF button whilst ESC is operating (ESC indicator light blinks).

If ESC is turned off whilst ESC is operating, the vehicle may slip out of control.

### **NOTICE**

- When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, ensure that the ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated). If the ESC is left on, it may prevent the vehicle speed from increasing, and result in false diagnosis.
- Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or brake system operation.

### **Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) system (if equipped)**

The Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) provides further enhancements to vehicle stability and steering responses under the following condition:

- when driving on a slippery road or
- when a change in the coefficient of friction between left and right wheels is detected.

### **WARNING**

#### **Tyre/Wheel size**

When replacing tyre and wheels, make sure they are the same size as the original tyre and wheels installed. Driving with varying tyre or wheel sizes may diminish any supplemental safety benefits of the VSM system.

### **VSM operation**

When the VSM is in operation, ESC indicator light () blinks.

When the VSM is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle and/or abnormal steering responses MDPS (Motor Driven Power Steering)). This is only the effect of brake and MDPS control and indicates nothing unusual.

### **The VSM does not operate when:**

- Driving on a sloping road such as a gradient or incline
- Driving in reverse
- ESC OFF indicator light () remains on the instrument cluster
- MDPS indicator light remains on the instrument cluster

## VSM operation off

If you press the ESC OFF button to turn off the ESC, the VSM will also cancel and the ESC OFF indicator light () illuminates.

To turn on the VSM, press the button again. The ESC OFF indicator light goes out.

### WARNING

#### Vehicle Stability Management

Drive carefully even though your vehicle has Vehicle Stability Management. It can only assist you in maintaining control of the vehicle under certain circumstances.

#### Malfunction indicator

The VSM can be deactivated even if you don't cancel the VSM operation by pressing the ESC OFF button. It indicates that a malfunction has been detected somewhere in the Motor Driven Power Steering system or VSM system. If the ESC indicator light () or MDPS warning light () remains on, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. The VSM is not a substitute for safe driving practices but a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. Always hold the steering wheel firmly whilst driving.

Your vehicle is designed to activate according to the driver's intention, even with installed VSM. Always follow all the normal precautions for driving at safe speeds for the conditions - including

driving in clement weather and on a slippery road.

### WARNING

For maximum protection, always wear your seat belt. No system, no matter how advanced, can compensate for all driver error and/or driving conditions. Always drive responsibly.

#### Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) (if equipped)

A vehicle has the tendency to roll back on a steep hill when it starts to go after stopping. The Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from rolling back by applying the brakes automatically for about 2 seconds.

The brakes are released when the accelerator pedal is engaged or after about 2 seconds.

The HAC is activated only for about 2 seconds, so when the vehicle is starting off always engaged the accelerator pedal.

### WARNING

#### Maintaining Brake Pressure on Incline

HAC does not replace the need to apply brakes whilst stopped on an incline. Whilst stopped, make sure you maintain brake pressure sufficient to prevent your vehicle from rolling backward and causing an accident. Don't release the brake pedal until you are ready to accelerate forward.

#### Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) (if equipped)

The Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) system alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop light when the vehicle suddenly stops or when the ABS activates in a

stop. (The system activates when the vehicle speed is over 55 km/h and the vehicle deceleration is over 7 m/s<sup>2</sup> or the ABS activates when the vehicle emergency braking.)

When the vehicle speed is under 40 km/h and the ABS deactivates or the sudden stop situation is over, the stop light blinking will stop.

### ⚠ CAUTION

The Emergency Stop Signal system will not work if the hazard warning flasher is already on.

## Downhill Brake Control (DBC) (if equipped)



The Downhill Brake Control (DBC) feature assists the driver to descend down a steep hill without having to depress the brake pedal.

The system automatically applies the brakes to maintain the vehicle speed 4 km/h (2.5 mph) ~ 40 km/h (25 mph) and allows the driver to concentrate on steering the vehicle down hill.

Always turn off the DBC on normal roads. The DBC might activate inadvertently from the stand by mode when driving through speed bumps or making sharp curves.

### \* NOTICE

The DBC defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is placed in the ON position.

Noise or vibration may occur from the brakes when the DBC is activated.

The rear stop light comes on when DBC is activated.

## DBC operation

Mode	Indicator light	Description
Standby	 illuminated	<p>Press the DBC button when vehicle speed is under 60 km/h (38 mph). The DBC system will turn ON and enter the standby mode.</p> <p>The system does not turn ON if vehicle speed is over 60 km/h (38 mph).</p>
Activated	 blinks	<p>In the standby mode, It enters the operating mode when the following conditions are met.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The road surface should be more than a certain angle of inclination</li> <li>• The accelerator pedal must not be depressed.</li> <li>• The vehicle speed should be within 4 km/h (2.5 mph) ~ 40 km/h (25 mph)               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 2.5 km/h (1.5 mph) ~ 8 km/h (5 mph) in case of backward movement</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Within operating vehicle speed [4 km/h (2.5 mph) ~ 40 km/h (25 mph)], the driver can lower or raise the vehicle speed by stepping on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.</p>
Temporarily deactivated	 illuminated	<p>In the activated mode, the DBC will temporarily deactivate under the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The hill is not steep enough.</li> <li>• The accelerator pedal is depressed.</li> <li>• When the vehicle speed is in the range of 40 km/h (25 mph) ~ 60 km/h (38 mph)</li> </ul> <p>If the above conditions are not met, the DBC will automatically activate again.</p>
OFF	 not illuminated	<p>The DBC will turn OFF under the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The DBC button is pressed again.</li> <li>• When the accelerator pedal is depressed and the vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h (38 mph)</li> </ul>

**⚠ WARNING**

If the DBC red indicator light illuminates, the system may have overheated or have malfunctioned. When the warning light illuminates even though the DBC system has cooled off, have the vehicle checked by a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**\* NOTICE**

- The DBC may not deactivate on steep inclines even though the brake or accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The DBC does not operate when:
  - The shift lever is in P (Park).
  - The ESC is activated.

**Good braking practices**

Good braking practices help keep occupants safe and extend brake life.

- Check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the vehicle is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side. To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the vehicle under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recom-

mends to call an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- Don't coast down hills with the vehicle out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the vehicle in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that vehicle braking will help you maintain a safe speed.
- Don't "ride" the brake pedal. Resting your foot on the brake pedal whilst driving can be dangerous because the brakes might overheat and lose their effectiveness. It also increases the wear of the brake components.
- If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead whilst you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe place.
- Be cautious when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the shifter dial in P. If your vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling.

If your vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If there is no kerb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the vehicle from rolling, block the wheels.

- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the shifter dial in P and

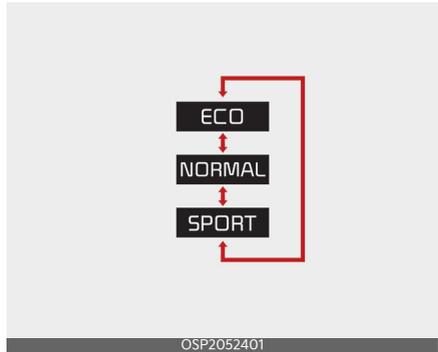
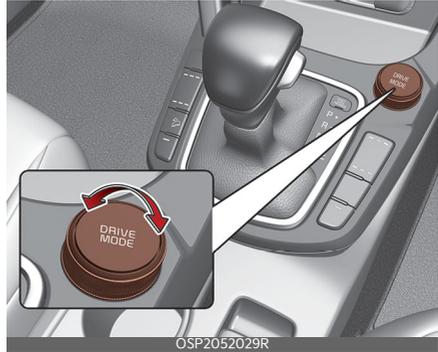
block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

- Do not hold the vehicle on an incline with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transmission to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

### Drive mode integrated control system

The drive mode may be selected according to the driver's preference or road condition.

The Drive mode will be changed as you turn the knob.



- ECO mode: ECO mode improves fuel efficiency for eco-friendly driving.
- NORMAL mode : NORMAL mode provides soft driving and comfortable riding.
- SPORT mode : SPORT mode provides sporty but firm riding.

The driving mode will be set to NORMAL or ECO mode when the engine is restarted.

- If it is in NORMAL/SPORT mode, NORMAL mode will be set, when the engine is restarted.
- If it is in ECO mode, ECO mode will be set when the engine is restarted.

## ECO mode

When the Drive Mode is set to ECO mode, the engine and transmission control logic are changed to maximize fuel efficiency.

- When ECO mode is selected by turning the Drive mode knob, the ECO indicator will illuminate.
- If the vehicle is set to ECO mode, when the engine is turned OFF and restarted the Drive Mode setting will remain in ECO mode.

### \* NOTICE

Fuel efficiency depends on the driver's driving habit and road condition.

### When ECO mode is activated:

- The acceleration response may be slightly reduced if the accelerator pedal is engaged moderately.
- The shift pattern of the automatic transmission may change.

The above situations are normal conditions when ECO mode is activated to improve fuel efficiency.

### Limitation of ECO mode operation:

If the following conditions occur whilst ECO mode is operating, the system

operation is limited even though there is no change in the ECO indicator.

- When driving the vehicle with the IVT transmission gear shift lever in sport mode, the system will be limited according to the shift location.

## SPORT mode

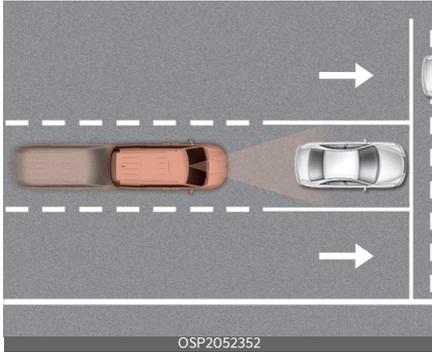
SPORT mode manages the driving dynamics by automatically adjusting the steering effort, and the engine and transmission control logic for enhanced driver performance.

- When SPORT mode is selected by turning the knob, the SPORT indicator will illuminate.
- Whenever the engine is restarted, the Drive Mode will revert back to NORMAL mode. If SPORT mode is desired, re-select SPORT mode from the knob.
- When SPORT mode is activated:
  - The engine RPM will tend to remain high over a certain period of time even after releasing the accelerator.
  - Upshifts are delayed when accelerating.

### \* NOTICE

In SPORT mode, the fuel efficiency may decrease.

## Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Front view camera only) (if equipped)



Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect and monitor the vehicle ahead or help detect a pedestrian or cyclist in the roadway and warn the driver that a collision is imminent with a warning message, audible warning and apply emergency braking.

### Detecting sensor

[1]: Front view camera



Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Never disassemble the detecting sensor or sensor assembly, or cause any damage to it.
- If the detecting sensor has been replaced or repaired, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends visiting an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Never install any accessories or stickers on the front windscreen, or tint the front windscreen.
- Pay extreme caution to keep the front view camera dry.
- Never place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) over the dashboard.
- Do not place any objects near the front windscreen or install any accessories on the front windscreen. It can affect the performance of the defogging and defrosting function of the climate control system, which may prevent the Driver Assistance systems from operating.

## Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

### Forward safety



With the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position, select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Driving safety' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Driving safety' on the Infotainment system screen to set whether to use the function.

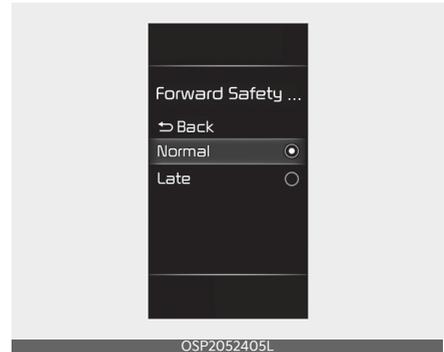
- Forward safety : Depending on the collision risk levels, an audible warning will sound and the braking will be assisted. If the following menu is deactivated, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off and the warning light (🚗) will appear on the cluster.

The driver can monitor Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist On/Off status from the settings menu. If the warning light (🚗) remains on when Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is on, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends visiting an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### ⚠ WARNING

When the vehicle is restarted, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will always turn on. However, if Forward Safety is deselected, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

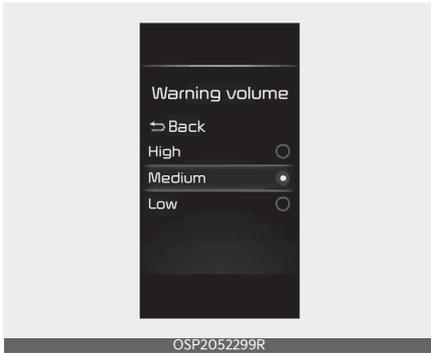
### Forward Safety Warning Timing



With the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position, select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Driving safety → Forward Safety Warning Timing' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Driving safety → Forward Safety Warning Timing' on the Infotainment system screen to change the initial warning activation timing for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

- Use 'Normal' in normal driving conditions. If the Warning Timing seems sensitive, change it to 'Late'.
- If 'Late' is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warns the driver more slowly.

## Warning methods (or Warning volume)



You can adjust the Warning methods (or Warning volume) with the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position.

- Warning volume : Select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Warning volume' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume)' on the Infotainment system.
- Driving safety priority : Select 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume) → Driving safety priority' on the Infotainment system. For safe driving, the audio volume will temporarily decrease to warn the driver with the audible warning.

### \* NOTICE

- Ensure that Warning methods (or Warning volume) you have set may apply to the warning volume of other Driver Assistance systems.
- Warning methods (or Warning volume) will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on

the vehicle features and specifications.

- Descriptions of each Driver Assistance system may be slightly different from the owner's manual after updating the software of your infotainment system. In this case, scan the QR code in the infotainment system manual to access the web manual for checking the changes.
- Depending on your region or infotainment system software version, the menu may be displayed as 'Warning sound', 'Warning methods' or 'Warning volume'.

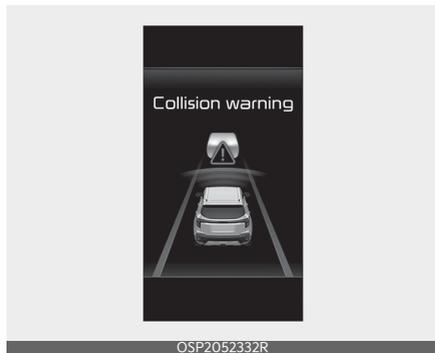
## Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

### Basic function

The basic function for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is to warn and help control the vehicle depending on the collision risk level.

- Collision warning
- Emergency braking
- Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

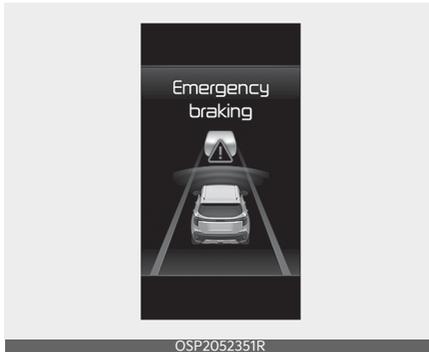
### Collision warning



Collision warning will alert the driver with a warning message and an audible warning. Collision Warning will be activated in your driving speed and the following conditions.

- For vehicle: 10~180 km/h (6~112 mph)
- For pedestrian or cyclist: 10~80 km/h (6~50 mph)

## Emergency braking



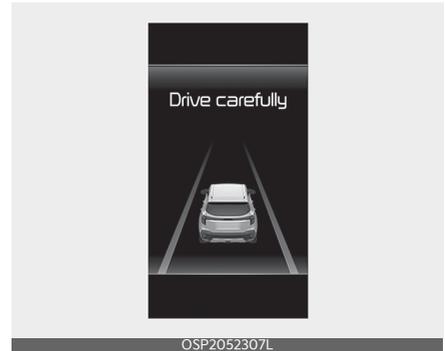
The warning message and an audible warning to warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted. The brake assist will be activated and it helps avoiding collision of a vehicle, pedestrian and cyclist. Emergency braking will be activated in your driving speed and the following conditions.

- For vehicle: 10~60 km/h (6~37 mph)
- For pedestrian or cyclist: 10~60 km/h (6~37 mph)

## CAUTION

The function operation range may decrease due to the front traffic condition or the surroundings of the vehicle.

## Stopping vehicle and ending brake control



When the vehicle is stopped due to Emergency Braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.

For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

## WARNING

- For your safety, only change the settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
- The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle. Do not solely depend on Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
- Never deliberately test Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist on people, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the driver

depresses the brake pedal to avoid collision.

- Depending on the road and driving conditions, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver.
- During Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.
- If any other function's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may turn off or may not operate properly or may operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and the surroundings.
- Even if there is a problem with Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking performance will operate properly.
- During emergency braking, braking control by Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will automatically cancel when the driver excessively depresses the accelerator pedal or sharply steers the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Depending on the condition of the vehicle, pedestrian and cyclist in front and the surroundings, the speed range to operate Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may reduce. Forward Collision-

Avoidance Assist may only warn the driver, or it may not operate.

**\* NOTICE**

- In a situation where collision is imminent, braking may be assisted by Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist when braking is insufficient by the driver.
- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.

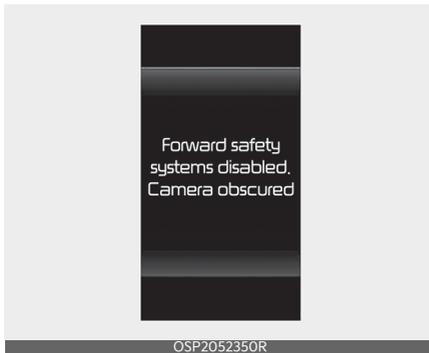
**Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations**  
**Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction**



When Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the warning message will appear and the 

and  warning lights will appear on the cluster. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled



When the front windscreen where the front view camera is located, is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs, the warning message will appear and the  and  warning lights will appear on the cluster.

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign matter is removed. Always keep it clean.

If Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate properly after obstruction (snow, rain, or foreign material) is removed, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### **WARNING**

- Even though the warning message or warning light does not appear on the cluster, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate in an area

(for example, open terrain), where any objects are not detected after turning ON the engine.

## Limitations of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The detecting sensor or the surroundings are contaminated or damaged
- The temperature around the front view camera is high or low due to the external environment.
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windscreen, damaged glass, or sticky foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass
- Moisture is not removed or frozen on the windscreen
- Washer fluid is continuously sprayed, or the wiper is on
- Driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Street light or light from an oncoming traffic is reflected on the wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road
- An object is placed on the dashboard
- Your vehicle is being towed
- The surrounding is very bright
- The surrounding is very dark, such as in a tunnel, etc.
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel

- The brightness outside is low, and the headlamps are not on or are not bright
- Driving through steam, smoke or shadow
- Only part of the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist is detected
- The vehicle in front is a bus, heavy truck, truck with an unusually shaped cargo, trailer, etc.
- The vehicle in front has no tail lights, tail lights are located unusually, etc.
- The brightness outside is low, and the tail lamps are not on or are not bright
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or the vehicle does not look normal, such as when the vehicle is tilted, overturned, or the side of the vehicle is visible, etc.
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is low or high
- A vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist suddenly cuts in front
- The vehicle in front is detected late
- The vehicle in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle
- The vehicle in front suddenly changes lanes or suddenly reduces speed
- The vehicle in front is bent out of shape
- The front vehicle's speed is fast or slow
- The vehicle in front steers in the opposite direction of your vehicle to avoid a collision
- With a vehicle in front, your vehicle changes lanes at low speed
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow
- You are departing or returning to the lane

- You are driving unstably
- You are on a roundabout and the vehicle in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle
- The vehicle in front has an unusual shape
- The vehicle in front is driving uphill or downhill.
- The pedestrian or cyclist is not fully detected, for example, if the pedestrian is leaning over or is not fully walking upright
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing or equipment that makes it difficult to detect

Following image shows the image the sensor recognizes as a vehicle, pedestrian and cyclist

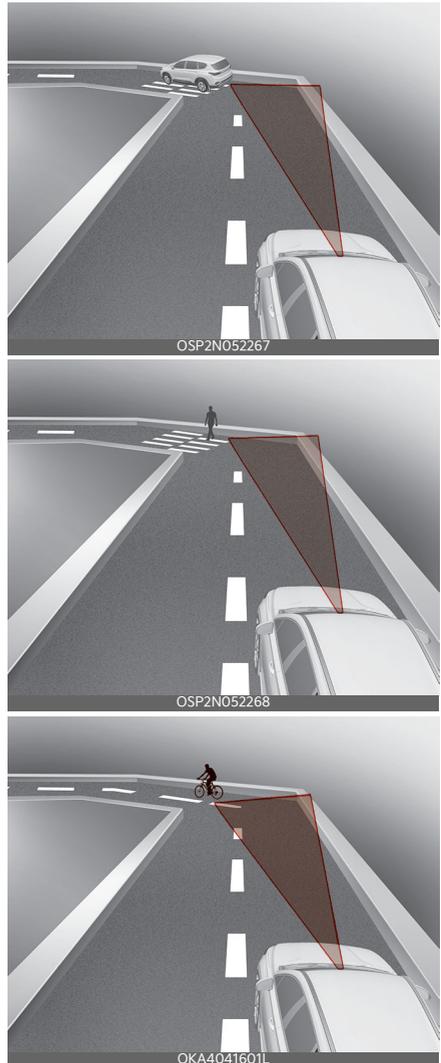


- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving very quickly
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is short or is posing a low posture
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front has impaired mobility
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving intersected with the driving direction
- There is a group of pedestrians, cyclists or a large crowd in front

- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, making it difficult to detect
- The pedestrian or cyclist is difficult to distinguish from the similarly shaped structure in the surroundings
- You are driving by a pedestrian, cyclist, traffic signs, structures, etc. near the intersection
- You are driving by a pedestrian, cyclist, traffic signs, structures, etc. near the intersection
- Driving in a parking lot
- Driving through a tollgate, construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- Driving on an incline road, curved road, etc.
- Driving through a roadside with trees or streetlights
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- There is interference by electromagnetic waves, such as driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.

## ⚠ WARNING

- Driving on a curved road

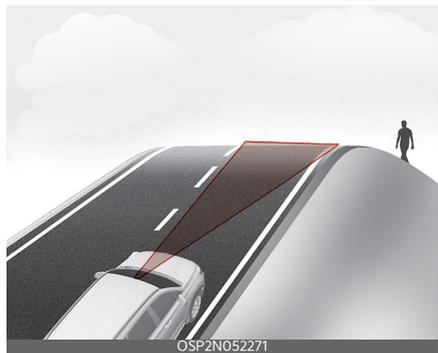
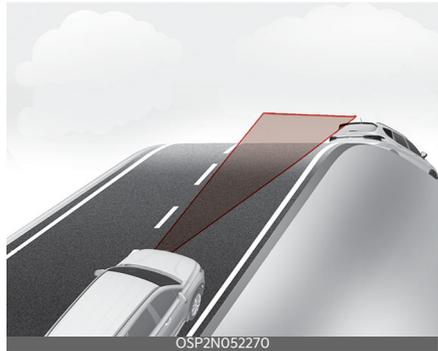
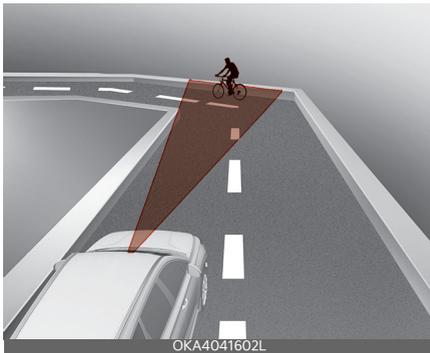
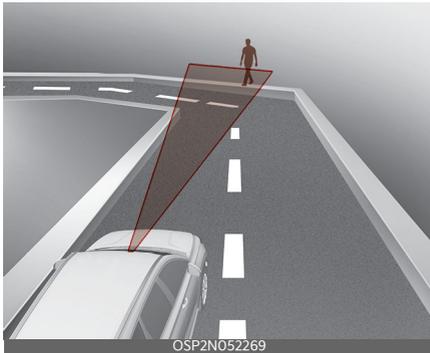
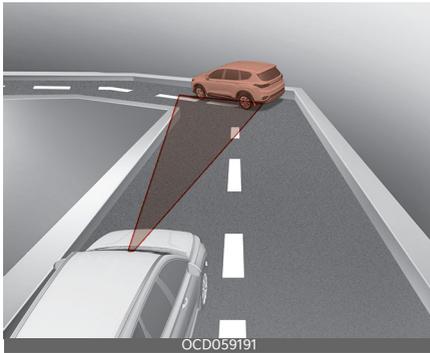


Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in front of you when driving on curved roads adversely affecting the performance of the sen-

sors. This may result in no warning or no braking assist when necessary. When driving on a curve, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer the vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect a vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in the next lane or outside the lane when driving on a curved road. If this occurs, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake or steering wheel. Always check the traffic conditions around the vehicle.

- **Driving on an inclined road**





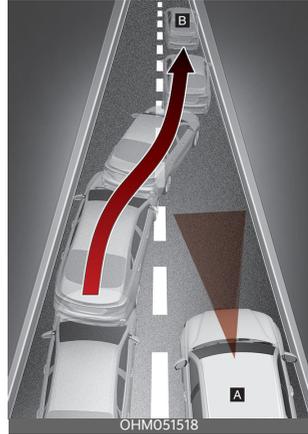
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in front of you whilst driving uphill or downhill adversely affecting the performance of the sensors.

This may result in unnecessary warning, braking assist or no warning or no braking assist when necessary.

Also, vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when a vehicle or pedestrian ahead is suddenly detected.

Always have your eyes on the road whilst driving uphill or downhill and if necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

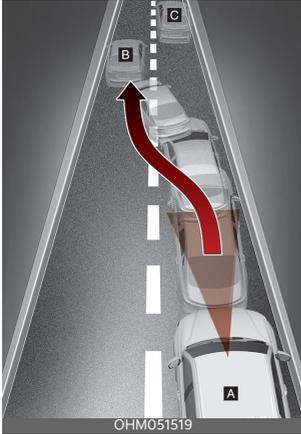
- Changing lanes



[A]: Your vehicle

[B]: Lane changing vehicle

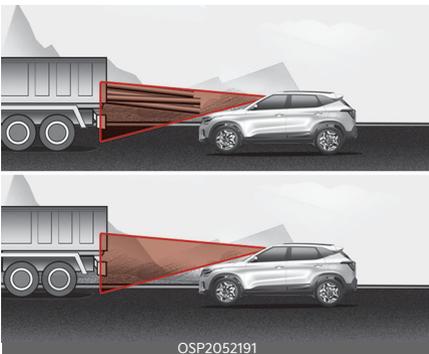
When a vehicle [B] moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect the vehicle when the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



- [A]: Your vehicle
- [B]: Lane changing vehicle,
- [C]: Same lane vehicle

When a vehicle [B] in front of you merges out of the lane, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect the vehicle [C] that is now in front of you. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

• **Detecting vehicle**



If the vehicle in front of you has cargo that extends rearward from the cab,

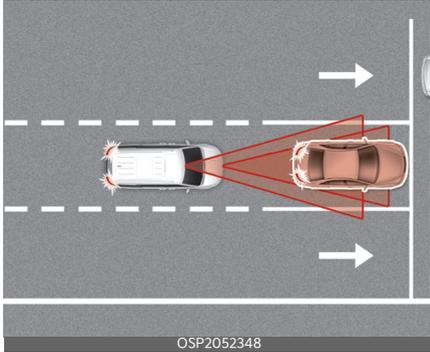
or when the vehicle in front of you has higher ground clearance, additional special attention is required. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not be able to detect the cargo extending from the vehicle. In these instances, you must maintain a safe braking distance from the rearmost object, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.

**⚠ WARNING**

- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, we recommend that Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is turned off due to safety reasons.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may operate if objects that are similar in shape or characteristics to vehicles and pedestrians are detected.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate on bicycles, motorcycles, or smaller wheeled objects, such as luggage bags, shopping carts, or strollers that are dragged by a pedestrian.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly if interfered with by strong electromagnetic waves.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for approximately 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialized.

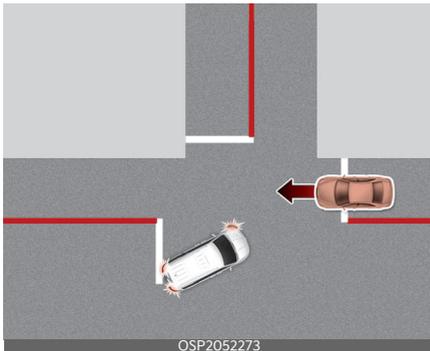
## Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Sensor fusion) (if equipped)

### Basic function



Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect and monitor the vehicle ahead or help detect a pedestrian or cyclist in the roadway and warn the driver that a collision is imminent with a warning message, audible warning and apply emergency braking.

### Junction Turning function



Junction Turning function can help avoid a collision with an oncoming vehicle in an adjacent lane when turning left (left-hand drive) or right (right-hand drive) at

a crossroad with the turn signal on by applying emergency braking.

### Detecting sensor

[1]: Front view camera, [2]: Front radar



Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Never disassemble the detecting sensor or sensor assembly, or cause any damage to it.
- If the detecting sensor has been replaced or repaired, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- Never install any accessories or stickers on the front windscreen, or tint the front windscreen.
- Pay extreme caution to keep the front view camera dry.
- Never place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) over the dashboard.
- Do not apply license plate frame or objects, such as a bumper sticker, film or a bumper guard, near the front radar cover.
- Always keep the front radar and cover clean and free of dirt and debris. Use only a soft cloth to wash the vehicle. Do not spray pressurized water directly on the sensor or sensor cover.
- If the radar or around the radar has been damaged or impacted in any way, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate even though a warning message does not appear on the cluster. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- The genuine Kia front radar sensor covers are parts with quality and performance ensured. If arbitrarily applying paint on or changing the cover, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not function properly. Use only Kia Genuine Parts or those of an equivalent standard with proven quality and performance to repair or replace the radar sensor covers.

## Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

### Forward safety



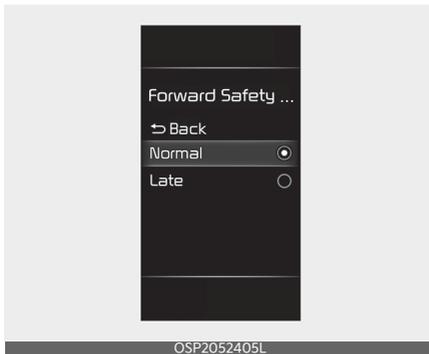
With the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position, select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Driving safety' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Driving safety' on the Infotainment system screen to set whether to use the function.

- Forward safety : Depending on the collision risk levels, an audible warning will sound and the braking will be assisted. If the following menu is deactivated, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off and the warning light (🚗) will appear on the cluster.

The driver can monitor Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist On/Off status from the settings menu. If the warning light (🚗) remains on when Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is on, have the function checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

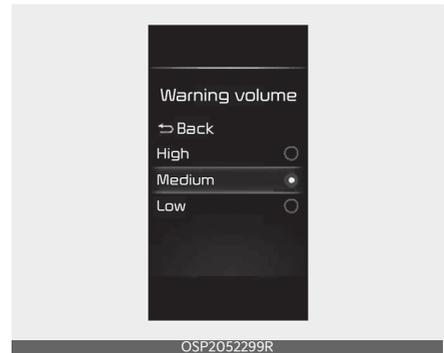
**⚠ WARNING**

When the vehicle is restarted, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will always turn on. However, if Forward Safety is deselected, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

**Forward Safety Warning Timing**

With the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position, select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Driving safety → Forward Safety Warning Timing' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Driving safety → Forward Safety Warning Timing' on the Infotainment system screen to change the initial warning activation timing for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

- Use 'Normal' in normal driving conditions. If the Warning Timing seems sensitive, change it to 'Late'.
- If 'Late' is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warns the driver more slowly.

**Warning methods (or Warning volume)**

You can adjust the Warning methods (or Warning volume) with the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position.

- Warning volume : Select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Warning volume' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume)' on the Infotainment system.
- Driving safety priority : Select 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume) → Driving safety priority' on the Infotainment system. For safe driving, the audio volume will temporarily decrease to warn the driver with the audible warning.

**\* NOTICE**

- Ensure that Warning methods (or Warning volume) you have set may apply to the warning volume of other Driver Assistance systems.
- Warning methods (or Warning volume) will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on

the vehicle features and specifications.

- Descriptions of each Driver Assistance system may be slightly different from the owner's manual after updating the software of your infotainment system. In this case, scan the QR code in the infotainment system manual to access the web manual for checking the changes.
- Depending on your region or infotainment system software version, the menu may be displayed as 'Warning sound', 'Warning methods' or 'Warning volume'.

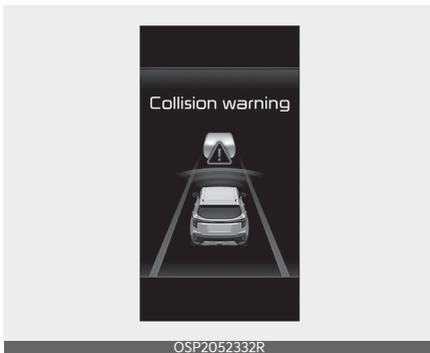
## Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

### Basic function

The basic function for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is to warn and help control the vehicle depending on the collision risk level.

- Collision warning
- Emergency braking
- Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

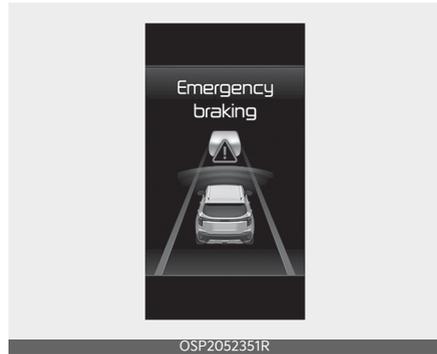
### Collision warning



Collision warning will alert the driver with a warning message and an audible warning. Collision Warning will be activated in your driving speed and the following conditions.

- For vehicle: 10~180 km/h (6~112 mph)
- For pedestrian or cyclist: 10~85 km/h (6~53 mph)

### Emergency braking



The warning message and an audible warning to warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted. The brake assist will be activated and it helps avoiding collision of a vehicle, pedestrian and cyclist. Emergency braking will be activated in your driving speed and the following conditions.

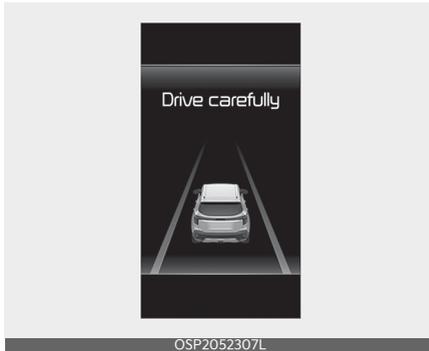
- For vehicle:

	Driving target	Stopped target
Weak braking power	10~180 km/h (6~112 mph)	
Strong braking power	10~130 km/h (6~80 mph)	10~75 km/h (6~47 mph)

- For pedestrian or cyclist: 10~65 km/h (6~40 mph)

**⚠ CAUTION**

The function operation range may decrease due to the front traffic condition or the surroundings of the vehicle.

**Stopping vehicle and ending brake control**

When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.

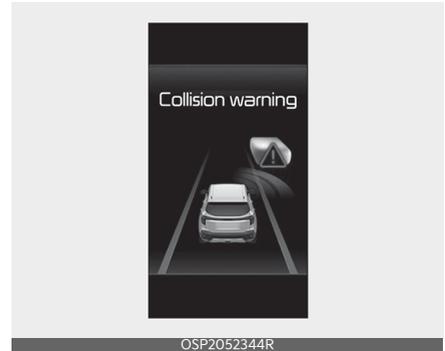
For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

**Junction Turning function**

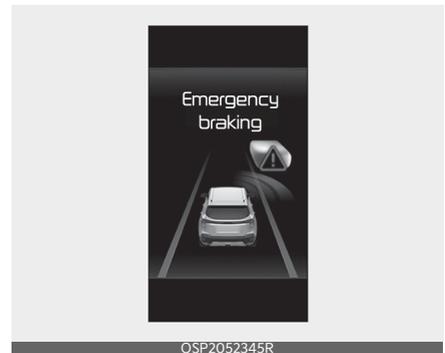
The basic function for Junction turning function is to warn and help control the vehicle depending on the collision risk level.

- Collision Warning
- Emergency Braking
- Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

**Collision warning**

Collision warning will alert the driver with a warning message and an audible warning. Collision warning will be activated in the following conditions.

- Your driving speed: 10~30 km/h (6~19 mph)
- Oncoming vehicle speed: 30~70 km/h (19~44 mph)

**Emergency braking**

The warning message and an audible warning to warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted. The brake assist will be activated and it helps avoiding collision of a vehicle. Emergency braking will be activated in the following conditions.

- Your driving speed: 10~30 km/h (6~19 mph)
- Oncoming vehicle speed: 30~70 km/h (19~44 mph)

## Stopping vehicle and ending brake control



When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the warning message will appear on the cluster. For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- For your safety, change the settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
- The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle. Do not solely depend on Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
- Never deliberately operate Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist on people, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the driver depresses the brake pedal to avoid collision.
- Depending on the road and driving conditions, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver.
- During Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.
- If any other function's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may turn off or may not operate properly or may operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and the surroundings.
- Even if there is a problem with Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking performance will operate properly.
- During emergency braking, braking control by Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will automatically cancel when the driver excessively depresses the accelerator pedal or sharply steers the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Depending on the condition of the vehicle, pedestrian and cyclist in front and the surroundings, the speed range to operate Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may reduce. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may only warn the driver, or it may not operate.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate under certain conditions by judging the risk level based on the condition of the oncoming vehicle, driving direction, speed and surroundings.

**\* NOTICE**

- In a situation where collision is imminent, braking may be assisted by Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist when braking is insufficient by the driver.
- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.

**Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations**

**Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction**



When Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the warning message will appear and the  and

and  warning lights will appear on the cluster. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled**



5



When the front windshield where the front view camera is located, front radar cover or sensor is covered with foreign material such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. If this occurs the warning message will appear and the

 warning lights will appear on the cluster.

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign matter is removed. If Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### **WARNING**

- Even though the warning message or warning light does not appear on the cluster, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain), where any objects are not detected after turning ON the engine.

## Limitations of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The detecting sensor or the surroundings are contaminated or damaged
- The temperature around the front view camera is high or low due to the external environment
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windshield, damaged glass, or sticky foreign matters (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass
- Moisture is not removed or frozen on the windshield
- Washer fluid is continuously sprayed, or the wiper is on
- Driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Street light or light from an oncoming traffic is reflected on the wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road
- An object is placed on the dashboard
- Your vehicle is being towed
- The surrounding is very bright
- The surrounding is very dark, such as in a tunnel, etc.
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel
- The brightness outside is low, and the headlamps are not on or are not bright
- Driving through steam, smoke or shadow
- Only part of the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist is detected

- The vehicle in front is a bus, heavy truck, truck with an unusually shaped cargo, trailer, etc.
- The vehicle in front has no tail lights, tail lights are located unusually, etc.
- The brightness outside is low, and the tail lamps are not on or are not bright
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or the vehicle does not look normal, such as when the vehicle is tilted, overturned, or the side of the vehicle is visible, etc.
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is low or high
- A vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist suddenly cuts in front
- The bumper around the front radar is impacted, damaged or the front radar is out of position
- The temperature around the front radar is high or low
- Driving through a tunnel or iron bridge
- Driving in large areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- Driving near areas containing metal substances, such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- A material is near that reflects very well on the front radar, such as a guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The cyclist in front is on a bicycle made of material that does not reflect on the front radar
- The vehicle in front is detected late
- The vehicle in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle
- The vehicle in front suddenly changes lane or suddenly reduces speed
- The vehicle in front is bent out of shape
- The front vehicle's speed is fast or slow
- The vehicle in front steers in the opposite direction of your vehicle to avoid a collision
- With a vehicle in front, your vehicle changes lane at low speed
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow
- You are departing or returning to the lane
- You are driving unstably
- You are on a roundabout and the vehicle in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle
- The vehicle in front has an unusual shape
- The vehicle in front is driving uphill or downhill
- The pedestrian or cyclist is not fully detected, for example, if the pedestrian is leaning over or is not fully walking upright
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing or equipment that makes it difficult to detect as a pedestrian or cyclist

Following image shows the image the sensor recognizes as vehicle, pedestrian, and cyclist.

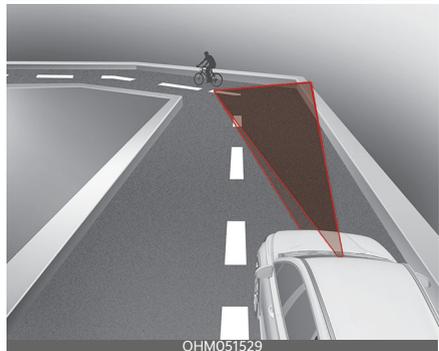
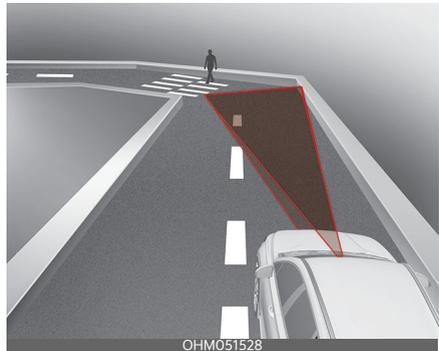
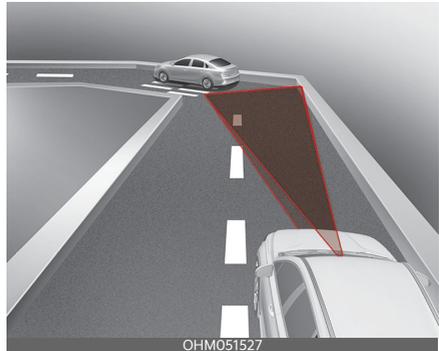


- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving very quickly
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is short or is posing a low posture
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front has impaired mobility
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving intersected with the driving direction
- There is a group of pedestrians, cyclists or a large crowd in front
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, making it difficult to detect
- The pedestrian or cyclist is difficult to distinguish from the similarly shaped structure in the surroundings
- You are driving by a pedestrian, cyclist traffic signs, structures, etc. near the intersection
- Driving in a parking lot
- Driving through a tollgate, construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- Driving on an incline road, curved road, etc.
- Driving through a roadside with trees or streetlights
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- There is interference by electromagnetic waves, such as driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving

- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.

**⚠ WARNING**

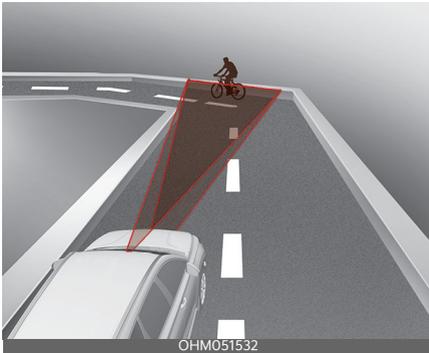
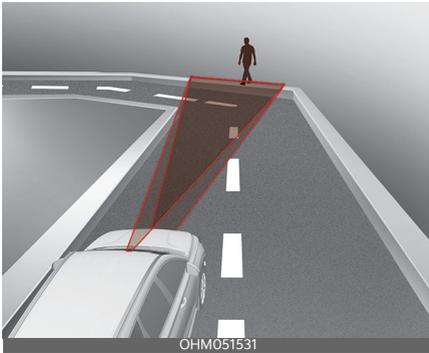
- **Driving on a curved road**



Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect the vehicle, pedestrian

or cyclist travelling in front on a curved road.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in the next lane or outside the lane when driving on a curved road. If this occurs, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake. Always check the traffic conditions around the vehicle.

- **Driving on an inclined road**



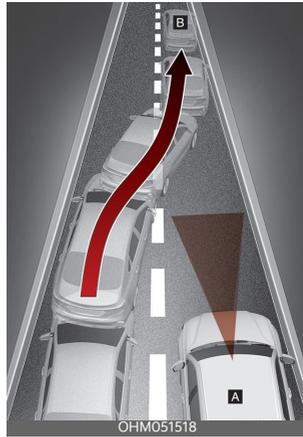


Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in front whilst driving uphill or downhill and this may result in no warning, or braking assist when necessary.

When Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist suddenly recognizes the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in front whilst passing over a slope, you may experience sharp deceleration.

Always keep your eyes forward whilst driving upward or downward on a slope, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.

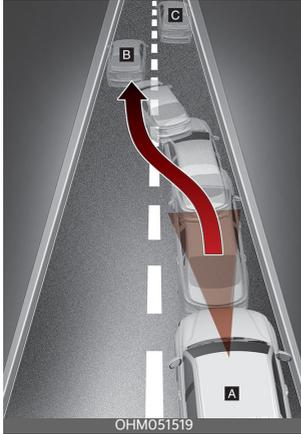
- **Changing lanes**



[A]: Your vehicle

[B]: Lane changing vehicle

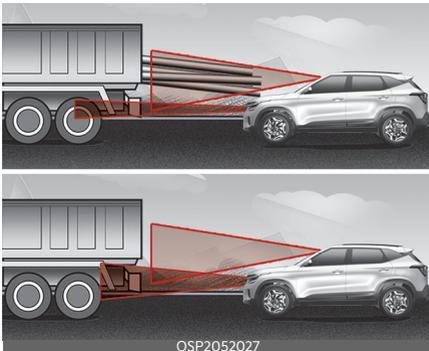
When a vehicle changes lanes in front of you, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect the vehicle, especially if the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



- [A]: Your vehicle
- [B]: Lane changing vehicle
- [C]: Same lane vehicle

When driving in stop-and-go traffic, and a stopped vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect the new vehicle that is now in front of you. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

• **Detecting vehicle**



When the vehicle in front has heavy loading extended rearward, or when the vehicle in front has higher ground clearance, it may induce a hazardous situation. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions, whilst driving and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.

**⚠ WARNING**

- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, we recommend that Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is turned off due to safety reasons.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may operate if objects that are similar in shape or characteristics to vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists are detected.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate on bicycles, motorcycles, or smaller wheeled objects, such as luggage bags, shopping carts, or strollers that are dragged by a pedestrian or a cyclist.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialized.

### Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) (if equipped)



Lane Keeping Assist is designed to help detect lane markings (or road edges) whilst driving over a certain speed. Lane Keeping Assist will warn the driver if the vehicle leaves the lane without using the turn signal, or will automatically assist the driver's steering to help prevent the vehicle from departing the lane.

#### Detecting sensor

[1]: Front view camera



The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect lane markings (or road edges).

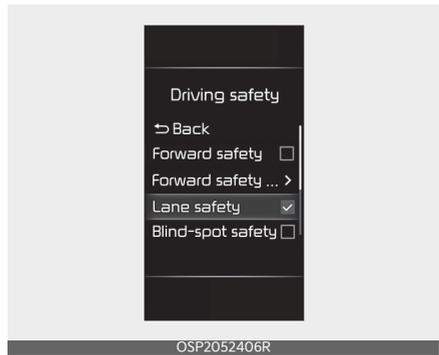
Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

### CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Sensor fusion) (if equipped)" on page 5-65.

### Lane Keeping Assist settings

#### Lane safety



With the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position, select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Driving safety' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Driving safety' on the Infotainment system screen to set whether to use the function.

- Lane safety : If Lane Safety is selected, Lane Keeping Assist will automatically assist the driver's steering when lane departure is detected to help prevent the vehicle from moving out of its lane. If Lane Safety is off, the yellow indicator light (  ) will appear on the cluster.

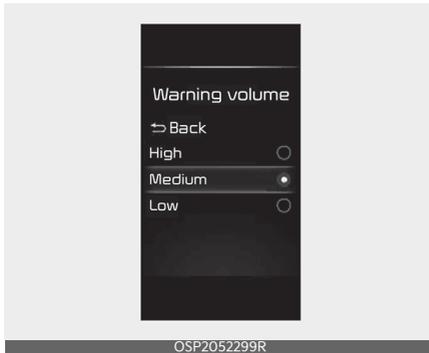
### WARNING

- Lane Keeping Assist does not control the steering wheel when the vehicle is driven in the middle of the lane.

- The driver should always be aware of the surroundings and steer the vehicle if Lane Safety is deselected.

## Lane Keeping Assist operation

### Warning methods (or Warning volume)



You can adjust the Warning methods (or Warning volume) with the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position.

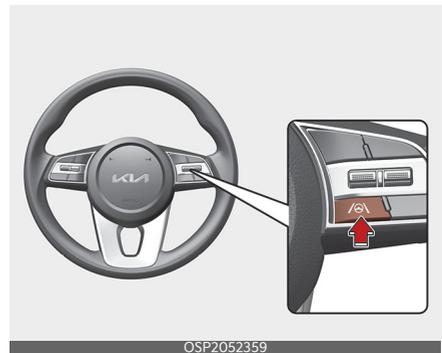
- Warning volume : Select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Warning volume' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume)' on the Infotainment system.
- Driving safety priority : Select 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume) → Driving safety priority' on the Infotainment system. For safe driving, the audio volume will temporarily decrease to warn the driver with the audible warning.

#### \* NOTICE

- Ensure that Warning methods (or Warning volume) you have set may apply to the warning volume of other Driver Assistance systems.

- Warning methods (or Warning volume) will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- Descriptions of each Driver Assistance system may be slightly different from the owner's manual after updating the software of your infotainment system. In this case, scan the QR code in the infotainment system manual to access the web manual for checking the changes.
- Depending on your region or infotainment system software version, the menu may be displayed as 'Warning sound', 'Warning methods' or 'Warning volume'.

### Turning Lane Keeping Assist On/Off



- For Russia  
Whenever the vehicle is turned off and on, Lane Keeping Assist will always turn on and the white  indicator light will appear on the cluster. Press and hold the Lane Driving

Assist button to turn off Lane Keeping Assist.

- For Australia

With the vehicle on, press and hold the Lane Driving Assist button located on the steering wheel to turn on Lane Keeping Assist. The white or green

 indicator light will appear on the cluster. Press and hold the Lane Driving Assist button again to turn off Lane Keeping Assist.

**\* NOTICE**

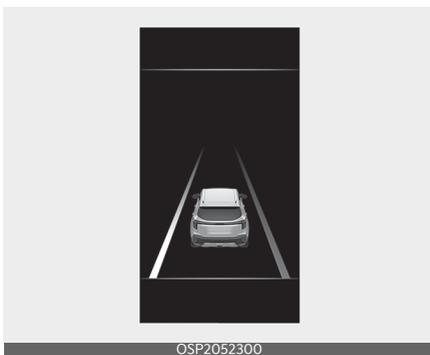
- When the Lane Driving Assist button is pressed shortly, Lane Following Assist (if equipped) will turn on and off.
- Whenever the vehicle is turned off and on, Lane safety settings will always retain its settings (For Russia).

**Warning and control**

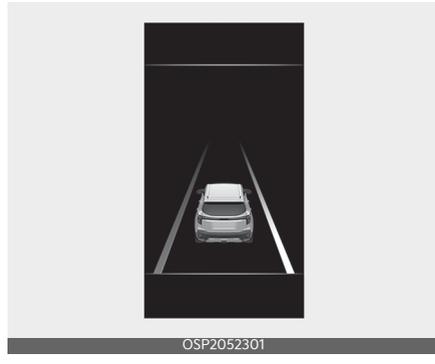
Lane Keeping Assist will warn and control the vehicle with Lane Departure Warning and Lane Keeping Assist.

**Lane Departure Warning**

Left



Right



- To warn the driver that the vehicle is departing from the projected lane in front, the green () indicator light will blink on the cluster, the lane line will blink on the cluster depending on which direction the vehicle is veering, and an audible warning will sound.
- Lane Keeping Assist will operate when your driving speed is between approximately 60~200 km/h (40~120 mph).

**Lane Keeping Assist**

- To warn the driver that the vehicle is departing from the projected lane in front, the green () indicator light will blink on the cluster, and the steering wheel will make adjustments to keep vehicle inside the lane.
- Lane Keeping Assist will operate when your driving speed is between approximately 60~200 km/h (40~120 mph).

## Hands-off warning



If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound in stages.

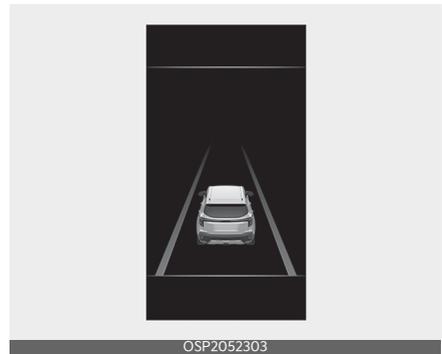
### **WARNING**

- The steering wheel may not be assisted if the steering wheel is held very tight or the steering wheel is steered over a certain degree.
- Lane Keeping Assist does not operate at all times. It is the responsibility of the driver to safely steer the vehicle and to maintain the vehicle in its lane.
- The hands-off warning message may appear late depending on road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.
- If the steering wheel is held very lightly, the hands off warning message may appear because Lane Keeping Assist may not recognize that the driver has their hands on the steering wheel.
- If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.

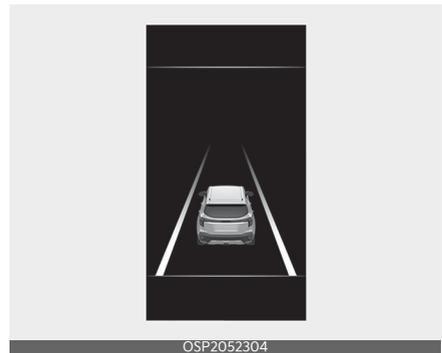
### **\* NOTICE**

- For more details on setting the functions in the infotainment system, refer to "LCD display" on page 4-66.
- When lane markings (or road edges) are detected, the lane lines on the cluster will change from gray to the green (  ) indicator light will illuminate if Lane Keeping Assist is operable.

#### Lane undetected



#### Lane detected

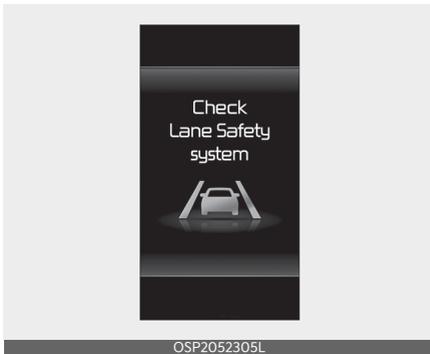


- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.

- Even though the steering is assisted by Lane Keeping Assist, the driver may control the steering wheel.
- The steering wheel may feel heavier or lighter when the steering wheel is assisted by Lane Keeping Assist than when it is not.

## Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations

### Lane Keeping Assist malfunction



When Lane Keeping Assist is not working properly, the warning message will appear and the yellow (  ) indicator light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, have the function checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/ service partner.

### Limitations of Lane Keeping Assist

Lane Keeping Assist may not operate properly or may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The lane is contaminated or difficult to detect because,
  - The lane markings (or road edges) are covered with rain, snow, dirt, oil, etc.
  - The colour of the lane markings (or road edges) is not distinguishable from the road
  - There are markings (or road edges) on the road near the lane or the markings on the road look similar to the lane markings (or road edges)
  - The lane markings (or road edges) is indistinct or damaged
  - The shadow is on the lane markings (or road edges) by a median strip, trees, guardrail, noise barriers, etc.
- There are more than two lane markings (or road edges) on the road
- The lane number increases or decreases, or the lane markings (or road edges) are crossing
- The lane markings (or road edges) are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area
- There are road markings (or road edges), such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings and road signs
- The lane suddenly disappears, such as at the intersection
- The lane (or road width) is very wide or narrow
- There is a road edge without a lane
- There is a boundary structure in the roadway, such as a tollgate, sidewalk, kerb, etc.
- The distance to the front vehicle is extremely short or the vehicle in front is covering the lane markings (or road edges)

### \* NOTICE

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Col-

lision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Sensor fusion) (if equipped)" on page 5-65.

### **WARNING**

- The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle. Do not solely rely on Lane Keeping Assist and drive dangerously.
  - The operation of Lane Keeping Assist can be cancelled or not work properly depending on road conditions and surroundings. Always be cautious whilst driving.
  - Refer to "Limitations of Lane Keeping Assist" on page 5-82, if the lane is not detected properly.
  - When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, we recommend that Lane Keeping Assist is turned off due to safety reasons.
  - If the vehicle is driven at high speed, the steering wheel will not be controlled. The driver must always follow the speed limit when using Lane Keeping Assist.
  - If any other function's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Lane Keeping Assist warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
  - You may not hear the warning sound of Lane Keeping Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
  - If you attach objects to the steering wheel, steering may not be assisted properly.
  - Lane Keeping Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialized.
- Lane Keeping Assist will not operate when:
    - The turn signal or hazard warning flasher is turned on
    - The vehicle is not driven in the centre of the lane when Lane Keeping Assist is turned on or right after changing a lane
    - ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or VSM (Vehicle Stability Management) is activated
    - The vehicle is driven on a sharp curve
    - Vehicle speed is below 55 km/h (35 mph) or above 200 km/h (120 mph)
    - The vehicle makes sharp lane changes
    - The vehicle is suddenly stopped

## Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) (if equipped)

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect and monitor approaching vehicles in the driver's blind spot area and warn the driver of a possible collision with a warning message and audible warning.

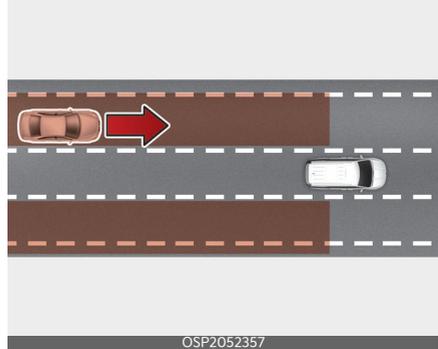
In addition, if there is a risk of collision when driving forward out of a parking space, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist can help avoid collision by applying the differential braking.



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect and informs the driver that a vehicle is in the blind spot.

### ⚠ CAUTION

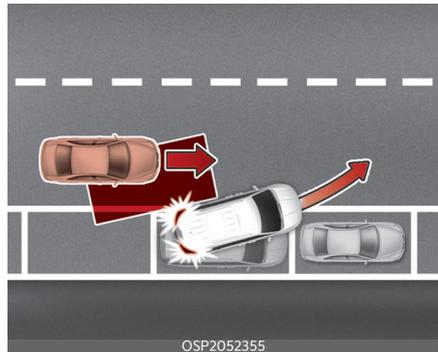
The detecting range may vary depending on the speed of your vehicle. Even if there is a vehicle in the blind spot area, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn you when you pass by at high speeds.



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect and informs the driver that a vehicle is approaching at high speed from the blind spot area.

### ⚠ CAUTION

Warning Timing may vary depending on the speed of the vehicle approaching at high speed.



When you are driving forward out of a parking space, if Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist judges that there is a collision risk with an approaching vehicle in the blind spot, it can help avoid collisions by applying the brake.

## Detecting sensor

[1]: Rear corner radar



Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

### ⚠ CAUTION

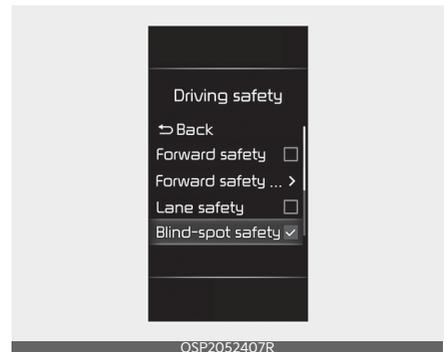
- Never disassemble the rear corner radar or radar assembly, or cause any damage to it.
- If the rear corner radar or near the radar has been damaged or impacted in any way, even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- If the rear corner radars have been replaced or repaired, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- The genuine Kia rear bumpers which the Rear corner radar sensors are mounted are parts with quality and performance ensured. If arbitrarily applying paint on or changing the bumper, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoid-

ance Assist may not function properly. Use only Kia Genuine Parts or those of an equivalent standard with proven quality and performance to repair or replace the bumper.

- Do not apply license plate frame or objects, such as a bumper sticker, film or a bumper guard near the rear corner radar.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not work properly if the bumper has been replaced, or the surroundings of the rear corner radar have been damaged or paint has been applied.
- If a trailer, carrier, etc. is installed, it may adversely affect the performance of the rear corner radar or Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate.

## Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

### Blind-spot safety



With the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position, select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Driving safety' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Driving safety' on the Infotainment

system screen to set whether to use the function.

- Blind-spot safety : Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn and braking assist will be applied depending on the collision risk levels.



When activating Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist or restarting the vehicle with this function activated, the warning light on the side mirrors will appear for approximately 3 seconds. When the vehicle is restarted with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist inactivated, the warning message will appear on the cluster.

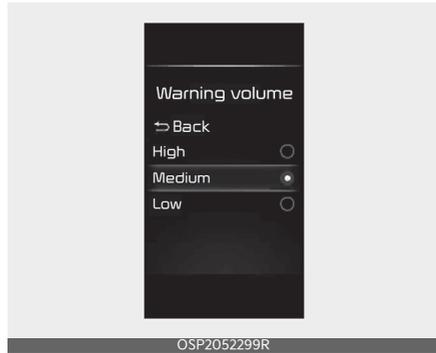
**⚠ WARNING**

If Blind-Spot Safety is deselected, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

**\* NOTICE**

If the engine is restarted, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will maintain the last setting.

**Warning methods (or Warning volume)**



You can adjust the Warning methods (or Warning volume) with the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position.

- Warning volume : Select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Warning volume' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume)' on the Infotainment system.
- Driving safety priority : Select 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume) → Driving safety priority' on the Infotainment system. For safe driving, the audio volume will temporarily decrease to warn the driver with the audible warning.

**\* NOTICE**

- Ensure that Warning methods (or Warning volume) you have set may apply to the warning volume of other Driver Assistance systems.
- Warning methods (or Warning volume) will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on

the vehicle features and specifications.

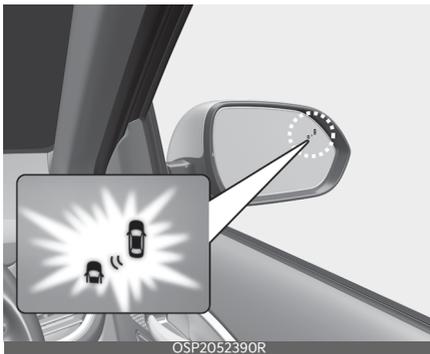
- Descriptions of each Driver Assistance system may be slightly different from the owner's manual after updating the software of your infotainment system. In this case, scan the QR code in the infotainment system manual to access the web manual for checking the changes.
- Depending on your region or infotainment system software version, the menu may be displayed as 'Warning sound', 'Warning methods' or 'Warning volume'.

## Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn and control as following operation.

- Vehicle detection
- Collision Warning
- Collision-Avoidance Assist

### Vehicle detection



The warning light on the outside rear view mirror (side view mirror) and head-up display (if equipped) will appear when the vehicle on both lanes is detected from the rear.

A vehicle is detected in the following conditions.

- Your driving speed: Above 20 km/h (12 mph)
- The speed of the vehicle in your blind spot area: Above 10 km/h (7 mph)

### Collision Warning

With the vehicle detection state, collision warning will alert the driver when the turn signal is activated to make a lane change with an adjacent car in the blind spot area.

- Collision warning will alert the driver with the warning light on the outside rear view mirrors (side view mirrors) and head-up display (if equipped), audible warning.
- When the turn signal is turned off or you move away from the lane, the collision warning will be cancelled and Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will return to vehicle detection state.

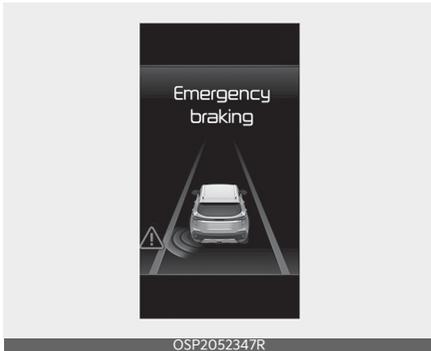
### **⚠ WARNING**

- The detecting range of the rear corner radar is determined by a standard road width, therefore, on a narrow road, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect other vehicles two lanes over and warn you. In contrast, on a wide road, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not be able to detect a vehicle driving in the next lane and may not warn you.
- When the hazard warning flasher is on, the collision warning by the turn signal will not operate.

**\* NOTICE**

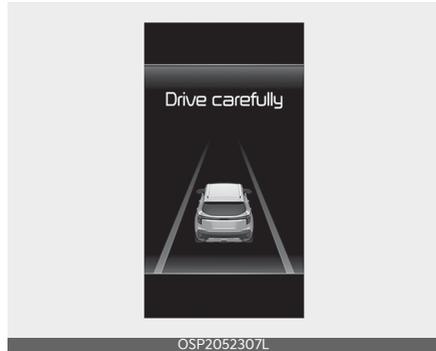
- If the driver's seat is on the left side, the collision warning may occur when you turn left. If the driver's seat is on the right side, the collision warning may occur when you turn right. Maintain a proper distance with the vehicles in the lane.
- Images or colours may be displayed differently depends on the instrument cluster specifications or theme.

**Collision-Avoidance Assist (whilst departing)**



The warning light on the outside rear view mirror (side view mirror), head-up display (if equipped) and an audible warning will warn the driver of a collision. It assists in braking control to prevent a collision with a vehicle approaching from the blind spot area. Collision-Avoidance Assist will be activated in the following conditions.

- Your driving speed: Below 3 km/h (2 mph)
- Speed of the vehicle in your blind spot area: Above 5 km/h (3 mph)



When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.

For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

**⚠ WARNING**

- For your safety, change the settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
- If any other function's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist's warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid collision.
- When Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating, braking control by the function will automatically cancel when the driver excessively depresses

the accelerator pedal or sharply steers the vehicle.

- If changing the gear quickly during reversing the vehicle, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not work or may operate unnecessarily.
- During Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.
- Even if there is a problem with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking performance will operate properly.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate in all situations or cannot avoid all collisions.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions.
- Driver should maintain control of the vehicle at all times. Do not depend on Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist. Maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
- Never test Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist on people, animal, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.

### WARNING

The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).

There will only be a warning when:

- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on.

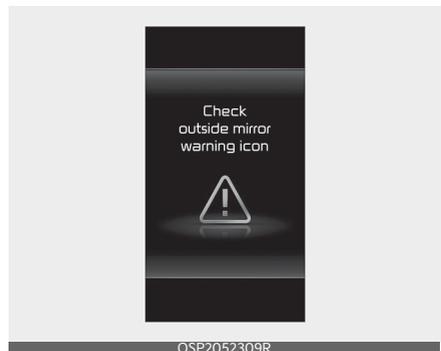
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function.

## Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

### Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction



When Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the warning message will appear for several seconds and  warning light will appear on the cluster. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.



When the warning light on the side view mirror is not working properly, the warning message will appear for several sec-

onds and  warning light will appear on the cluster. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled



When the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, or installing a trailer or carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs, the warning message will appear on the cluster.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate properly when such foreign material or trailer, etc. is removed, and then the engine is restarted.

If Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### WARNING

- Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Blind-

Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate.

- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain), where any objects are not detected right after the engine is turned on, or when the detecting sensor is blocked with foreign material right after the engine is turned on.

### CAUTION

Turn off Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist to install a trailer, carrier, etc., or remove the trailer, carrier, etc. to use Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist.

### Limitations of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- There is inclement weather, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, etc.
- The rear corner radar is covered with snow, rain, dirt, etc.
- The temperature around the rear corner radar is high or low
- Driving on a highway (or motorway) ramp
- The road pavement (or the peripheral ground) abnormally contains metallic components (for example, possibly due to subway construction).
- There is a fixed object near the vehicle, such as sound barriers, guardrails, central dividers, entry barriers, street lamps, signs, tunnels, walls, etc. (including double structures)

- Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- Driving on a wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road
- The other vehicle drives very close behind your vehicle, or the other vehicle passes by your vehicle in close proximity
- The speed of the other vehicle is very fast that it passes by your vehicle in a short time
- Your vehicle passes by the other vehicle
- Your vehicle change lane
- Your vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated
- The vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you, or when the vehicle two lanes away moves to the next lane from you
- A trailer or carrier is installed around the rear corner radar
- The bumper around the rear corner radar is covered with objects, such as a bumper sticker, bumper guard, bike rack, etc.
- The bumper around the rear corner radar is impacted, damaged or the radar is out of position
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.

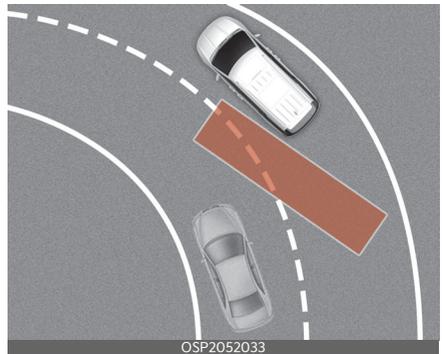
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly or it may operate unexpectedly when the following objects are detected:

- A motorcycle or bicycle is detected

- A vehicle such as a flat trailer is detected
- A big vehicle such as a bus or truck is detected
- A moving obstacle such as a pedestrian, animal, shopping cart or a baby stroller is detected
- A vehicle with low height such as a sports car is detected

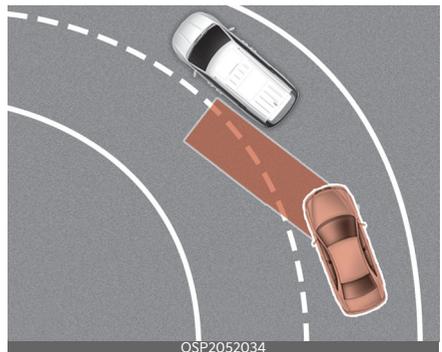
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Driving on a curved road**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving on a curved road. Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect the vehicle in the next lane.

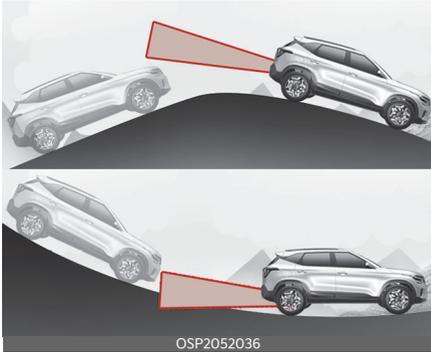
Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving on the curved road. Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may recognize the vehicle in the same lane.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

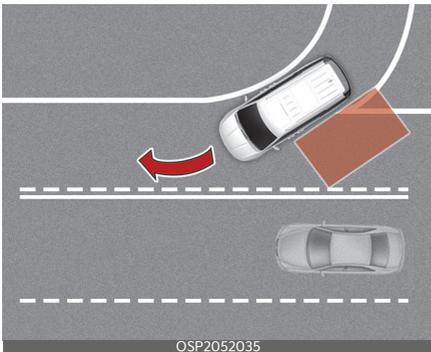
- **Driving on an inclined road**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving on a slope. Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect the vehicle in the next lane or may incorrectly detect the ground or structure.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

- **Driving where the road is merging/dividing**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving where the road merges or divides. Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect the vehicle in the next lane.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

- **Driving where the heights of the lanes are different**



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance assist may not operate properly when driving where the heights of the lanes are different. Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect the vehicle on a road with different lane heights (underpass joining section, grade separated intersections, etc.).

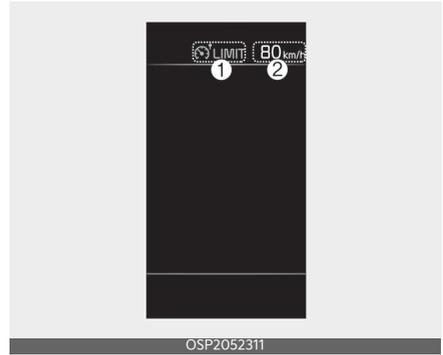
Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

**⚠ WARNING**

- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, make sure that you turn off Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly if interfered with by strong electromagnetic waves.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after

the vehicle is started, or the rear corner radars are initialized.

## Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA) (if equipped)

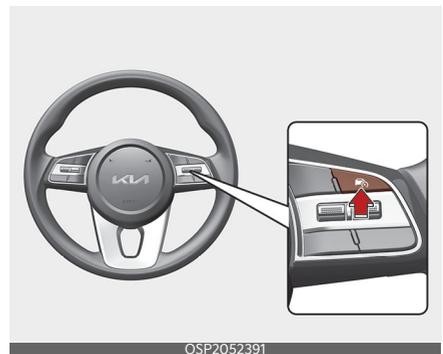


1. Speed Limit indicator
2. Set speed

You can set the speed limit when you do not want to drive over a specific speed. If you drive over the preset speed limit, Manual Speed Limit Assist will operate (set speed limit will blink and chime will sound) until the vehicle speed returns within the speed limit.

### Manual Speed Limit Assist operation

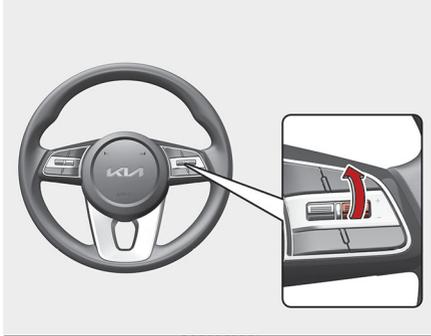
#### Setting the speed limit



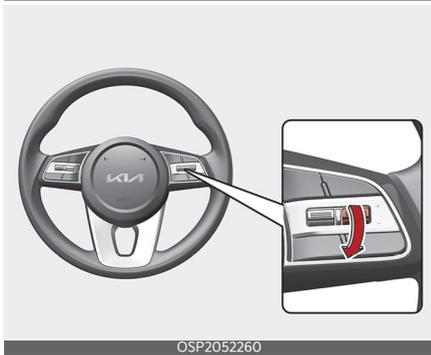
1. Press and hold the Driving Assist button on the steering wheel, at the

desired speed. The Speed Limit indicator will illuminate on the cluster.

2. Push the + switch up or - switch down, and release it at the desired speed.



OSP2052261



OSP2052260

Push the + switch up or - switch down and hold it. The speed will increase or decrease to the nearest multiple of ten (multiple of five in mph) at first, and then increase or decrease by 10 km/h (5 mph).

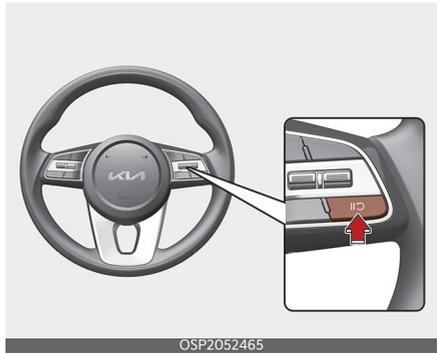
3. The set speed limit will be displayed on the cluster. If you would like to drive over the preset speed limit, depress the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point to activate the kick-down function.

The set speed limit will blink and chime will sound until you return the vehicle speed within the speed limit.

**\* NOTICE**

When the accelerator pedal is not depressed beyond the pressure point, vehicle speed will maintain within the speed limit.

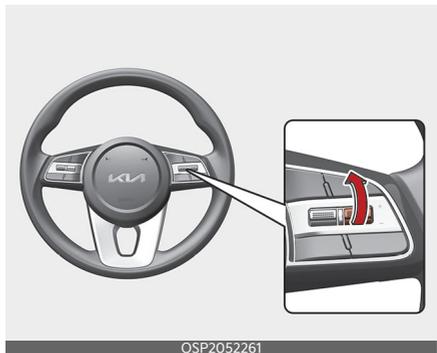
**Temporarily pausing Manual Speed Limit Assist**



OSP2052465

Press the || with a circular arrow symbol switch to temporarily pause the set speed limit. The set speed limit will turn off but the Speed Limit indicator will stay on.

**Resuming Manual Speed Limit Assist**

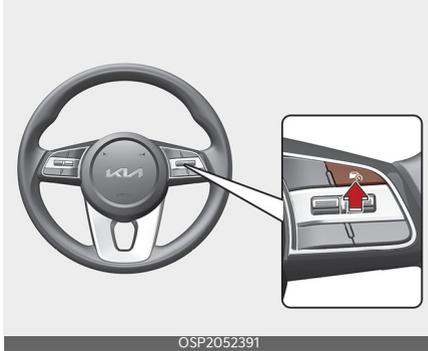


OSP2052261

To resume Manual Speed Limit Assist after the function was paused, operate the +, - or || with a circular arrow symbol switch.

If you push the + switch up or - switch down, set speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster. If you press the  switch, set speed will resume to the preset speed.

## Turning off Manual Speed Limit Assist



Press the Driving Assist button to turn Manual Speed Limit Assist off. The Speed Limit indicator will go off. Always press the Driving Assist button to turn Manual Speed Limit Assist off when not in use.

### WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Manual Speed Limit Assist:

- Always set the vehicle speed to the speed limit in your country.
- Keep Manual Speed Limit Assist off when the function is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed. Check that the Speed Limit indicator is off.
- Manual Speed Limit Assist does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely and should always be aware of unexpected and sudden

situations from occurring. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.

## Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA) (if equipped)

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist uses information from the detected road sign and navigation system to inform the driver of the speed limit and additional information of the current road. Also, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist helps the driver to maintain within the speed limit of the road.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly if the function is used in other countries.
- If a navigation is applied to your vehicle, the navigation needs to be regularly updated for Intelligent Speed Limit Assist to operate properly. For more information, refer to the user's manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

## Detecting sensor

[1]: Front view camera



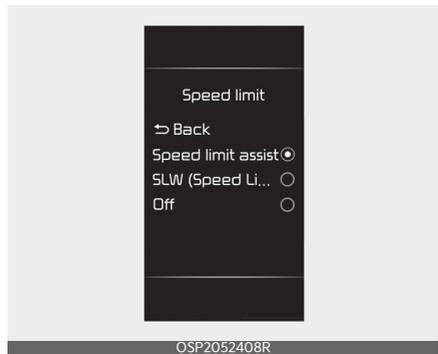
Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

### ⚠ CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Front Camera Only) (if equipped)" on page 6-58.

## Intelligent Speed Limit Assist settings

### Speed limit



With the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position, select 'User Settings → Driver Assistance → Speed limit' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Speed limit' on the Infotainment system.

- Speed limit assist: Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will inform the driver of speed limit and additional road signs. In addition, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will inform the driver to change set speed of Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control (If equipped) to help the driver stay within the speed limit.
- SLW (Speed Limit Warning): Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will inform the driver of speed limit and additional

road signs. In addition, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will warn the driver when the vehicle is driven faster than the speed limit. Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control (if equipped) set speed will not be automatically adjusted. The driver should adjust the speed manually.

- Off: Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will turn off. Speed limit warning light (---) will appear on the cluster.

### \* INFORMATION

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the user's manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

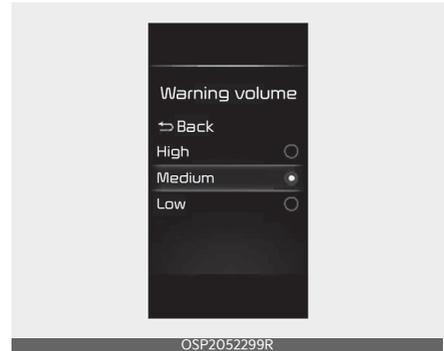
### ▲ WARNING

For your safety, change the settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.

### \* NOTICE

Speed limit and Speed warning function operates based on an offset value added with the speed limit.

## Warning methods (or Warning volume)



You can adjust the Warning methods (or Warning volume) with the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position.

- Warning volume : Select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Warning volume' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume)' on the Infotainment system.
- Driving safety priority : Select 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume) → Driving safety priority' on the Infotainment system. For safe driving, the audio volume will temporarily decrease to warn the driver with he audible warning.

### \* NOTICE

- Ensure that Warning methods (or Warning volume) you have set may apply to the warning volume of other Driver Assistance systems.
- Warning methods (or Warning volume) its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on

the vehicle features and specifications.

- Descriptions of each Driver Assistance system may be slightly different from the owner's manual after updating the software of your infotainment system. In this case, scan the QR code in the infotainment system manual to access the web manual for checking the changes.
- Depending on your region or infotainment system software version, the menu may be displayed as 'Warning sound', 'Warning methods' or 'Warning volume'.

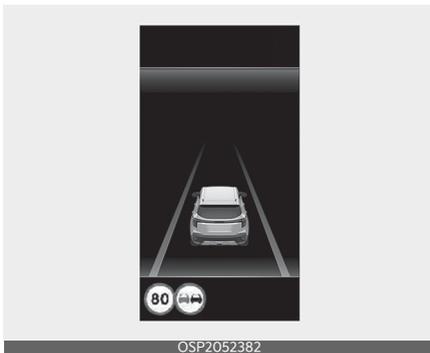
### Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operation

#### Warning and control

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is warned and controlled by the following action.

- Displaying speed limit
- Warning overspeed
- Changing set speed

#### Displaying speed limit



Speed limit information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

### \* NOTICE

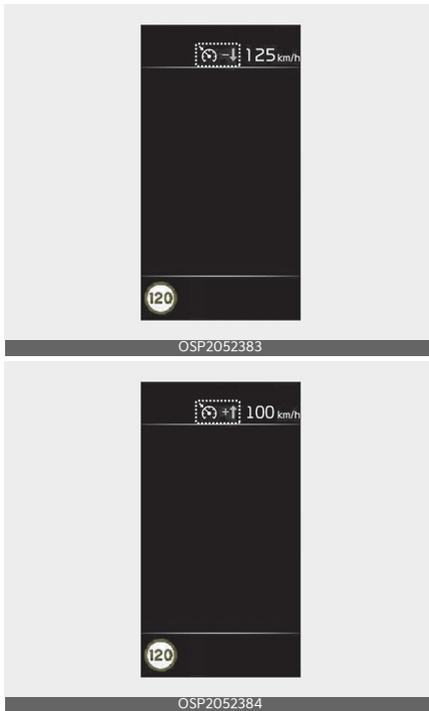
- If speed limit information of the road cannot be recognized, '---' sign will be displayed. Please refer to "Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations" on page 5-100 if the road signs are difficult to recognize.
- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist provides additional road sign information in addition to speed limit. The additional road sign information provided may vary according to your country.
- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.

### Warning overspeed



When driving at a speed higher than the displayed speed limit, the road sign indicator will blink and warning will sound.

## Changing set speed



If the speed limit of the road changes during the operation of Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control, an arrow in the direction of up or down is displayed to inform the driver that the set speed needs to be changed. At this time, the driver can change the set speed according to the speed limit by using the (+) or (-) switch on the steering wheel.

## Auto set speed change (if Infotainment system equipped)



When operating Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control, if the speed set by the driver is the same as the speed limit on the road, the set speed is automatically adjusted accordingly even if the speed limit changes afterwards. The auto set speed change function operates on roads with a speed limit of above 70 km/h (45 mph). When the function is activated, the set speed on the instrument cluster is displayed in green.

### ⚠ WARNING

- Even after changing the set speed according to the speed limit of the road, the vehicle can still be driven over the speed limit. If necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed.
- If the speed limit of the road is under 30 km/h (20 mph), the set speed change function will not work.

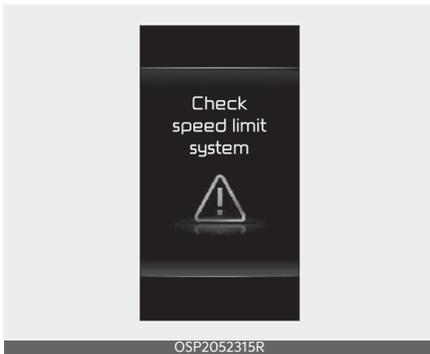
### \* NOTICE

- For more details on Manual Speed Limit Assist operation, refer to "Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)" on page 6-102.

- For more details on Smart Cruise Control operation, refer to "Smart Cruise Control (SCC) (if equipped)" on page 6-118.

## Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations

### Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction



When Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is not working properly, the warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light and speed limit warning light (---) will appear on the cluster. In this case, have the function checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Intelligent Speed Limit Assist disabled



When the front windscreen where the front view camera is located is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Intelligent Speed Limit Assist. If this occurs, the warning message and speed limit warning light (---) will appear on the cluster.

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed. Always keep it clean.

If Intelligent Speed Limit Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Even though the warning message or warning light does not appear on the cluster, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly.

## Limitations of Intelligent Speed Limit Assist

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The road sign is contaminated or indistinguishable
  - The road sign is difficult to see due to bad weather, such as rain, snow, fog, etc.
  - The road sign is partially obscured by surrounding objects or shadow
- The road signs do not conform to the standard
  - The text or picture on the road sign is different from the standard
  - The road sign is installed between the main line and the exit road or between diverging roads
  - A sign is attached to another vehicle
- The distance between the vehicle and the road signs is far
- The vehicle encounters appearing road signs
- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist incorrectly recognizes numbers or pictures in the street signs or other signs as the speed limit
- A road sign near the road you are driving is detected
- Multiple signs are installed close together
- Other Auxiliary signs or commercial signs are placed around the speed limit signs.
- The minimum speed limit sign is mis-recognized
- The minimum speed limit sign is on the road
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel or passing under a bridge
- Headlamps are not used or the brightness of the headlamps are weak at night or in the tunnel
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Road signs are difficult to recognize due to the reflection of sunlight, street lights, or oncoming vehicles
- The navigation information or GPS information contain errors.
- The driver does not follow the guide of the navigation.
- Driving on a road that is sharply curved or continuously curved
- Driving through speed bumps, or driving up and down or left to right on steep inclines
- The vehicle is shaking heavily
- Driving on a newly opened road
- The navigation is updated whilst driving
- The navigation is restarted whilst driving

### WARNING

- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is a supplemental function that helps the driver to comply with the speed limit on the road, and may not display the correct speed limit or control the driving speed properly.
- It is the responsibility of the driver to keep the speed limit.
- When initializing (rebooting) the camera or restarting the vehicle, the function may not operate for approximately 15 seconds.

**\* NOTICE**

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Front Camera Only) (if equipped)" on page 6-58.

---

## Driver Attention Warning (DAW) (if equipped)

### Basic function

Driver Attention Warning can help determine the driver's attention level by analyzing driving pattern and driving time whilst the vehicle is driven. Driver Attention Warning will recommend a break when the driver's attention level falls below a certain level to help drive safely.

### Leading Vehicle Departure Alert

Leading Vehicle Departure Alert will inform the driver when a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop.

### Detecting sensor

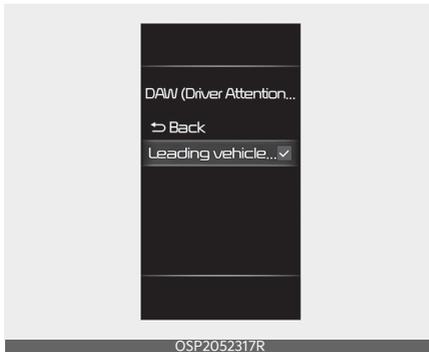
[1]: Front view camera



The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to help detect driving patterns and front vehicle departure whilst vehicle is being driven. Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

**CAUTION**

- Always keep the front view camera in good condition to maintain optimal performance of Driver Attention Warning.
- For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Sensor fusion) (if equipped)" on page 5-65.

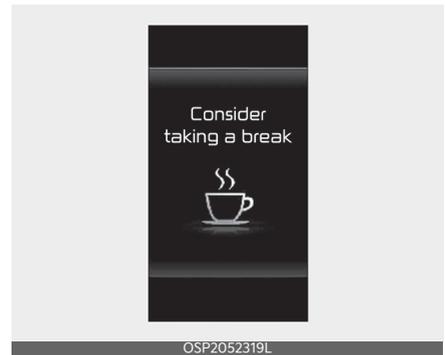
**Driver Attention Warning settings****Leading vehicle departure alert**

With the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position, select 'User settings → Driver assistance → DAW (Driver Attention Warning)' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → DAW (Driver Attention Warning)' on the Infotainment system screen.

If 'Leading vehicle departure alert' is selected, the function will inform the driver when a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop.

**Driver Attention Warning operation****Basic function**

The basic function of Driver Attention Warning is to inform the driver 'Consider taking a break'.

**Taking a break**

The warning message will appear on the cluster and an audible warning will sound to suggest that the driver take a break, when the driver's attention level is below a certain level.

- Driver Attention Warning will not suggest a break when the total driving time is shorter than 4 minutes or 4 minutes has not passed after the last break was suggested.

Driver Attention Warning operates under the following conditions:

- Your driving speed: Approximately 0~200 km/h (0~120 mph)

**WARNING**

For your safety, only change the settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Driver Attention Warning may suggest a break depending on the driver's driving pattern or habits, even if the driver doesn't feel fatigue.
- Driver Attention Warning is a supplemental function and may not be able to determine whether the driver is inattentive.
- The driver who feels fatigued should take a break at a safe location, even though there is no break suggestion by Driver Attention Warning.

**\* NOTICE**

For more details on vehicle settings, refer to "Instrument cluster" on page 4-57.

**⚠ WARNING**

- If any other function's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert's warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
- The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Leading Vehicle Departure Alert is a supplemental function and may not warn the driver whenever the front vehicle departs from a stop.
- Always check the front of the vehicle and road conditions before departure.

**\* NOTICE**

The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.

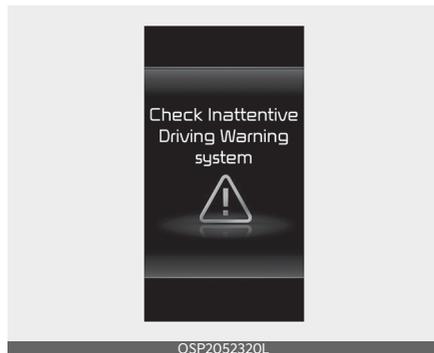
**Leading Vehicle Departure Alert**



When a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert will inform the driver by displaying the warning message on the cluster and an audible warning will sound.

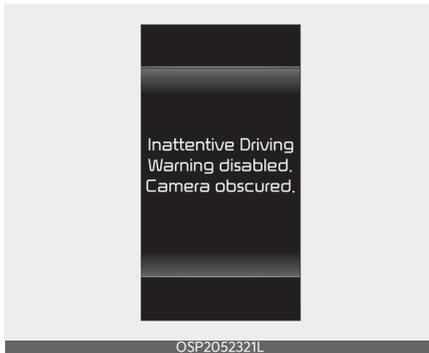
**Driver Attention Warning malfunction and limitations**

**Driver Attention Warning malfunction**



When Driver Attention Warning is not working properly, the warning message will appear for several seconds and (⚠) warning light will appear on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the function be inspected by an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Driver Attention Warning disabled



When the front view camera is located is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Driver Attention Warning. If this occurs the warning message, and (⚠) warning light will appear on the cluster. Driver Attention Warning will operate normally when snow, rain or foreign material is removed. Always keep it clean.

If Driver Attention Warning does not operate normally after obstruction (snow, rain, or foreign material) is removed, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends visiting an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### ⚠ WARNING

- Driver Attention Warning may not work properly in areas where substances are not detected after turning ON the vehicle (e.g. in open terrain) or if the recognition sensor is contaminated.
- If restarting the vehicle with the sensors blocked or malfunctioned, Driver Attention Warning may not properly operate as the function maintains the last setting.

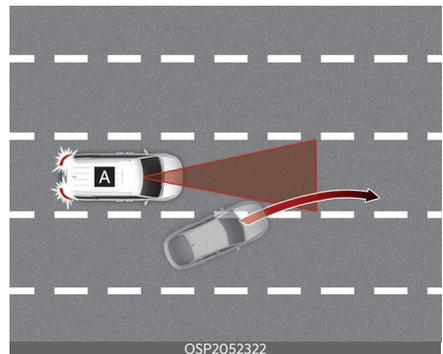
### Limitations of Driver Attention Warning

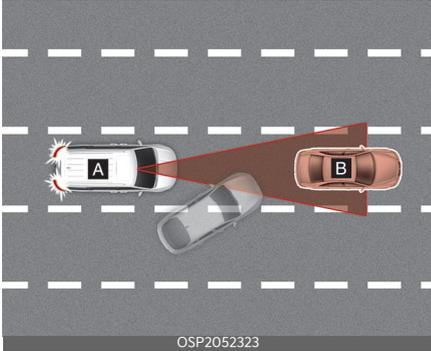
Driver Attention Warning may not work properly in the following situations:

- The vehicle is driven violently
- The vehicle intentionally crosses over lanes frequently
- The vehicle is controlled by Driver Assistance system, such as Lane Keeping Assist.

### Leading Vehicle Departure Alert

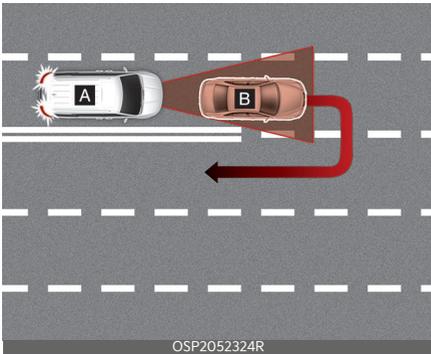
- When the vehicle cuts in





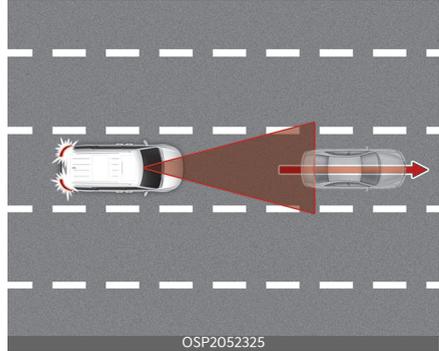
[A]: Your vehicle, [B]: Front vehicle  
If a vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When the vehicle ahead sharply steers



[A]: Your vehicle, [B]: Front vehicle  
If the vehicle in front makes a sharp turn, such as to turn left or right or make a U-turn, etc., Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When the vehicle ahead abruptly departs



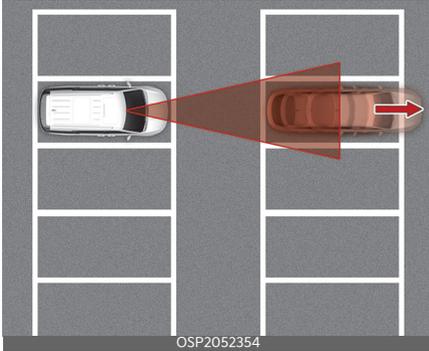
If the vehicle in front abruptly departs, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When a pedestrian or cyclist is between you and the vehicle ahead



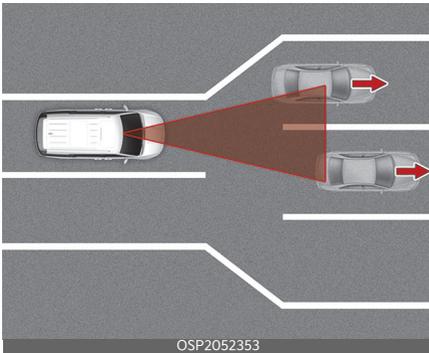
If there is a pedestrian or cyclist in between you and the vehicle in front, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When in a parking lot



If a vehicle parked in front drives away from you, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may warn you that the parked vehicle is driving away.

- When driving at a tollgate or intersection, etc.



If you pass a tollgate or intersection with lots of vehicles or you drive where lanes are merged or divided frequently, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

**⚠ WARNING**

Driver Attention Warning may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialized.

**\* NOTICE**

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Sensor fusion) (if equipped)" on page 5-65.

## Cruise Control (CC) (if equipped)



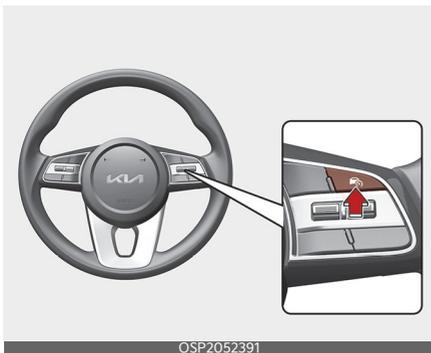
1. Cruise indicator
2. Set speed

Cruise Control will allow you to drive at speeds above 30 km/h (20 mph) without depressing the accelerator pedal.

### Cruise Control operation

#### Setting set speed

1. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 30 km/h (20 mph).



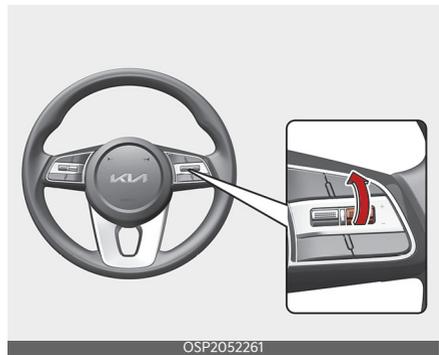
2. Press the Driving Assist button at the desired speed. The set speed and Cruise (CRUISE) indicator will illuminate on the cluster.

3. Release the accelerator pedal.  
Vehicle speed will maintain the set speed even when the accelerator pedal is not depressed.

#### \* NOTICE

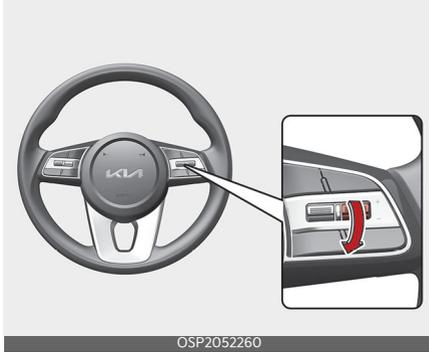
On a steep slope, the vehicle may slightly slow down or speed up whilst driving uphill or downhill.

### Increasing set speed



- Push the + switch up and release it immediately. The set speed will increase by 1 km/h (1 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.
- Push the + switch up and hold it whilst monitoring the set speed on the cluster. The set speed will increase to the nearest multiple of ten (multiple of five in mph) at first, and then increase by 10 km/h (5 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner. Release the switch when the desired speed is shown and the vehicle will accelerate to that speed.

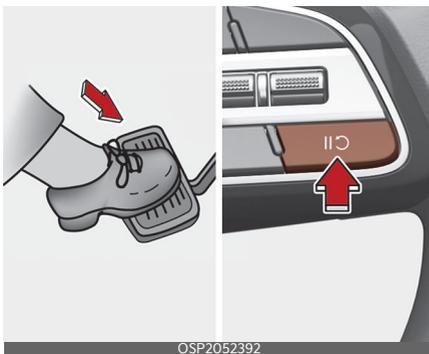
## Decreasing set speed



- Push the - switch down and release it immediately. The set speed will decrease by 1 km/h (1 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.
- Push the - switch down and hold it whilst monitoring the set speed on the cluster. The set speed will decrease to the nearest multiple of ten (multiple of five in mph) at first, and then decrease by 10 km/h (5 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.

Release the switch at the speed you want to maintain.

## Temporarily pausing Cruise Control

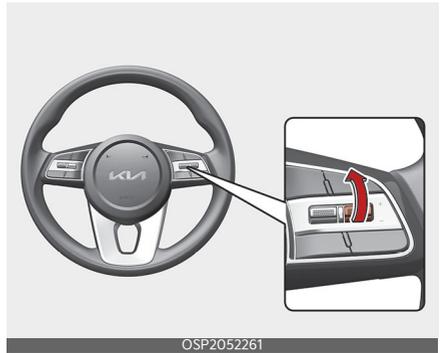


Cruise Control will be paused when:

- Depressing the brake pedal.
- Pressing the || ⌚ button.
- Shifting the gear to N (Neutral).
- Decreasing vehicle speed to less than 30 km/h (20 mph).
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is operating.
- The vehicle speed is above 180 km/h (110 mph).

The set speed will turn off but the Cruise (⌚ CRUISE) indicator will stay on.

## Resuming Cruise Control



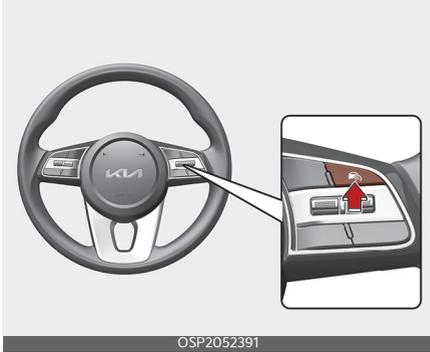
Operate the +, - switch or || ⌚ button.

If you push the + switch up or - switch down, vehicle speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster.

If you press the || ⌚ button, vehicle speed will resume to the preset speed.

Vehicle speed must be above 30 km/h (20 mph) for the function to resume.

## Turning off Cruise Control



Press the Driving Assist button to turn Cruise Control off. The Cruise indicator will go off.

Always press the Driving Assist button to turn Cruise Control off when not in use.

### \* NOTICE

Take the following precautions when using Cruise Control:

- Always set the vehicle speed under the speed limit in your country.
- Keep Cruise Control off when the function is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed. Check that the Cruise (🚗 CRUISE) indicator is off.
- Cruise Control does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely and should always be aware of unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.
- Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.
- Do not use Cruise Control when it may be unsafe to keep the vehicle at a constant speed:

- When driving in heavy traffic, or when traffic conditions make it difficult to drive at a constant speed
- When driving on rainy, icy, or snow-covered roads
- When driving on hilly or windy roads
- When driving in windy areas
- When driving with limited view (possibly due to bad weather, such as fog, snow, rain and sandstorm)
- Do not use Cruise Control when towing a trailer.

### ⚠ CAUTION

During cruise-speed driving with the manual transmission vehicle, do not shift into neutral without depressing the clutch pedal, since the engine will be over-revved. If this happens, depress the clutch pedal or press the Driving Assist button to turn Cruise Control off.

## Smart Cruise Control (SCC) (if equipped)

Smart Cruise Control allows you to program the vehicle to maintain constant speed and distance detecting the vehicle ahead without depressing the accelerator or brake pedal.

### Overtaking Acceleration Assist

Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, if the function judges that the driver is determined to overtake the vehicle in front, acceleration will be assisted.

### Detecting sensor

[1]: Front view camera, [2]: Front radar



The front view camera and front radar are used as a detecting sensor to detect vehicles in front. Refer to the picture for

the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Always keep the front view camera and front radar in good condition to maintain optimal performance of Smart Cruise Control.
- For more details on the precautions of the front view camera and front radar, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Sensor fusion) (if equipped)" on page 5-65.

## Smart Cruise Control settings

### Based on Drive Mode

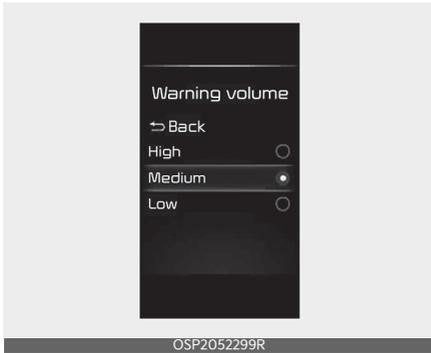
Smart Cruise Control will change acceleration based on the drive mode selected from Drive mode integrated control system. Refer to the following chart.

Drive Mode	Smart Cruise Control
NORMAL	Normal
ECO	Slow
SPORT	Fast

### \* NOTICE

- For more details on Drive Mode, refer to "Drive mode integrated control system" on page 5-52.
- In vehicles without Drive Mode, Smart Cruise Control accelerate the vehicle in 'Normal' level.

## Warning methods (or Warning volume)



You can adjust the Warning methods (or Warning volume) with the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position.

- Warning volume : Select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Warning volume' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume)' on the Infotainment system.
- Driving safety priority : Select 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume) → Driving safety priority' on the Infotainment system. For safe driving, the audio volume will temporarily decrease to warn the driver with the audible warning.

### \* NOTICE

- Ensure that Warning methods (or Warning volume) you have set may apply to the warning volume of other Driver Assistance systems.
- Warning methods (or Warning volume) will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on

the vehicle features and specifications.

- Descriptions of each Driver Assistance system may be slightly different from the owner's manual after updating the software of your infotainment system. In this case, scan the QR code in the infotainment system manual to access the web manual for checking the changes.
- Depending on your region or infotainment system software version, the menu may be displayed as 'Warning sound', 'Warning methods' or 'Warning volume'.

## Smart Cruise Control operation

### Operating conditions for basic function

#### Basic function

Smart Cruise Control operates when the following conditions are satisfied.

- The gear is in D (Drive)
- Your driving speed is within the operating speed range
  - 10~200 km/h (5~120 mph): when there is no vehicle in front
  - 0~200 km/h (0~120 mph): when there is a vehicle in front
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS is on

Smart Cruise Control does not operate in the following conditions.

- The driver's door is opened
- Engine RPM is high
- EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is applied
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS is controlling the vehicle

- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist brake control is operating
- Remote Smart Parking Assist brake control is operating (if equipped)

### \* NOTICE

When stopped behind another vehicle, the driver can turn on Smart Cruise Control whilst the brake pedal is depressed.

## Operating conditions for Acceleration Assist

Overtaking Acceleration Assist will operate when the turn signal indicator is turned on to the left (left-hand drive) or turned on to the right (right-hand drive) whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, and the following conditions are satisfied:

- Your driving speed is above 60 km/h (40 mph)
- A vehicle is detected in front of your vehicle

Overtaking Acceleration Assist does not operate in the following conditions.

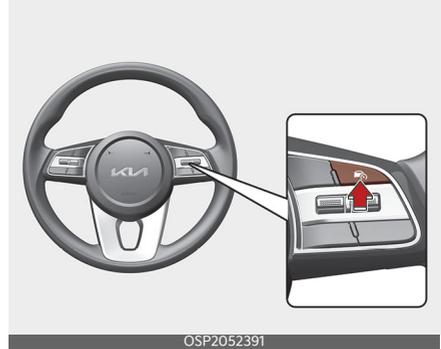
- The hazard warning flasher is on
- Vehicle speed is reduced to maintain distance with the vehicle in front

### ▲ WARNING

- When the turn signal indicator is turned on to the left (left-hand drive) or turned on to the right (right-hand drive) whilst there is a vehicle ahead, the vehicle may accelerate temporarily. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.
- Regardless of your country's driving direction, Overtaking Acceleration Assist will operate when the conditions are satisfied. When using the function in countries with different

driving direction, always check the road conditions at all times.

## Turning on Smart Cruise Control



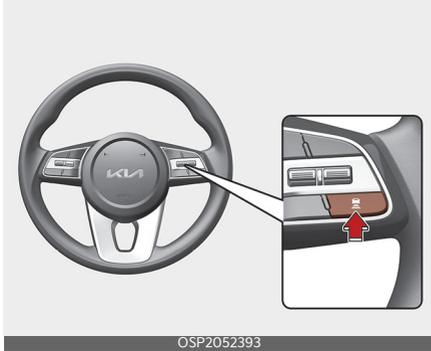
Press the Driving Assist button to turn on Smart Cruise Control. The speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster.

- If there is no vehicle in front of you, the set speed will be maintained, but if there is a vehicle in front of you, the speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead. If the vehicle ahead accelerates, your vehicle will travel at a steady cruising speed after accelerating to the set speed.

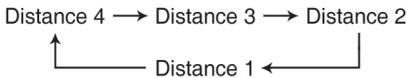
### \* NOTICE

- If your vehicle speed is between 0~30 km/h (0~20 mph) when you press the Driving Assist button, Smart Cruise Control speed will be set to 30 km/h (20 mph).
- If driver shifts to a lower gear, the driving speed may not reach the set speed.

### Setting Vehicle Distance



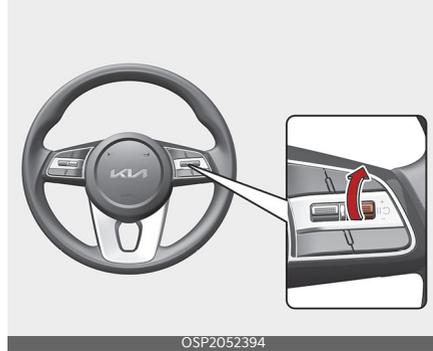
Each time the Vehicle Distance button is pressed, the Vehicle Distance changes as follows:



**\* NOTICE**

- If you drive at 90 km/h (56 mph), the distance is maintained as follows:
  - Distance 4 - approximately 52.5 m (172 ft.)
  - Distance 3 - approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
  - Distance 2 - approximately 32.5 m (106 ft.)
  - Distance 1 - approximately 25 m (82 ft.)
- The distance is set to the last set distance when the engine is restarted, or when Smart Cruise Control was temporarily cancelled.

### Increasing set speed



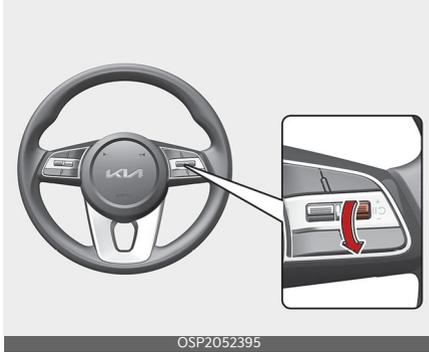
Push up the + switch, and release it immediately. The set speed will increase by 1 km/h (1 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.

- Push up the + switch, and hold it whilst monitoring the set speed on the cluster. The set speed will increase by 10 km/h or 5 mph each time the switch is operated in this manner. Release the switch when the desired speed is shown, and the vehicle will accelerate to that speed. Speed can increase the set speed to 200 km/h (120 mph).

**⚠ WARNING**

Check the driving condition before using the + switch. Driving speed may sharply increase when you push up and hold the + switch.

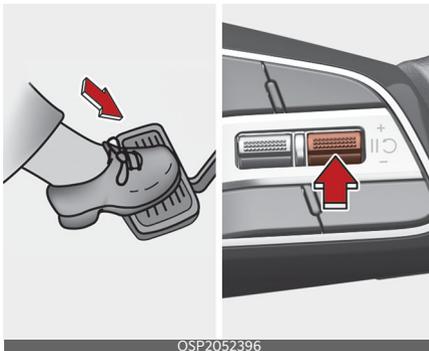
## Decreasing set speed



Push down the - switch, and release it immediately. The set speed will decrease by 1 km/h (1 mph) each time the switch is operated in this manner.

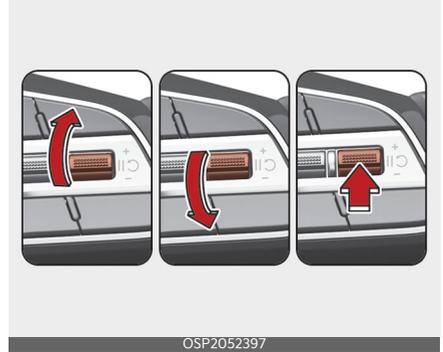
- Push down the - switch, and hold it whilst monitoring the set speed on the cluster. The set speed will decrease by 10 km/h or 5 mph each time the switch is operated in this manner. Release the switch at the speed you want to maintain. Speed can decrease the set speed to 30 km/h (20 mph).

## Temporarily canceling Smart Cruise Control



Press the || Ⓞ switch or depress the brake pedal to temporarily cancel Smart Cruise Control.

## Resuming Smart Cruise Control



To resume Smart Cruise Control after the function was cancelled, operate the +, - or || Ⓞ switch.

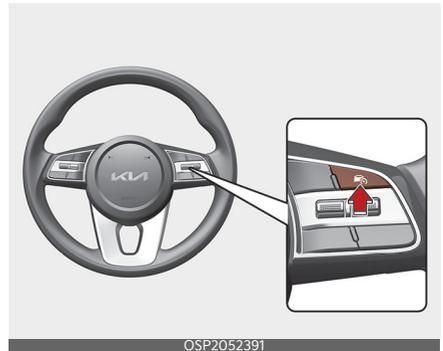
If you push the + switch up or - switch down, the set speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster.

If you press the || Ⓞ switch, vehicle speed will resume to the preset speed.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Check the driving condition before press the || Ⓞ switch. Driving speed may sharply increase or decrease when you press the || Ⓞ switch.

## Turning off Smart Cruise Control



Press the Driving Assist button to turn Smart Cruise Control off.

**\* NOTICE**

If your vehicle is equipped with Manual Speed Limit Assist, press and hold the Driving Assist button to turn off Smart Cruise Control. However Manual Speed Limit Assist will turn on.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not use the switches and buttons at the same time. Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly.

**Displaying operating status**

You can see the status of Smart Cruise Control operation in the Driving Assist view on the cluster. Refer to "Instrument cluster" on page 4-57.

Operating



Temporarily cancelled



Smart Cruise Control will be displayed as below depending on the status of the function.

- When operating
  1. Whether there is a vehicle ahead and the selected distance level
  2. Set speed
  3. Whether there is a vehicle ahead and the target vehicle distance
- When temporarily cancelled
  1. Vehicle (shaded)
  2. Previous set speed (shaded)

**\* NOTICE**

- The actual distance with the front vehicle is displayed.
- The target distance may vary according to the vehicle speed and the set distance level. If the vehicle speed is low, even though the vehicle distance have changed, the change of the target vehicle distance may be small.
- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.

## Accelerating temporarily



If you want to speed up temporarily when Smart Cruise Control is on, depress the accelerator pedal for a certain amount. Whilst depressing the accelerator pedal for a certain amount, the set speed, distance level and target distance will blink on the cluster. However, if the accelerator pedal is insufficiently depressed, the vehicle may slow down.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because the speed is not controlled automatically even if there is a vehicle in front of you.

## Temporarily canceling Smart Cruise Control



Smart Cruise Control will be temporarily cancelled automatically when:

- The vehicle speed is above 190 km/h (120 mph)
- The accelerator pedal is continuously depressed for a certain period of time
- The conditions for Smart Cruise Control to operate is not satisfied

If Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled, the warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver.

### **\* NOTICE**

If Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled whilst the vehicle is at a standstill with the function operating, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) may be applied.

### **⚠ WARNING**

When Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled, distance with the front vehicle will not be maintained. Always have your eyes on the road whilst driving, and if necessary, depress the brake

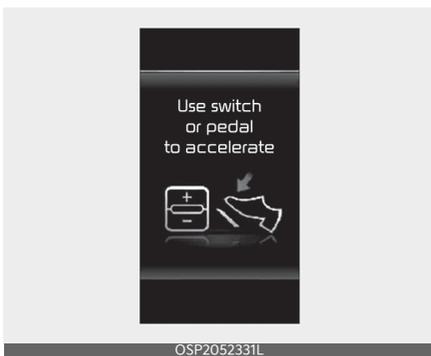
pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

### Smart Cruise Control conditions not satisfied



If the Driving Assist button, +, - or || ↻ switch is operated when Smart Cruise Control's operating conditions are not satisfied, the warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound.

### In traffic situation



In traffic, your vehicle will stop if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving, your vehicle will start as well. In addition, after

the vehicle has stopped and a certain time has passed, the warning message will appear on the cluster. Depress the accelerator pedal or operate the + switch, - switch or || ↻ switch to start driving.

### Warning road conditions ahead

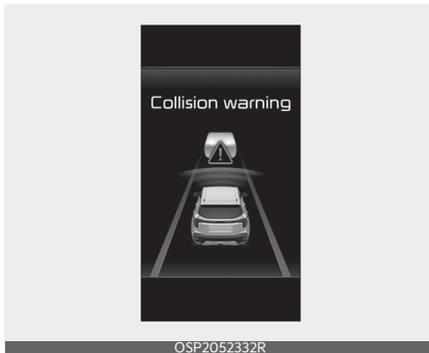


In the following situation, the warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver of road conditions ahead.

### **WARNING**

Always pay attention to vehicles or objects that may suddenly appear in front of you, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

## Collision warning



Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, when the collision risk with the vehicle ahead is high, the warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver. Always have your eyes on the road whilst driving, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- In the following situations, Smart Cruise Control may not warn the driver of a collision.
  - The distance from the front vehicle is near, or the vehicle speed of the other vehicle is faster or similar with your vehicle
  - The speed of the front vehicle is very slow or is at a standstill
  - The accelerator pedal is depressed right after Smart Cruise Control is turned on

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Smart Cruise Control does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
- Smart Cruise Control may not recognize unexpected and sudden situations or complex driving situations, so always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.
- Keep Smart Cruise Control off when the function is not in use to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.
- Do not open the door or leave the vehicle when Smart Cruise Control is operating, even if the vehicle is stopped.
- Always be aware of the selected speed and vehicle distance.
- Keep a safe distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed. If the vehicle distance is too close during high-speed driving, a serious collision may result.
- When maintaining distance with the vehicle ahead, if the front vehicle disappears, Smart Cruise Control may suddenly accelerate to the set speed. Always be aware of unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.
- Vehicle speed may decrease on an upward slope and increase on a downward slope.
- Always be aware of situations such as when a vehicle cuts in suddenly.
- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, we recommend that Smart Cruise Control is turned off due to safety reasons.
- Turn off Smart Cruise Control when your vehicle is being towed.

- Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly if interfered with by strong electromagnetic waves.
- Smart Cruise Control may not detect an obstacle in front and lead to a collision. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.
- Vehicles moving in front of you with a frequent lane change may cause a delay in Smart Cruise Control's reaction or may cause Smart Cruise Control to react to a vehicle actually in an adjacent lane. Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.
- Always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely, even though a warning message does not appear or an audible warning does not sound.
- If any other function's warning message is displayed or warning sound is generated, Smart Cruise Control warning message may not be displayed and warning sound may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
- The vehicle manufacturer is not responsible for any traffic violation or accidents caused by the driver.
- Always set the vehicle speed under the speed limit in your state.

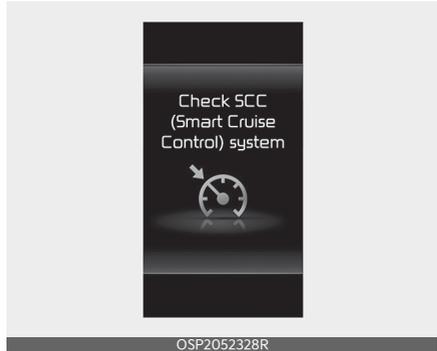
**\* NOTICE**

- Smart Cruise Control may not operate in few seconds after the vehicle is started or the front view camera or front radar is initialized.

- You may hear a sound when the brake is controlled by Smart Cruise Control.

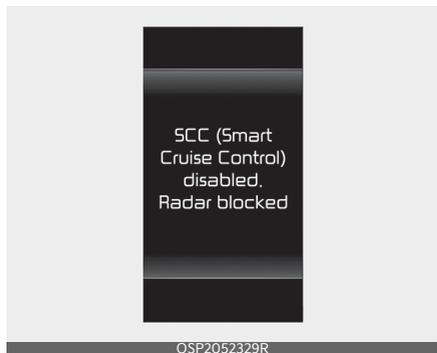
**Smart Cruise Control malfunction and limitations**

**Smart Cruise Control malfunction**



When Smart Cruise Control is not working properly, the warning message will appear for several seconds and the  warning light will appear on the cluster. In this case, have the function checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**Smart Cruise Control disabled**



When the front radar cover or sensor is covered with snow, rain, or foreign matters, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Smart Cruise Control.

If this occurs, the warning message will appear for a certain period of time on the cluster.

Smart Cruise Control will operate properly when such snow, rain or foreign matter is removed. Always keep it clean.

### WARNING

Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Smart Cruise Control may not properly operate.

### CAUTION

Smart Cruise Control may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain), where any objects are not detected after turning ON the engine.

## Limitations of Smart Cruise Control

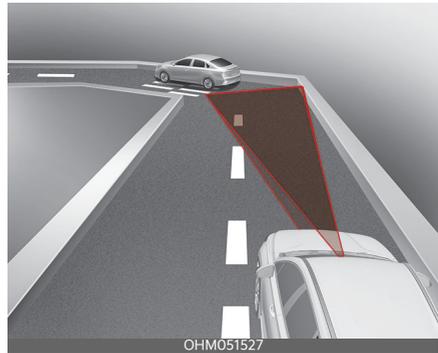
Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The detecting sensor or the surroundings are contaminated or damaged
- Washer fluid is continuously sprayed, or the wiper is on
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windscreen, damaged glass, or stuck of foreign matters (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass
- Moisture is not removed or frozen on the windscreen
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Street light or light from an oncoming vehicle is reflected on the wet road surface, such as a puddle in the road
- The temperature around the front view camera is high or low
- An object is placed on the dashboard
- The surrounding is very bright
- The surrounding is very dark, such as in a tunnel, etc.
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel
- The brightness outside is low, and the headlamps are not on or are not bright
- Driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog
- Driving through steam, smoke or shadow
- Only part of the vehicle is detected
- The vehicle in front has no tail lights, tail lights are located unusually, etc.
- The brightness outside is low, and the tail lamps are not on or are not bright
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or does not look normal (for example, tilted, overturned, etc.)
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is low or high
- Your vehicle is being towed
- A vehicle suddenly cuts in front
- Driving through a tunnel or railroad bridge
- An object reflecting off the front radar such as a guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The bumper around the front radar is impacted, damaged or the front radar is out of position
- The temperature around the front radar is high or low

- Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- The vehicle in front is made of material that does not reflect on the front radar
- Driving near a highway (or motorway) interchange or tollgate
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- Driving on a curved road
- The vehicle in front is detected late
- The vehicle in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle
- The vehicle in front suddenly changes lane or suddenly reduces speed
- The vehicle in front is bent out of shape
- The front vehicle's speed is fast or slow
- With a vehicle in front, your vehicle changes lane at low speed
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow
- You are driving unstably
- You are on a roundabout and the vehicle in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle
- Driving in a parking lot
- Driving through a construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- Driving on an incline road, curved road, etc.
- Driving through a roadside with trees or streetlights
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving

- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- There is interference by electromagnetic waves, such as driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise

• **Driving on a curved road**



On curves, Smart Cruise Control may not detect a vehicle in the same lane, and may accelerate to the set speed. Also, vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when the vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

Select the appropriate set speed on curves and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.



Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane.

Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate set speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of Smart Cruise Control.

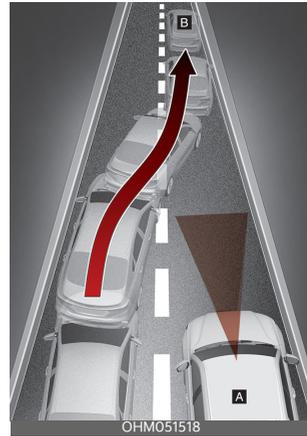
- **Driving on an inclined road**



During uphill or downhill driving, Smart Cruise Control may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, vehicle speed will rapidly decrease when the vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

Select the appropriate set speed on inclines and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.

- **Changing lanes**

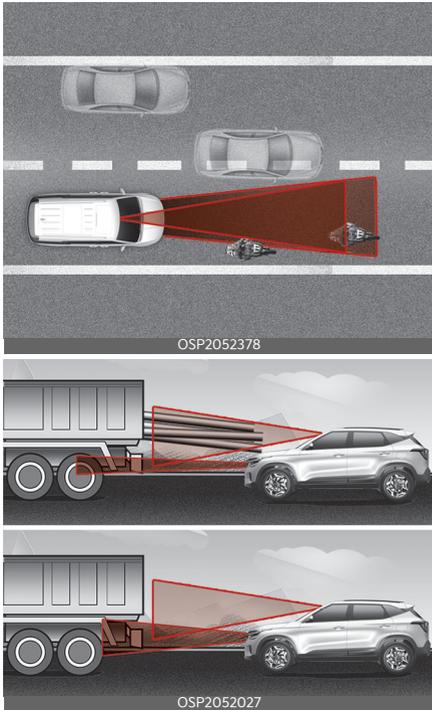


[A]: Your vehicle, [B]: Lane changing vehicle

When a vehicle moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range.

Smart Cruise Control may not immediately detect the vehicle when the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

• **Detecting vehicle**

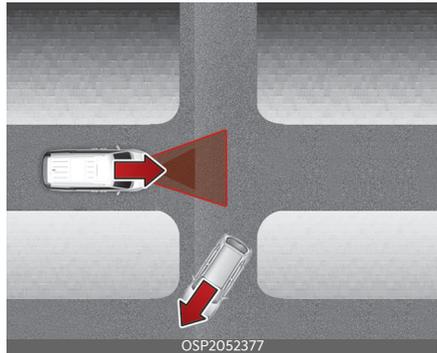


In the following cases, some vehicles in your lane cannot be detected by the sensor:

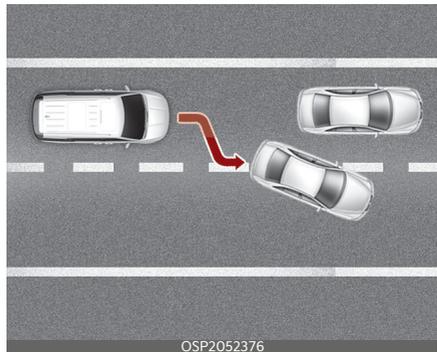
- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden-decelerating vehicles
- Oncoming vehicles
- Stopped vehicles
- Vehicles with small rear profile, such as trailers
- Narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Special vehicles
- Animals and pedestrians

In the following cases, the vehicle in front cannot be detected by the sensor:

- Vehicles with higher clearance or vehicles carrying loads that stick out of the back of the vehicle
- Vehicles that have the front lifted due to heavy loads
- You are steering your vehicle
- Driving on narrow or sharply curved roads



When a vehicle ahead disappears at an intersection, your vehicle may accelerate. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.



When a vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, Smart Cruise Control may not immediately detect the new vehicle that is now in front of you. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.



Always look out for pedestrian when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.

## Lane Following Assist (LFA) (if equipped)

Lane Following Assist is designed to detect lane markings or vehicles on the road, and assists the driver's steering to help centre the vehicle in the lane.

### Detecting sensor

[1]: Front view camera



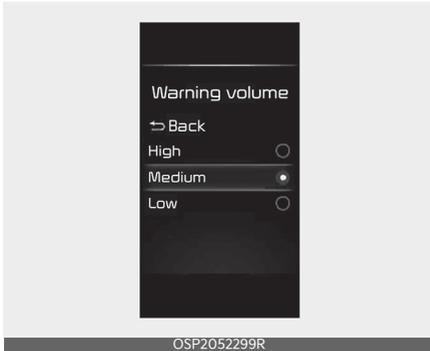
The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect lane markings and front vehicles. Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Sensor fusion) (if equipped)" on page 5-65.

## Lane Following Assist settings

### Warning methods (or Warning volume)



You can adjust the Warning methods (or Warning volume) with the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position.

- Warning volume : Select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Warning volume' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume)' on the Infotainment system.
- Driving safety priority : Select 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume) → Driving safety priority' on the Infotainment system. For safe driving, the audio volume will temporarily decrease to warn the driver with the audible warning.

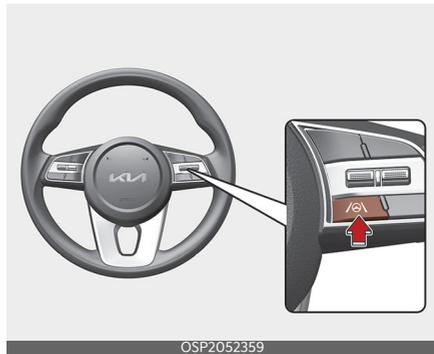
#### \* NOTICE

- Ensure that Warning methods (or Warning volume) you have set may apply to the warning volume of other Driver Assistance systems.
- Warning methods (or Warning volume) will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.

- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- Descriptions of each Driver Assistance system may be slightly different from the owner's manual after updating the software of your infotainment system. In this case, scan the QR code in the infotainment system manual to access the web manual for checking the changes.
- Depending on your region or infotainment system software version, the menu may be displayed as 'Warning sound', 'Warning methods' or 'Warning volume'.

## Lane Following Assist operation

### Turning Lane Following Assist ON/OFF



With the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position, press the Lane Driving Assist button located on the steering wheel to turn on Lane Following Assist. The white or green (Ⓜ) indicator light will illuminate on the cluster.

Press the Lane Driving Assist button again to turn off the function.

## Warning and control

### Lane Following Assist



If the vehicle ahead or both lane markings are detected and your vehicle speed is below 180 km/h (110 mph), the green (🚘) indicator light will illuminate on the cluster, and the function will help centre the vehicle in the lane by controlling the steering wheel.

#### **⚠ CAUTION**

When the steering wheel is not controlled, the green (🚘) indicator light will blink and change to white.

### Hands-off warning



If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the warning message will appear and an audible warning will sound in stages.

- First stage: Warning message
- Second stage: Warning message (red steering wheel) and audible warning



If the driver still does not have their hands on the steering wheel after the hands-off warning, the warning message will appear and Lane Following Assist will be automatically cancelled.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- The steering wheel may not be assisted if the steering wheel is held very tight or the steering wheel is steered over a certain degree.

- Lane Following Assist does not operate at all times. It is the responsibility of the driver to safely steer the vehicle and to maintain the vehicle in its lane.
- The hands-off warning message may appear late depending on road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.
- If the steering wheel is held very lightly the hands-off warning message may appear because the function may not recognize that the driver has their hands on the steering wheel.
- If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.

**\* NOTICE**

- For more details on setting the functions in the infotainment system, refer to "LCD display" on page 4-66.
- When both lane markings are detected, the lane lines on the cluster will change from gray to white.

Lane undetected



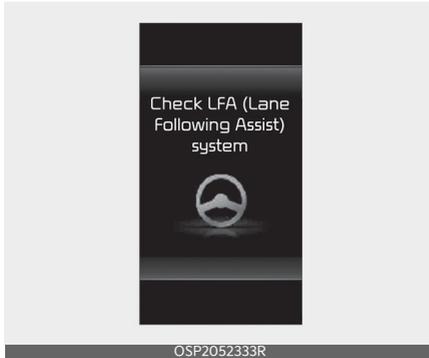
Lane detected



- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.
- If lane markings are not detected, steering wheel control by Lane Following Assist can be limited depending on whether a vehicle is in front or the driving conditions of the vehicle.
- Even though the steering is assisted by Lane Following Assist, the driver may control the steering wheel.
- The steering wheel may feel heavier or lighter when the steering wheel is assisted by Lane Following Assist than when it is not.

## Lane Following Assist malfunction and limitations

### Lane Following Assist malfunction



When Lane Following Assist is not working properly, the warning message will appear for several seconds and (⚠️) warning light will appear on the cluster. If this occurs, have the function checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Limitations of Lane Following Assist

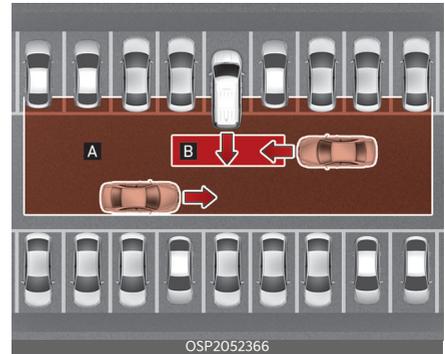
For more details on system limitations, refer to "Limitations of Lane Keeping Assist" on page 5-82.

#### ⚠️ WARNING

For more details on the function precautions, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) (if equipped)" on page 5-78.

## Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA) (if equipped)

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to detect vehicles approaching from the rear left and right side whilst your vehicle is reversing, and warning the driver that a collision is imminent with a warning message and an audible warning. Also, to help prevent collisions, braking assist may be applied.



[A]: Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning operating range

[B]: Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operating range

#### ⚠️ CAUTION

Warning Timing may vary depending on vehicle speed of the approaching vehicle.

### Detecting sensor

[1]: Rear corner radar



OSP2052496L

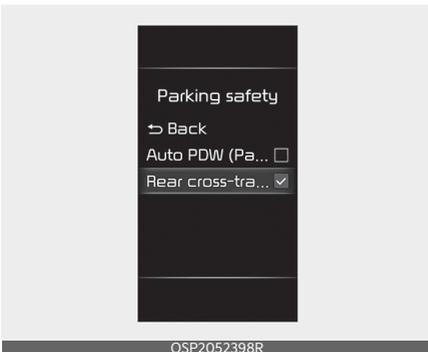
Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the rear corner radar, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) (if equipped)" on page 5-84.

### Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

#### Rear cross-traffic safety



OSP2052398R

With the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position, select 'User settings → Driver assistance

→ Parking safety' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Parking safety' on the Infotainment system screen to turn on Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist.

#### ⚠ WARNING

When the engine is restarted, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will always turn on. However, if Rear Cross-Traffic Safety is deselected after the vehicle is restarted, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

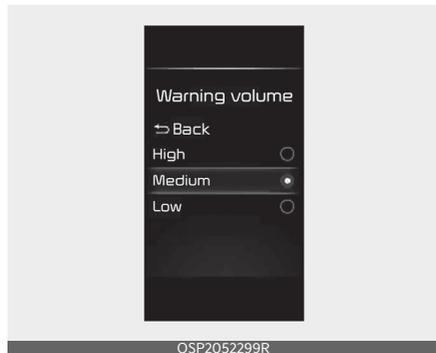
#### \* NOTICE

Settings for Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist include Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning and Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist.

#### \* NOTICE

If the engine is restarted, Warning Timing and Warning Volume will maintain the last setting.

### Warning methods (or Warning volume)



OSP2052299R

You can adjust the Warning methods (or Warning volume) with the ignition switch

or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position.

- Warning volume : Select 'User settings → Driver assistance → Warning volume' on the LCD display or 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume)' on the Infotainment system.
- Driving safety priority : Select 'Settings → Vehicle → Driver assistance → Warning methods (or Warning volume) → Driving safety priority' on the Infotainment system. For safe driving, the audio volume will temporarily decrease to warn the driver with the audible warning.

#### \* NOTICE

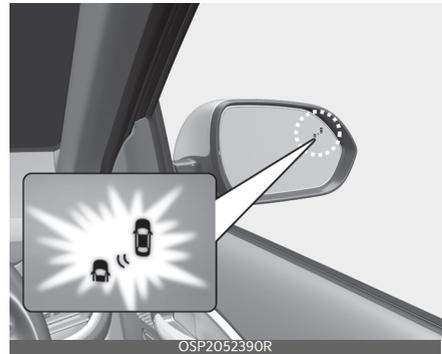
- Ensure that Warning methods (or Warning volume) you have set may apply to the warning volume of other Driver Assistance systems.
- Warning methods (or Warning volume) will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- Descriptions of each Driver Assistance system may be slightly different from the owner's manual after updating the software of your infotainment system. In this case, scan the QR code in the infotainment system manual to access the web manual for checking the changes.
- Depending on your region or infotainment system software version, the menu may be displayed as 'Warning sound', 'Warning methods' or 'Warning volume'.

## Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will provide a warning and control the vehicle depending on collision level.

- Collision Warning
- Emergency Braking
- Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

## Collision Warning



the cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.



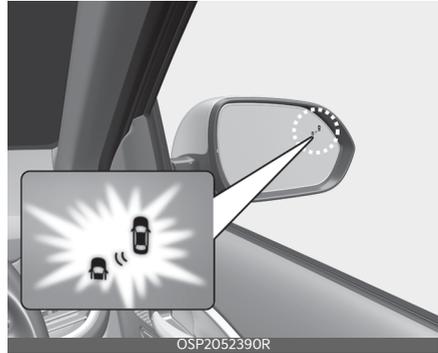
OSP2052494

- To warn the driver of an approaching vehicle from the rear left/right side of your vehicle, the warning light on the side view mirror will blink and a warning message will appear on the cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when the following conditions are satisfied:
  - Your vehicle gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
  - Your vehicle speed is below 8 km/h (5 mph)
  - The approaching vehicle is within approximately 25 m (82 ft.) from the left or right side of your vehicle
  - The speed of the vehicle approaching from the left or right side is above 5 km/h (3 mph)

**\* NOTICE**

- If the operating conditions are satisfied, there will be a warning whenever the vehicle approaches from the left or right side even though your vehicle speed is 0 km/h (0 mph).
- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on

**Emergency Braking**



OSP2052390R



OSP2052338R



OSP2052494

- Your vehicle, the warning light on the side view mirror will blink and a warning message will appear on the cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when the following conditions are satisfied:
  - Your vehicle gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
  - Your vehicle speed is below 8 km/h (5 mph)
  - The approaching vehicle is within approximately 1.5 m (5 ft.) from the left or right side of your vehicle
  - The speed of the vehicle approaching from the left or right side is above 5 km/h (3 mph)
- Emergency braking will be assisted to help prevent collision with approaching vehicles from the left and right.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Brake control will end when:
  - The approaching vehicle is out of the detecting range
  - The approaching vehicle passes behind your vehicle
  - The approaching vehicle does not drive toward your vehicle
  - The approaching vehicle speed slows down
  - The driver depresses the brake pedal with sufficient power

## Stopping vehicle and ending brake control



When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.

For your safety, the driver should depress the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.

- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.
- During emergency braking, braking control by Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will automatically cancel when the driver excessively depresses the brake pedal.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- For your safety, change the settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
- If any other function's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.

- You may not hear the warning sound of Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid collision.
- During Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.
- Even if there is a problem with Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking performance will operate normally.

**⚠ WARNING**

- During emergency braking, braking control by the function will automatically cancel when the driver excessively depresses the accelerator pedal.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate in all situations and cannot avoid all collisions.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions.
- The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle. Do not solely depend on Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
- Never deliberately test Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist on

people, animal, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.

**⚠ CAUTION**

The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control). There will only be a warning when:

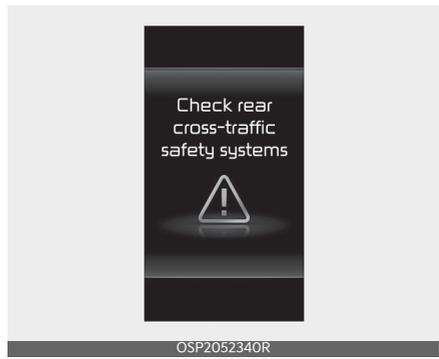
- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function

**\* NOTICE**

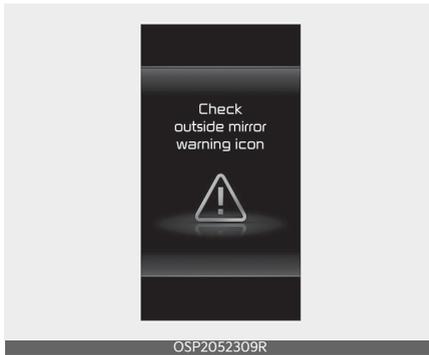
- If braking is assisted by Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist, the driver must immediately depress the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings.
- After shifting the gear to R (Reverse), braking control will operate once for left and right vehicle approach.

**Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations**

**Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction**

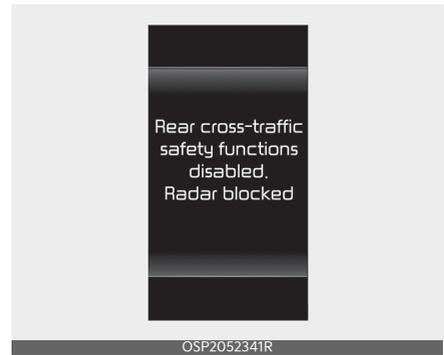


When Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the warning message will appear for several seconds and the  warning light will appear on the cluster. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.



When the warning light on the side view mirror (outside mirror) is not working properly, the warning message will appear for several seconds and the  warning light will appear on the cluster. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled



When the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered with foreign matters, such as snow or rain, or installing a trailer or carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs, the warning message will appear on the cluster. It is not a malfunction.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate properly when such foreign matters or trailer, etc. is removed.

Always keep the rear view camera and rear ultrasonic sensors clean.

If Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate normally after it is removed, take your vehicle to a professional workshop and have the system checked. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### WARNING

- Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate.

- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain), where any objects are not detected after turning ON the engine.

**CAUTION**

Turn off Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist to install a trailer, carrier, etc., and remove the trailer, carrier, etc. to use Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist.

**Limitations of Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist**

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Departing from where trees or grass is overgrown
- Departing from where roads are wet
- Speed of the approaching vehicle is fast or slow

Braking control may not work in the following circumstances:

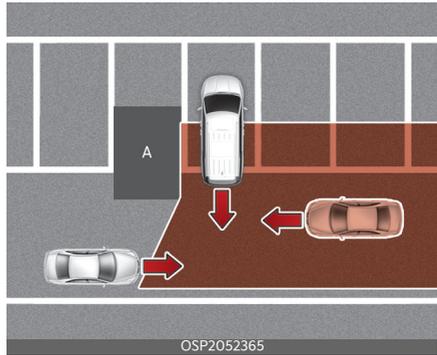
- The vehicle severely vibrates whilst driving over a bumpy road, uneven road or concrete patch
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tyre pressure is low or a tyre is damaged
- The brake is reworked

**NOTICE**

For more details on the limitations of the rear corner radar, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) (if equipped)" on page 5-84.

**WARNING**

- **Driving near a vehicle or structure**

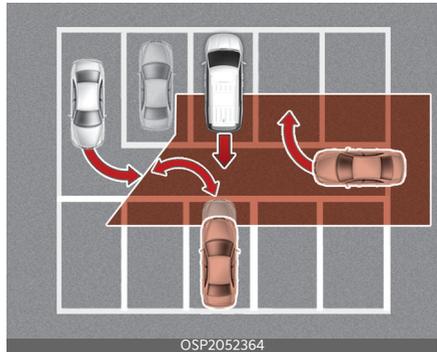


[A]: Structure

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when driving near a vehicle or structure, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

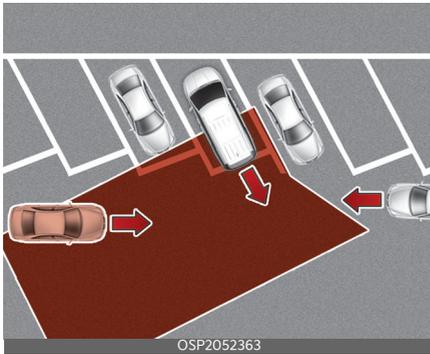
- **When the vehicle is in a complex parking environment**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles which are parking or pulling out near your vehicle

(for example, a vehicle leaving beside your vehicle, a vehicle parking or pulling out in the rear area, a vehicle approaching your vehicle making a turn, etc.). If this occurs, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake. Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

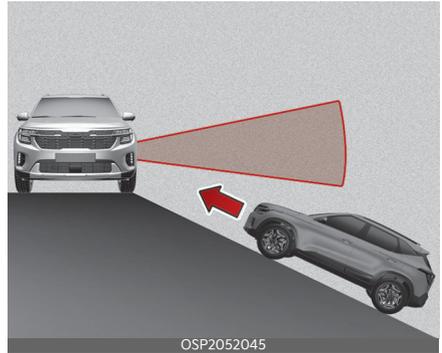
- **When the vehicle is parked diagonally**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when backing up diagonally, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

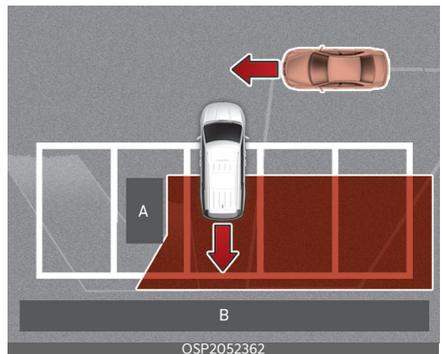
- **When the vehicle is on or near a slope**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when the vehicle is on an uphill or downhill slope, or near it, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

- **Pulling into the parking space where there is a structure**

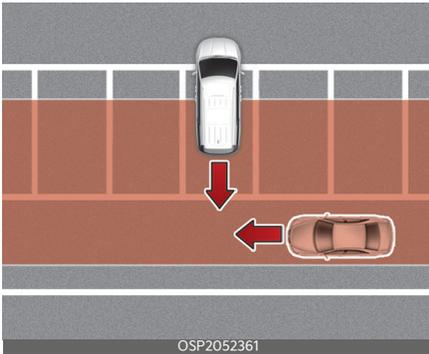


[A]: Structure, [B]: Wall

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles passing by in front of you when parking backwards

into a parking space with a wall or structure in the rear or side area. If this occurs, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake. Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

- **When the vehicle is parked rearward**



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles passing by behind you when parking backwards into a parking space. If this occurs, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, we recommend that Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is turned off due to safety reasons.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate normally if interfered with by strong electromagnetic waves.

- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 3 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the rear corner radars are initialized.

## Declaration of conformity (if equipped)

### The radio frequency components (Front radar) complies:

For Korea



1. 상호 : 주식회사 에이치엘클레무브
2. 기기명칭 및 모델명
  - 기기명칭 : 특정소출력 무선기기(차량 충돌방지용 레이다 무선기기)
  - 모델명 : MRR-20
  - 인증번호 : R-CMM-MF3-MRR-20
  - 인증연월일 : 2018-03-23
3. 제조자 및 제조국가
  - 제조자 : 주식회사 에이치엘클레무브
  - 제조국가 : 한국

OSP2062031

For United States and American territories, Micronesia, Dominican Republic, Honduras



FCC ID  
: 2A30Z-MRR20  
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:  
(1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and  
(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**CAUTION TO USERS**  
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

OSP2052513L

For Canada

Model: MRR-20  
IC: 27992-MRR20

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:  
(1) this device may not cause interference, and  
(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.  
Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:  
(1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage,  
et  
(2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

OSP2052514L

For Europe and countries subject to CE certification



Model : MRR-20

Hereby MRR-20 has been so constructed that it can be operated in at least one Member State without infringing applicable requirements of use of radio spectrum. (RED article 10.2)

Hereby, HL Klemove Corp declares that the radio equipment type MRR-20 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following as next page. (Case 1 : Include DoC in manual)

Case 2 : <https://hlklemove.com/solutions.html>

OSP2052515L

For United Kingdom



<https://hiklemove.com/solutions.html>

OSP2052516L

For Oman

OMAN-TRA
TRA/TA-R/13399/22
D202960

OSP2052517L

For Malaysia



OSP2052518L

For United Arab Emirates

<p>هيئة تنظيم الاتصالات والجمهوريّة الإلكترونيّة Telecommunications Regulatory Authority</p>	<p>TDRA - UNITED ARAB Emirates</p> <p>Model Dealer ID Name: 5M GLOBAL LLC</p> <p>TARTE: ER05598/22</p> <p>Model Name: MBR-20</p> <p>Product Type: Vehicle Radar</p>	
--	---	--

OSP2052520L

For Jordan

TRC/31/9732/2022

OSP2052519L

For Uzbekistan



ODL3059239L

For Israel

תורשקתה דרשם סעטמ המאתה רושיא רפסמ : 55-11767  
 רושקמה לש תויטוחלאה ויתוכבת תא תונשל ידכ והב שיש רישבמב תולועפ עצבל רושיא לח  
 הד ללכבו  
 אלק, תונציח הנטאל רביחיל תורשפא תפסוא או תירוקמ הנטא תפלחה, הנכות ייויש  
 רושיא תלבק  
 תויטוחלא תוערפלה ששחה לעב, תורשקתה דרשם

OSP2052521L

For Thailand



OSP2052522L

For Taiwan



電信法第 48 條、低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Article 12

Without permission, any company, firm or user shall not alter the frequency, increase the power, or change the characteristics and functions of the original design of the certified lower power frequency electric machinery.

Article 14

The application of low power frequency electric machineries shall not affect the navigation safety nor interface a legal communication, if an interference is found, the service will be suspended until improvement is made and the interference no longer exist.

OSP2052523L

For Paraguay



NR : 2021-03-I-0134

OSP2052524L

For Philippines



NTC

Type Approved  
No. ESD-RC E-2229458

OSP2052525L

For Singapore

Complies with  
IMDA Standards  
N1588-22

OSP2052526L

For Mexico

IFT : RCPHLMR22-2324

OSP2052527L

For Brazil



03849-18-09644

OSP2052528L

For Indonesia



83759/SDPPI/2022

13085



Hindari melakukan pemutaran speedtest pada alat komunikasi bergerak yang tidak terakreditasi untuk hal-hal yang berkaitan dengan keselamatan.

OSP2052531L

For China

CMIT : 2022LJ14436

前碰撞防止輔助系統不是所有工況下都啟動的，安裝情況有可能無法避開碰撞。車輛的操作責任在駕駛員。隨之，不得依賴前碰撞防止輔助系統而駕駛，應時刻確保安全距離并注視前方，應遵守駕駛員義務駕駛。

OSP2052529L

For Republic of South Africa



**The radio frequency components (Rear corner radar) complies :**

For United States and American territories, Micronesia, Dominican Republic, Honduras



This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**CAUTION TO USERS**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.



For Canada

Model: RS4  
IC: 2694A – RS4

This device contains licence-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause interference.
- (2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.;

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

- (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et
- (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

This equipment complies with ISED radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator and your body. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements ISED établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 20 cm de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps. Ce transmetteur ne doit pas être placé au même endroit ou utilisé simultanément avec un autre transmetteur ou antenne.



For Taiwan

電信法第 48 條，低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法  
 第十二條  
 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。  
 第十四條  
 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Article 12  
 Without permission, any company, firm or user shall not alter the frequency, increase the power, or change the characteristics and functions of the original design of the certified lower power frequency electric machinery.  
 Article 14  
 The application of low power frequency electric machineries shall not affect the navigation safety nor interface a legal communication, if an interference is found, the service will be suspended until improvement is made and the interference no longer exist.

OYB060043L

For Indonesia



Hilang melubang permukaan spesifikasi yang dapat memunculkan gangguan. Bila ditemukan elektronis yang terdapat gangguan segera hubungi.

**73554/SDPPI/2021**

**13085**

OYB052288L

For Malaysia



OYB060045L

For Singapore

Complies with  
 IMDA Standards  
 DA 103238

OYB060046L

For Vietnam

Suntech VietNam Technology  
 Company Limited  
 C0173191017AF0402



**ICT**

OYB060047L

For Brazil



OYB060048L

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial enão pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados

OYB060049L

For Mexico

Radar de corto alcance  
RS4  
Hella KGaA Hueck & Co  
IFETEL: RLVHERS17-0286

“La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:  
(1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.”

OYB060050L

For Japan

This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law under the grant ID n° : 204-750001  
This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid)

本製品は、電波法に基づく特定無線設備の技術基準適合証明などを受けております。認証番号: 204-750001  
本製品の改造は禁止されています。(適合証明番号などが無効となります。)

OYB060051L

For Ukraine



OYB060052L

Цим HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA заявляє, що радіотехнічне обладнання типу RS4 в ідповідає Технічному регламенту радіотехнічного обладнання та Директи ві 2014/53/ЄС.  
Повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний за адресою: [www.hella.com/hyundai](http://www.hella.com/hyundai)  
Частотний діапазон: 24,05 – 24,25 ГГц  
Потужність передачі: 20 дБм (макс.) EIRP

OYB060053L

For Jordan

TRC No. TRC/LPD/2017/63

OYB060054L

For Oman

**OMAN - TRA**  
**TRA/TA-R/3957/17**  
**D080134**

OYB060055L

For United Arab Emirates

**TRA**  
**Registered No:**  
**ER53878/17**  
**Dealer No:**  
**DA44932/15**

OYB060056L

For Botswana

**BTA**  
**REGISTERED No :**  
  
**BOCRA/TA/2018/3372**

OYB060057L

For Ghana

NCA Approved: 1R3-1M-7E1-0B7

OYB060058L

For Zambia



OYB060059L

For Jamaica

This product contains a Type Approved Module by Jamaica: SMA – "RS4"

OYB060060L

For Paraguay



OYB060061L

5



For United Kingdom



Hereby, Hella GmbH & Co. KGaA declares that the radio equipment type R54 is in compliance with Radio Equipment Regulations of the United Kingdom. The full text of the United Kingdom declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: [www.hella.com/tyusida](http://www.hella.com/tyusida)

Technical information:  
Frequency band: 24.05 ... 24.25 GHz  
Transmission power: 20 dBm (max.) EIRP

Manufacturer name and Address:  
Hella GmbH & Co. KGaA  
Riebecke Straße 75, 59552 Lippstadt, Germany

Importer name and Address:

OYB052292L

## Economical operation

Your vehicle's fuel economy depends mainly on your style of driving, where you drive and when you drive.

Each of these factors affects how many kilometers you can get from a litre of fuel. To operate your vehicle as economically as possible, use the following driving suggestions to help save money in both fuel and repairs:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Don't make "jackrabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Don't race between stoplights. Try to adjust your speed to the traffic so you don't have to change speeds unnecessarily. Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible.

Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.

- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive, the more fuel your vehicle uses. Driving at a moderate speed, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.
- Take care of your tyres. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tyre wear. Check the tyre pressures at least once a month.
- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting kerbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tyre wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.

- Keep your car in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain your car in accordance with the maintenance schedule in "Scheduled maintenance service" on page 7-10. If you drive your car in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required (Refer to "Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions" on page 7-25 for details).
- Travel lightly. Don't carry unnecessary weight in your car. Weight reduces fuel economy.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.
- Remember, your vehicle does not require extended warm-up. After the engine has started, allow the engine to run for 10 to 20 seconds prior to placing the vehicle in gear. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warm-up period.
- Don't "lug" or "over-rev" the engine. Lugging is driving too slowly in too high a gear resulting in the engine bucking. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speeds.
- Open windows at high speeds can reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy is less in crosswinds and headwinds. To help offset some of this loss, slow down when driving in these conditions.

Keeping a vehicle in good operating condition is important both for economy

and safety. Therefore, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### **WARNING**

#### **Engine off during motion**

Never turn the engine off to coast down hills or anytime the vehicle is in motion. The power steering and power brakes will not function properly without the engine running. Instead, keep the engine on and downshift to an appropriate gear for engine braking effect. In addition, turning off the ignition whilst driving could engage the steering wheel lock resulting in loss of vehicle steering which could cause serious injury or death.

---

## Special driving conditions

If driving conditions deteriorate due to poor weather or road conditions, you should pay even more attention than usual to your driving.

## Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar hazards, follow these suggestions:

- Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking or steering.
- When braking with non-ABS brakes pump the brake pedal with a light up-and-down motion until the vehicle is stopped.
- Do not pump the brake pedal on a vehicle equipped with ABS.
- If stalled in snow, mud, or sand, use the second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.
- Use sand, rock salt, or other nonslip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stalled in ice, snow, or mud.

## Reducing the risk of a rollover

This multi-purpose passenger vehicle is defined as a Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV). SUV's have higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of road applications. Specific design characteristics give them a higher centre of gravity than ordinary vehicles. An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road, which allows you to anticipate problems. They are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional passenger vehi-

cles. Due to this risk, driver and passengers are strongly recommended to buckle their seat belts. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. There are steps that a driver can make to reduce the risk of a rollover. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres, do not load your roof rack with heavy cargo, and never modify your vehicle in any way.

### **WARNING**

#### Rollover

As with other Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV), failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

- Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, narrower track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher centre of gravity than ordinary vehicles.
- A SUV is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional vehicles.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres.
- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Make sure everyone in the vehicle is properly buckled up.

### **WARNING**

Your vehicle is equipped with tyres designed to provide safe ride and handling capability. Do not use a size and type of tyre and wheel that is different from the one that is originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety

and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to steering failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tyres, be sure to equip all four tyres with the tyre and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity. If you nevertheless decide to equip your vehicle with any tyre/wheel combination not recommended by Kia for off road driving, you should not use these tyres for highway driving.

### Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and any forward gear.

Do not race the engine, and spin the wheels as little as possible. If you are still stuck after a few tries, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating and possible damage to the transmission.

#### CAUTION

Prolonged rocking may cause engine over-heating, transmission damage or failure, and tyre damage.

#### WARNING

### Spinning tyres

Do not spin the wheels, especially at speeds more than 56 km/h (35 mph). Spinning the wheels at high speeds when the vehicle is stationary could cause a tyre to overheat which could result in tyre damage that may injure bystanders.

#### NOTICE

The ESC system should be turned OFF prior to rocking the vehicle.

#### WARNING

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

### Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tyre wear will be held to a minimum.

### Driving at night

Because night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight, here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed. (On vehicles not equipped with the automatic headlight aiming feature.) Dirty or improperly aimed

headlights will make it much more difficult to see at night.

- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

### Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous, especially if you're not prepared for the slick pavement.

Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain:

- A heavy rainfall will make it harder to see and will increase the distance needed to stop your vehicle, so slow down.
- Keep your windscreen wiping equipment in good shape. Replace your windscreen wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windscreen.
- If your tyres are not in good condition, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. Be sure your tyres are in good shape.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe you may have gotten your brakes wet, apply them lightly whilst driving until normal braking operation returns.

### Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be affected.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

### Driving on unpaved roads

Drive carefully on unpaved roads because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks or roots of trees. Become familiar with the on unpaved roads conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

## Winter driving

Severe weather conditions in the winter result in greater wear and other problems.

To minimise the problems of winter driving, you should follow these suggestions:

### Summer tyres

Kia specifies summer tyres on some models to provide superior performance on dry roads. Summer tyre performance is substantially reduced in snow and ice. Summer tyres do not have the tyre traction rating M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tyre side wall. If you plan to operate your vehicle in snowy or icy conditions, Kia recommends the use of snow tyres or all season tyres on all four wheels.

### Snowy or icy conditions

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tyres or to install tyre chains on your tyres.

If snow tyres are needed, it is necessary to select tyres equivalent in size and type of the original equipment tyres. Failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle. Furthermore, speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices.

During deceleration, use vehicle braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur. You need to keep sufficient distance between the vehicle in operation in front of your vehicle. Also, apply the brake gently. It should be noted that installing tyre chains on the

tyre will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.

### Snow tyres

If you mount snow tyres on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tyres of the same size and load range as the original tyres. Mount snow tyres on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind that the traction provided by snow tyres on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tyres. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tyre dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### Snow tyre size

Snow tyres should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tyres. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

Do not install studded tyres without first checking local, state and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.

### Tyre chains



OSP2052263

Since the sidewalls of radial tyres are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tyres is recommended instead of snow chains. Do not mount tyre chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use wire-type chains with a thickness of less than 12 mm (0.47 inches). Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

Install tyre chains only on the front tyres. Do not exceed 30 km/h (20 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.

### CAUTION

- Make sure the snow chains are the correct size and type for your tyres. Incorrect snow chains can cause damage to the vehicle body and suspension and may not be covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty. Also, the snow chain connecting hooks may be damaged from contacting vehicle components causing the snow chains to come loose from the tyre. Make sure the snow chains are SAE class "S" certified.
- Always check chain installation for proper mounting after driving approximately 0.5 to 1 km to ensure safe mounting. Retighten or remount the chains if they are loose.
- Even with the appropriate chain installed, do not make a full turn (turn the steering wheel fully to one side) when driving the vehicle. (If you are making a full turn, drive with the speed below 10 km/h.)

## Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant refer to "Normal maintenance schedule" on page 7-20. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

## Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary

In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" on page 8-7 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Check spark plugs and ignition system

Inspect your spark plugs as described in "Scheduled maintenance service" on page 7-10 and replace them if necessary. Also check all ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.

## To keep locks from freezing

To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is

frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

### **Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system**

To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved window washer anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from an authorised Kia dealer and most auto parts outlets. Do not use vehicle coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the paint finish.

### **Don't let your parking brake freeze**

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the gear shift dial in P (Park) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

### **Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath**

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. In severe winter conditions you should periodically check underneath the vehicle to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components are not obstructed.

### **Carry emergency equipment**

Depending on the severity of the weather, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

### **Drive your vehicle when water vapour condenses and accumulates inside the exhaust pipes**

When the vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter whilst the engine is running, water vapour may condense and accumulate inside the exhaust pipes. Water in the exhaust pipes may cause noise, etc., but it is drained driving at medium to high speed.

## Trailer Towing (if equipped)

If you are considering towing with your car, you should first check with your country's Department of Motor Vehicles to determine their legal requirements.

Since laws vary the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. Kia recommends to ask an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### WARNING

#### Towing a trailer

If you don't use the correct equipment and drive improperly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well - or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.

### WARNING

#### Weight limits

Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, gross combination weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.

### NOTICE

#### For Europe

- The technically permissible maximum load on the rear axle(s) may be exceeded by not more than 15 % and the technically permissible maximum laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by not more than 10 % or 100 kg (220.4 lbs), whichever value is lower. In this case, do not exceed 100 km/h (62.1 mph) for vehicle of cate-

gory M1 or 80 km/h (49.7 mph) for vehicle of category N1.

- When towing a trailer, the additional load imposed at the trailer coupling device may cause the rear tyre maximum load ratings to be exceeded, but not by more than 15%. In such a case, do not exceed 100km/h, and the rear tyre pressure should be at least 20 kPa(0.2 bar) above the tyre pressure(s) as recommended for normal use (i.e. without a trailer attached).

### CAUTION

Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by your warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this section.

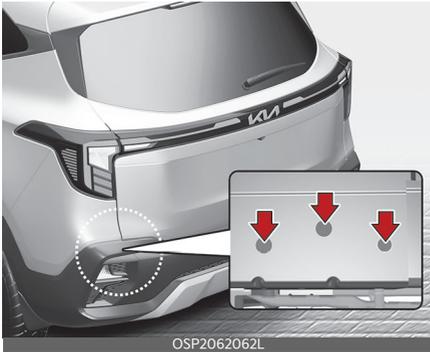
Your vehicle can tow a trailer. To identify what the vehicle trailering capacity is for your vehicle, you should read the information in "Weight of the trailer" that appears later in this section.

Remember that trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering requires correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

This section contains many timetested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transmission, wheel assemblies, and tyres are forced to work harder against the load of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater

loads. This additional burden generates extra heat. The trailer also considerably adds wind resistance, increasing pulling requirements.



## \* NOTICE

### Location of trailer mounting

The mounting hole for hitches are located on both sides of the underbody behind the rear tyres.

### Hitches

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- Do you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch. If you don't seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.
- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.

- Any part of the rear number plate or lighting devices of the vehicle must not be obscured by the mechanical coupling device. If the rear number plate and/or lighting devices can be obscured partially by any part of the mechanical coupling device, mechanical coupling devices that can not be easily removed or repositioned without use of any tools, except an easily operated (i.e. an effort not exceeding 20Nm) release key which is supplied by the manufacturer of the coupling device, are not permitted for use. Please note that the mechanical coupling device that is fitted and not in use must always be removed or repositioned if the rear number plate and/or rear lighting devices are obscured by any part of the mechanical coupling device.
- Kia trailer hitch accessory is available at an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Safety chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch.

Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains drag on the ground.

### Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to your

country's regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly. If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes loaded, then it needs its own brakes and they must be adequate. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

- Don't tap into your vehicle's brake system.

### **WARNING**

#### **Trailer brakes**

Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.

#### **Driving with a trailer**

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you must get to know your trailer. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly so responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer hitch and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tyres and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working.

This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and trailer brakes are still working.

#### **Following distance**

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

#### **Passing**

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because of the increased vehicle length, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

#### **Backing up**

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

#### **Making turns**

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, kerbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden manoeuvres. Signal well in advance.

#### **Turn signals when towing a trailer**

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will

also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop. When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working. You must also check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use only an approved trailer wiring harness.

Have yourself assisted by a professional workshop in installing the wiring harness. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### WARNING

Failure to use an approved trailer wiring harness could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury.

## Detection of trailer light connection

This functionality is only given with genuine accessories (tow bar and wiring harness) that recognize when a trailer is connected and consequently inform the vehicle systems.

Trailer recognition works as follows: when a trailer socket is plugged in, either the brake pedal shall be pushed or turn signal lamps activated; the electronic control unit will then detect the trailer because of the power consumption by the trailer lighting and inform the vehicle systems. When the trailer is disconnected, the brake pedal shall be pushed

again or turn signal lamps activated for the control unit to be able to detect that there is no power consumption anymore by trailer lighting; the assistance systems that were turned off will automatically turn on again.

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that all electrical connections are working and all trailer lights are operating before and during towing. You must perform manual checks.

### CAUTION

Use only genuine electrical connections. Do not attempt to arbitrarily splice or directly connect the trailer wiring using any other methods. Doing so may damage the vehicle's electrical system, resulting in malfunctions.

## Driving on grades

Reduce the speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer operate efficiently.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 70 km/h (45 mph) to reduce the possibility of engine and transmission overheating.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes and you have an Automatic Transmission, you should drive in D (Drive) when towing a trailer.

Operating your vehicle in D (Drive) when towing a trailer will minimise heat build up and extend the life of your transmission.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 6%) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to ensure the engine does not overheat. If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves across the dial towards "H (HOT) (or 130/C / 260/F)", pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.
- You must decide the driving speed depending on trailer weight and uphill grade to reduce the possibility of engine and transmission overheating.

**Parking on hills**

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, you should not park your vehicle on a hill. People can be seriously or fatally injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged if unexpectedly roll down hill.

**⚠ WARNING****Parking on a hill**

Parking your vehicle on a hill with a trailer attached could cause serious injury or death, should the trailer break loose.

However, if you ever have to park your trailer on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Pull the vehicle into the parking space. Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the kerb (left if headed down hill, left if headed up hill).
2. If the vehicle has a Manual Transmission, place the car in N (Neutral). If the vehicle has an Automatic Transmission, place the car in P (Park).

3. Set the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
4. Place chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
5. Start the vehicle, hold the brakes, shift to neutral, release the parking brake and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
6. Reapply the brakes, reapply the parking brake and shift the vehicle to R (Reverse) for Manual Transmission or P (Park) for Automatic Transmission.
7. Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but leave the parking brake set.

**⚠ WARNING****Parking brake**

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the parking brake is not firmly set.

If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be seriously or fatally injured.

**When you are ready to leave after parking on a hill**

1. With the Manual Transmission in N (Neutral) or Automatic Transmission in P (Park), apply your brakes and hold the brake pedal down whilst you:
  - Start your engine;
  - Shift into gear; and
  - Release the parking brake.
2. Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

## Maintenance when trailer towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include engine oil, Automatic Transmission fluid, axle lubricant and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check.

Each item is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Don't forget to also maintain your trailer and hitch. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanied your trailer and check it periodically.

Preferably, conduct the check at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all hitch nuts and bolts should be tight.

### CAUTION

- Due to higher load during trailer usage, overheating might occur in hot days or during uphill driving. If the coolant gauge indicates overheating, switch off the A/C and stop the vehicle in a safe area to cool down the engine.
- Do not switch off the engine whilst the coolant gauge indicates overheating. (Keep the engine idle to cool down the engine)
- When towing, check the transmission fluid more frequently.
- If your vehicle is not equipped with an air conditioner, you should install a condenser fan to improve engine performance when towing a trailer.

## If you do decide to pull a trailer

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a hitch dealer about sway control.
- Do not do any towing with your car during its first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) in order to allow the engine to properly break in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transmission damage.
- When towing a trailer, Kia recommends that you consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h (60 mph)).
- On a long uphill grade, do not exceed 70 km/h (45 mph) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower.
- The chart contains important considerations that have to do with weight:

### For Europe

Item		Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi		(Petrol) 2.0 MPI	
		8A/T		IVT	
		AWD		FWD	
Maximum trailer weight / kg (lbs.)	Without brake System	600 (1,323)			
	With brake System	1,250 (2,756)		1,100 (2,425)	
Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device / kg (lbs.)		80 (176)			
Recommended distance from rear wheel centre to coupling point / mm (inch)		965 (38)			

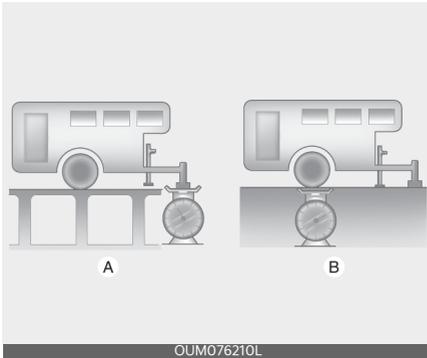
### For Russia

Item		(Petrol) 1.6 MPI				(Petrol) 2.0 MPI	
		6A/T		6M/T		IVT	
		FWD	AWD	FWD	AWD	FWD	AWD
Maximum trailer weight / kg (lbs.)	Without brake System	600 (1,323)				600 (1,323)	
	With brake System	1,100 (2,425)		1,300 (2,866)		1,100 (2,425)	
Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device / kg (lbs.)		80 (176)				80 (176)	
Recommended distance from rear wheel centre to coupling point / mm (inch)		965 (38)					

### For Australia and New Zealand

Item		Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi	(Petrol) 2.0 MPI
		8A/T	IVT
		AWD	FWD
Maximum trailer weight / kg (lbs.)	Without brake System	600 (1,323)	
	With brake System	1,250 (2,756)	1,100 (2,425)
Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device / kg (lbs.)		130 (287)	
Recommended distance from rear wheel centre to coupling point / mm (inch)		965 (38)	

## Weight of the trailer

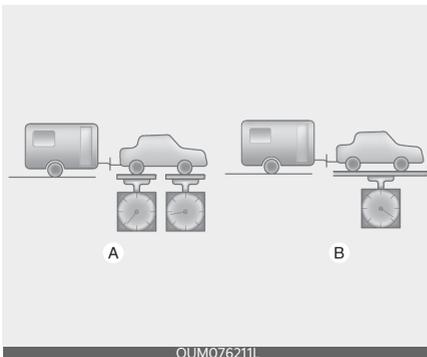


A : Tongue Load

B : Total Trailer Weight

What is the maximum safe weight of a trailer? It should never weigh more than the maximum trailer weight with trailer brakes. But even that can be too heavy. It depends on how you plan to use your trailer. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how often your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. The ideal trailer weight can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.

## Weight of the trailer tongue



A : Gross Axle Weight

B : Gross Vehicle Weight

The tongue load of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross vehicle weight (GVW) of your vehicle. This weight includes the kerb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. And if you tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will also be carrying that weight.

The trailer tongue should weigh a maximum of 10% of the total loaded trailer weight, within the limits of the maximum trailer tongue load permissible.

After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper.

If they aren't, you may be able to correct them simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### **Trailer**

- Never load a trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front. The front should be loaded with approximately 60% of the total trailer load; the rear should be loaded with approximately 40% of the total trailer load.
- Never exceed the maximum weight limits of the trailer or trailer towing equipment. Improper loading can result in damage to your vehicle and/or personal injury. Check weights and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office equipped with scales.
- An improperly loaded trailer can cause loss of vehicle control.

## Vehicle weight

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer.

Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of the vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's specifications and the compliance label:

**Base kerb weight** This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Vehicle kerb weight** This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

**Cargo weight** This figure includes all weight added to the Base Kerb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)** This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle kerb weight and all payload.

**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)** This is the Base Kerb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

**GAWR (Gross axle weight rating)** This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the certification label. (if equipped)

The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all

options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the certification label located on the driver's door sill. (if equipped)

### ⚠ CAUTION

Do not use replacement tyres with lower load carrying capacities than the original tyres because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tyres with a higher limit than the original tyres do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

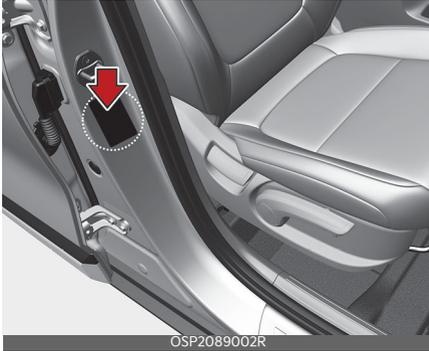
## Loading Your Vehicle - For Australia

Certification Label (Type A) - if equipped

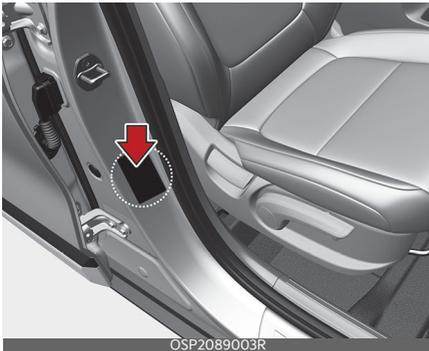


OSP2089002

### Certification Label (Type B) - if equipped



### Tyre Label



The Certification/Tyre label is found on the front edge of the RH (or LH) "B" pillar. The label shows the size of your original tyres and inflation pressures needed to obtain the gross weight capacity of your vehicle.

This is called the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel and cargo. The Certification/Tyre label also tells you the maximum weights for the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for either the front or rear axle.

And, if you do have a heavy load, you should spread it out.

Your warranty does not cover parts or components that fail because of overloading.

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR or the maximum front and rear GAWRs. If you do, change to the vehicle may occur, or it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.



<b>Road warning</b> .....	<b>6-3</b>
• Hazard warning flasher.....	6-3
<b>In case of an emergency whilst driving</b> .....	<b>6-3</b>
• If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing.....	6-3
• If you have a flat tyre whilst driving.....	6-3
• If the engine stalls whilst driving.....	6-4
<b>If the engine will not start</b> .....	<b>6-4</b>
• If the engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly.....	6-4
• If engine turns over normally but does not start.....	6-4
<b>Emergency starting</b> .....	<b>6-5</b>
• Jump starting.....	6-5
• Push-starting.....	6-6
<b>If the engine overheats</b> .....	<b>6-7</b>
<b>Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)</b> .....	<b>6-8</b>
• Tyre Pressure Indicator.....	6-8
• Low tyre pressure telltale.....	6-9
• Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction indicator.....	6-10
• Tyre replacement with TPMS.....	6-11
<b>If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre)</b> .....	<b>6-12</b>
• Jack and tools.....	6-12
• Removing and storing the spare tyre.....	6-13
• Changing tyres.....	6-13
• Jack label.....	6-17
• Declaration of Conformity for Jack.....	6-19
<b>Towing</b> .....	<b>6-20</b>
• Towing service.....	6-20
• Removable towing hook.....	6-21
• Emergency towing.....	6-21
<b>Emergency commodity</b> .....	<b>6-24</b>

## 6 What to do in an emergency

- Fire extinguisher.....6-24
- Triangle reflector.....6-24

## What to do in an emergency

### Road warning

When in an emergency situation occurs whilst driving or when you park by the edge of the roadway, you must alert approaching or passing vehicles to be careful as they pass. For this, you should use the hazard warning flasher.

### Hazard warning flasher

The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.



It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

Depress the flasher switch with the ignition switch in any position. The flasher switch is located in the centre console switch panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.
- Care must be taken when using the hazard warning flasher whilst the vehicle is being towed.

### In case of an emergency whilst driving

If an emergency situation occurs whilst driving, stay calm and take the following steps.

#### If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing

- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, set the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe place.
- If your vehicle has a manual transmission not equipped with an ignition lock switch, the vehicle can move forward by shifting to the 2 (Second) or 3 (Third) gear and then turning the starter without depressing the clutch pedal.

#### If you have a flat tyre whilst driving

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving:

1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down whilst driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause a loss of control.
2. When the vehicle has slowed down to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road.
3. Park the vehicle at the side of road, do not stop or park the vehicle in middle of the road way. In case of divided roads, park the vehicle as much away from the driving lanes to avoid inconvenience to other vehicles and, easy operation of tyre change as mentioned in "If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre)" on page 6-12.
4. When the vehicle is stopped, turn on your emergency hazard flashers, set

the parking brake and put the transmission in reverse (manual transmission).

5. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
6. When changing a flat tyre, follow the instruction provided later in "If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre)" on page 6-12.

### If the engine stalls whilst driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle does not start, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### If the engine will not start

When the engine doesn't start, first check to see how much fuel there is and whether the battery is discharged.

#### If the engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly

1. Check the battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
2. Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is discharged.
3. Check the starter connections to be sure they are securely tightened.
4. Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. See instructions for "Jump starting" on page 6-5.

#### **WARNING**

If the engine will not start, do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could result in a collision or cause other damage. In addition, push or pull starting may cause the catalytic converter to be overloaded and create a fire hazard.

#### If engine turns over normally but does not start

1. Check the fuel level.
2. With the ignition switch in the LOCK position, check all connectors at the ignition coils and spark plugs. Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. Check the fuel line in the engine compartment.
4. If the engine still does not start, call a professional workshop. Kia recommends to call an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

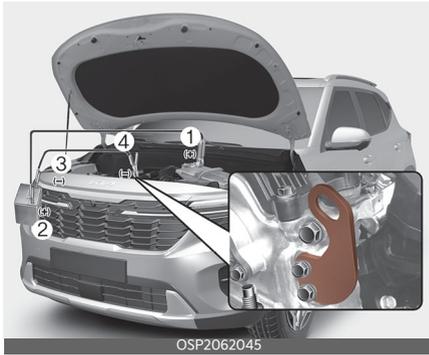
## Emergency starting

When the vehicle will not start because of low battery power, you may need to jump start the vehicle.

### Jump starting

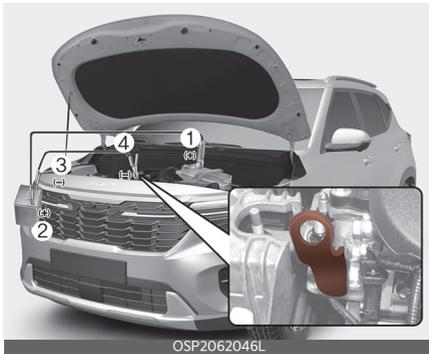
Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.

(Petrol) 1.6 MPI/T-GDi



OSP2062045

(Petrol) 2.0 MPI



OSP2062046L

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Therefore, to avoid harm to yourself or damage to your vehicle or battery, follow the jump starting procedures. If in doubt, we strongly recommend that you have a competent technician or towing service jump start your vehicle.

### ⚠ CAUTION

Use only a 12-volt jumper system. You can damage a 12-volt starting motor, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair by use of a 24-volt power supply (either two 12-volt batteries in series or a 24-volt motor generator set).

### ⚠ WARNING

#### Battery

Never attempt to check the electrolyte level of the battery as this may cause the battery to rupture or explode causing serious injury.

### ⚠ WARNING

#### Battery

- Keep all flames or sparks away from the battery. The battery produces hydrogen gas which may explode if exposed to flame or sparks. If these instructions are not followed exactly, serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle may occur! If you are not sure how to follow this procedure, seek qualified assistance. Automobile batteries contain sulfuric acid. This is poisonous and highly corrosive. When jump starting, wear protective glasses and be careful not to get acid on yourself, your clothing or on the vehicle.
- Do not attempt to jump start the vehicle if the discharged battery is frozen or if the electrolyte level is low; the battery may rupture or explode.
- Do not allow the (+) and (-) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.

- The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.

---

## Jump starting procedure

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12-volt and that its negative terminal is grounded.  
If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow the vehicles come in contact.
2. Turn off all unnecessary electrical loads.
3. Open the engine bonnet and remove the service cover on the front passenger seat side in the engine compartment.
4. Remove the fuse box cover on the front passenger seat side in the engine compartment
5. Open the positive terminal cap inside the engine room fuse box and the negative terminal cap close to the vehicle body.
6. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration.
  - 1) Connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (1).
  - 2) Connect the other end to the positive terminal of the booster battery (2).
  - 3) Proceed to connect one end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3), then the other end to a solid, stationary, metallic point (for example, the engine lifting bracket) away from the battery (4). Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked.

Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

### CAUTION

#### Battery cables

Do not connect the jumper cable from the negative terminal of the booster battery to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. This can cause the discharged battery to overheat and crack, releasing battery acid.

Make sure to connect one end of the jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery, and the other end to a metallic point, far away from the battery.

#### Push-starting

Your Manual Transmission-equipped vehicle should not be push-started because it might damage the emission control system.

Vehicles equipped with Automatic Transmission/Intelligent Variable Transmission cannot be push-started. Follow the directions in this section for "Jump starting" on page 6-5.

### WARNING

Never tow a vehicle to start it because the sudden surge forward when the engine starts could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.

---

## If the engine overheats

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you will experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine is probably too hot.

If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P (Automatic Transmission/Intelligent Variable Transmission) or N (Manual Transmission) and set the parking brake.
3. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
4. If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from the bonnet, stop the engine. Do not open the bonnet until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped.
5. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating.
  - 1) If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.
6. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing.
  - 1) If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight.
  - 2) If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop).

### WARNING

Whilst the engine is running, keep hair, hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.

7. If the water pump drive belt is broken or engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and call a professional workshop. Kia recommends to call an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### WARNING

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. This can allow coolant to blow out of the opening and cause serious burns.

8. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. If coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.
9. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, call a professional workshop. Kia recommends to call an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### CAUTION

- Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities.

### Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (if equipped)

The tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) detects the pressure of vehicle's tyres and displays it on the LCD display.



1. Low tyre pressure telltale / TPMS malfunction indicator
2. Low tyre pressure position telltale (Shown on the LCD display)

### Tyre Pressure Indicator

- You can check the tyre pressure in the Information (i) mode on the cluster.
  - Refer to "LCD display modes" on page 4-67.
- tyre pressure is displayed 1~2 minutes later after driving.
- If tyre pressure is not displayed when the vehicle is stopped, "Drive to dis-

play" message displays. After driving, check the tyre pressure.

- You can change the tyre pressure unit in the user settings mode on the cluster.
  - psi, kPa, bar (Refer to "User settings mode (if equipped)" on page 4-70).

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to

indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

**\* NOTICE**

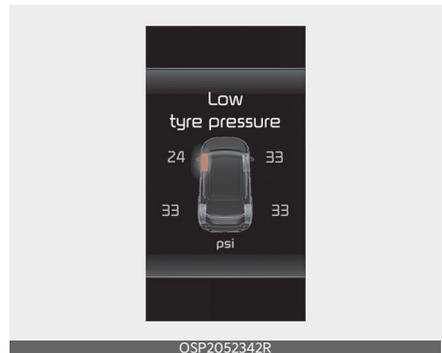
If any of the below happens, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

1. The low tyre pressure telltale/ TPMS malfunction indicator do not illuminate for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or engine is running.
2. The TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.
3. The Low tyre pressure position telltale remains illuminated.

## Low tyre pressure telltale (!)

### Low tyre pressure position telltale

When the tyre pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated and warning message displayed on the cluster LCD display, one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated.



The low tyre pressure position telltale light will indicate which tyre is significantly under-inflated by illuminating the corresponding position light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible. Inflate the tyres to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tyre inflation pressure label located on the driver's side centre pillar outer panel. If you cannot reach a service station or if the tyre cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tyre with a spare tyre.

If you drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes at speeds above 25 km/h after replacing the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre, one of the following will happen:

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel. (changed tyre equipped with a sensor not in the vehicle)
- The TPMS malfunction indicator will remain continuously illuminated whilst driving because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel. (changed tyre equipped with a sensor in the vehicle)

**⚠ CAUTION**

- In winter or cold weather, the low tyre pressure telltale may illuminate if the tyre pressure was adjusted to the recommended tyre inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a lowering of tyre pressure.
- When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is higher or lower, you should check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust the tyres to the recommended tyre inflation pressure.
- When filling tyres with more air, conditions to turn off the low tyre pressure telltale may not be met. This is because a tyre inflator has a margin of error in performance. The low tyre pressure telltale will be turned off if the tyre pressure is above the recommended tyre inflation pressure.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Low pressure damage**

Significantly low tyre pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute

to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances. Continued driving on low pressure tyres can cause the tyres to overheat and fail.

**Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction indicator (!)**

The TPMS malfunction indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the tyre Pressure Monitoring System. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop to determine the cause of the problem. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**\* NOTICE**

If there is a malfunction with the TPMS, the low tyre pressure position telltale will not be displayed even though the vehicle has an underinflated tyre.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated if the vehicle is moving around electric power supply cables or radios transmitter such as at police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, or transmitting towers, etc. This can interfere with normal operation of the tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).
- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated if snow chains are used or some separate electronic devices such as notebook computer, mobile charger,

remote starter or navigation etc., are used in the vehicle.

This can interfere with normal operation of the tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

### Tyre replacement with TPMS

If you have a flat tyre, the low tyre Pressure and Position telltales will come on.

In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

#### CAUTION

We recommend that you use the sealant approved by Kia.

The sealant on the tyre pressure sensor and wheel shall be eliminated when you replace the tyre with a new one.

Each wheel is equipped with a tyre pressure sensor mounted inside the tyre behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. Have your tyres serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

If you drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes at speeds above 25 km/h after replacing the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre, one of the following will happen:

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel. (changed tyre equipped with a sensor not in the vehicle)
- The TPMS malfunction indicator will remain continuously illuminated whilst driving because the TPMS sen-

sor is not mounted on the spare wheel. (changed tyre equipped with a sensor in the vehicle)

You may not be able to identify a low tyre by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to measure the tyres inflation pressure. Please note that a tyre that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tyre that is cold (from sitting stationary for at least 3 hours and driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile) during that 3 hour period).

Allow the tyre to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tyre is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

A cold tyre means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1.6 km (1 mile) in that 3 hour period.

#### CAUTION

We recommend that you use the sealant approved by Kia if your vehicle is equipped with a tyre Pressure Monitoring System. The liquid sealant can damage the tyre pressure sensors.

#### WARNING

##### TPMS

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.
- If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Protecting TPMS**

Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tyre pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**For europe**

- Do not modify the vehicle, it may interfere with the TPMS function.
- The wheels on the market do not have a TPMS sensor.  
For your safety, use parts for replacement from a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

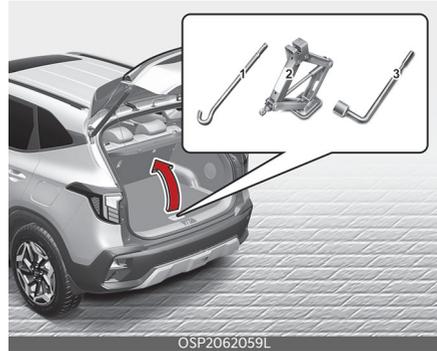
- If you use the wheels on the market, use a TPMS sensor approved by a Kia dealer. If your vehicle is not equipped with a TPMS sensor or TPMS does not work properly, you may fail the periodic vehicle inspection conducted in your country.

\* All vehicles sold in the EUROPE market during below period must be equipped with TPMS.

- New model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2012 ~
- Current model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2014~ (Based on vehicle registrations)

**If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre)**

**Jack and tools**



The jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment.

Pull up the luggage box cover to reach this equipment.

1. Jack handle
2. Jack
3. Wheel lug nut wrench

**Jacking instructions**

The jack is provided for emergency tyre changing only.

To prevent the jack from "rattling" whilst the vehicle is in motion, store it properly.

Follow jacking instructions to reduce the possibility of personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Changing tyres**

- Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or highway.
- Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the shoulder before trying to change a tyre. The jack should be used on level firm ground. If you cannot find a firm, level

place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.

- Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jacking support.
- The vehicle can easily roll off the jack causing serious injury or death.
- Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
- Do not start or run the engine whilst the vehicle is on the jack.
- Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle whilst it is on the jack.
- Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.

## Removing and storing the spare tyre



Turn the tyre hold-down wing bolt counterclockwise to remove.

Store the tyre in the reverse order of removal.

To prevent the spare tyre and tools from "rattling" whilst the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

## ⚠ WARNING

Ensure the spare tyre retainer is properly aligned with the centre of the spare tyre to prevent the spare tyre from "rattling". Otherwise, it may cause the spare tyre to fall off the carrier and lead to an accident.

## Changing tyres

1. Park on a level surface and apply the parking brake firmly.



2. Move the shift lever into R (Reverse) with Manual Transmission or P (Park) with Automatic Transmission/Intelligent Variable Transmission.
3. Activate the hazard warning flasher.
4. Remove the wheel lug nut wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tyre from the vehicle.
5. Block both the front and rear of wheel that is diagonally opposite the jack position.



**⚠ WARNING**

**Changing a tyre**

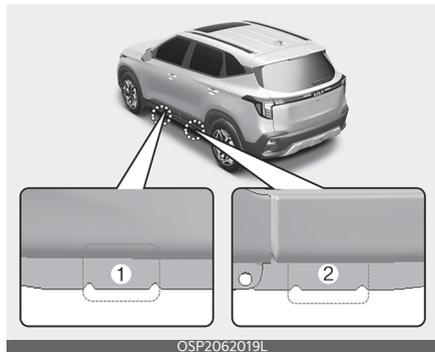
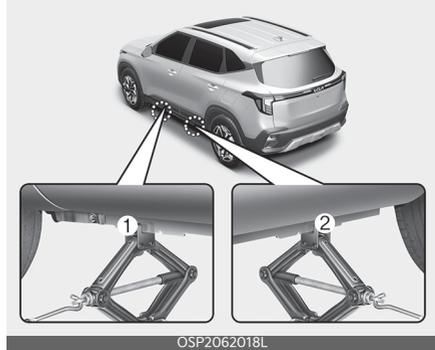
- To prevent vehicle movement whilst changing a tyre, always set the parking brake fully, and always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.
- We recommend that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

6. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counter-clockwise one turn each, but do not remove any nut until the tyre has been raised off the ground.



7. Place the jack at the front (1) or rear (2) jacking position closest to the tyre

you are changing. Place the jack at the designated locations under the frame. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two tabs and a raised dot to index with the jack.



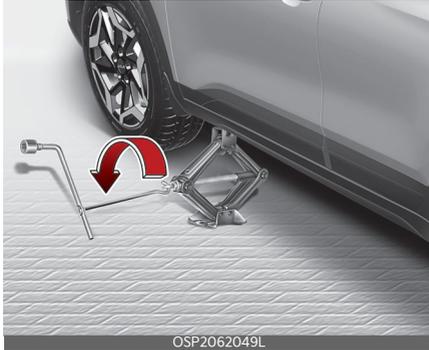
**⚠ WARNING**

**Jack location**

To reduce the possibility of injury, be sure to use only the jack provided with the vehicle and in the correct jack position; never use any other part of the vehicle for jack support.

8. Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tyre just clears the ground. This measurement is approximately 30 mm (1.2 inches). Before

removing the wheel lug nuts, make sure the vehicle is stable and that there is no chance for movement or slippage.



9. Loosen the wheel nuts and remove them with your fingers. Slide the wheel off the studs and lay it flat so it cannot roll away. To put the wheel on the hub, pick up the spare tyre, line up the holes with the studs and slide the wheel onto them.

If this is difficult, tip the wheel slightly and get the top hole in the wheel lined up with the top stud. Then jiggle the wheel back and forth until the wheel can be slid over the other studs.

**⚠ WARNING**

Wheels may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury. Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that interferes with the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub.

If there is, remove it. If there is not good contact on the mounting surface between the wheel and hub, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause the loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may

result in loss of control of the vehicle. This may cause serious injury or death.

**Important - use of compact spare tyre (if equipped)**

Your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare tyre. This compact spare tyre takes up less space than a regular-size tyre. This tyre is smaller than a conventional tyre and is designed for temporary use only.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- You should drive carefully when the compact spare is in use. The compact spare should be replaced by the proper conventional tyre and rim at the first opportunity.
- The operation of this vehicle is not recommended with more than one compact spare tyre in use at the same time.

**⚠ WARNING**

The compact spare tyre is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle on this compact spare at the speed over 80 km/h (50 mph). The original tyre should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare possibly leading to personal injury or death.

The compact spare should be inflated to 420 kPa (60 psi).

**\* NOTICE**

Check the inflation pressure after installing the spare tyre. Adjust it to the specified pressure, as necessary.

When using a compact spare tyre, observe the following precautions:

- Under no circumstances should you exceed 80 km/h (50 mph); a higher speed could damage the tyre.
- Ensure that you drive slowly enough to avoid all hazards. Any road hazard, such as a pothole or debris, could seriously damage the compact spare.
- Any continuous road use of this tyre could result in tyre failure, loss of vehicle control, and possible personal injury.
- Do not exceed the vehicle's maximum load rating or the load-carrying capacity shown on the sidewall of the compact spare tyre.
- Avoid driving over obstacles. The compact spare tyre diameter is smaller than the diameter of a conventional tyre and reduces the ground clearance approximately 2.5 cm (1 inch), which could result in damage to the vehicle.
- Do not take the vehicle through an automatic car wash whilst the compact spare tyre is installed.
- Do not use tyre chains on the temporary compact tyre. Because of the smaller size, a tyre chain will not fit properly. This could damage the vehicle and result in loss of the chain.
- Temporary compact tyre should not be installed on the front axle if the vehicle must be driven in snow or on ice.
- Do not use the temporary compact tyre on any other vehicle because this tyre has been designed especially for your vehicle.
- The temporary compact tyre tread life is shorter than a regular tyre. Inspect your temporary compact tyre regularly and replace worn compact spare

tyres with the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel.

- The temporary compact tyre should not be used on any other wheels, nor should standard tyres, snow tyres, wheel covers or trim rings be used with the temporary compact spare wheel. If such use is attempted, damage to these items or other car components may occur.
- Do not use more than one temporary compact tyre at a time.
- Do not tow a trailer whilst the temporary compact tyre is installed.

Jack label

	Model : □□□ 1 		11 DATE OF MANUFACTURE (YYYYMMDD) 

OSP2062063L

	2 Max. 1 □□□□□ kg 		11 DATE OF MANUFACTURE (YYYYMMDD) 

OSP2062064L

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● MAX. WEIGHT □□□□kg(□□□□ lb)</li> <li>● USE ONLY TO SPECIFIED CAR(지정 차량에만 사용할 것)</li> <li>● CARGA MAXIMA □□□□kg(□□□□ lb)</li> <li>● ÚSELO SOLO PARA EL VEHICULO ESPECIFICADO</li> <li>● Максимальная использовать только для грузоподъемность □□□□кг данного автомобиля</li> <li>● 最大质量 □□□□kg(□□□□lb), 仅适用于指定车型</li> <li>● الوزن الأقصى □□□□ كجم - استخدم فقط للسيارة المحددة</li> </ul>		
---	--	--

OHYK064002

HYUNDAI MOTOR COMPANY	KIA CORPORATION
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• THIS JACK FOR USE WITH KIA □□□□ MODELS.</li> <li>• TURN OFF IGNITION &amp; SET PARKING BRAKE, PUT GEARSHIFT IN PARK (FOR AUTOMATIC) OR IN REVERSE GEAR (FOR MANUAL TRANSMISSION). THE VEHICLE OWNER'S MANUAL SHOULD BE CONSULTED FOR JACKING AND TYRE CHANGING INSTRUCTIONS (INCLUDING WHEEL JACKING POSITIONS) PRIOR TO THE JACKING OF VEHICLE.</li> <li>• THE JACK SHOULD BE USED ON LEVEL FIRM GROUND WHEREVER POSSIBLE.</li> <li>• IT IS RECOMMENDED THAT THE WHEELS OF THE VEHICLE BE CHOCKED AND THAT NO PERSON SHOULD REMAIN IN THE VEHICLE THAT IS BEING JACKED.</li> </ul>	
<p><b>WARNING : DO NOT GET UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.</b></p>	

OSP2052213L

\* The actual jack label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration. For more detailed specifications, refer to the label attached to the jack.

1. Jack type
2. Maximum allowable load
3. When using the jack, set your parking brake.
4. When using the jack, stop the engine.
5. Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
6. The designated locations under the frame
7. When supporting the vehicle, the base plate of jack must be vertical under the lifting point.
8. Move the shift lever to the P position on vehicles with Intelligent Variable Transmission.

**What to do in an emergency**

**If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre)**

9. The jack should be used on firm level ground.
10. Jack manufacturer
11. Production date
12. Representative company and address

# Declaration of Conformity for Jack CE

**CE**

**EC Declaration of Conformity**  
according to EC Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC

We, **FRONTEC CO., LTD.**  
64 Huimanggongwon-ro, Siheung-si, Gyeonggi-do, Korea  
declare under our sole responsibility that the product

**Product** : JACK-ASSY  
**Type Designation(s)** : 1200KG, 1000KG, 800KG, 700KG, 500KG  
**Serial No.** : N/A (prototype)  
**Year of Manufacture** : 2014

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standard(s) or other normative document(s);

EN ISO12100 (2010)	Safety of machinery - General principles for design – Risk assessment and risk reduction
EN 1494/A1 (2008)	Mobile or movable jacks and associated lifting equipment

following the provisions of Directive(s);

2006/42/EC	Directive on the approximation of the laws of Member States relating to machinery (OJ L157 Jun, 9, 2006)
------------	--

Siheung-si Gyeonggi-d ,Korea / 06.10.2022    SOO HONG, MIN    President

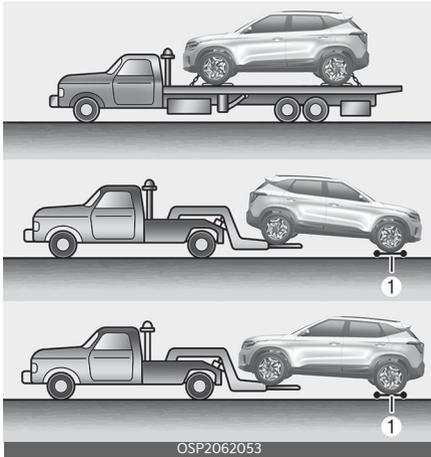
(Place and date of issue)(Name and signature or equivalent making of authorized person)

\* T.C.F Compiling Location:  
- Address: PRIBORSKA 280, 739 42 FRYDEK MISTEK, CHLEBOVICE, CZECH REPUBLIC  
- Team: Purchase team  
- Company name: HANWHA

OKA4052708L

# Towing

## Towing service



1 : dollies

If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorised Kia dealer or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies (1) or flatbed is recommended.

It is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the front wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the front wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the front of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the rear.

## CAUTION



- Do not tow the vehicle backwards with the front wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.
- Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.
- Do not tow the vehicle with four wheels in contact with the ground if it is the vehicle equipped with Intelligent Variable Transmission. Otherwise, the transmission will be seriously damaged. Also, make sure not to tow the vehicle connecting it with other vehicles including camper vans.

When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies:

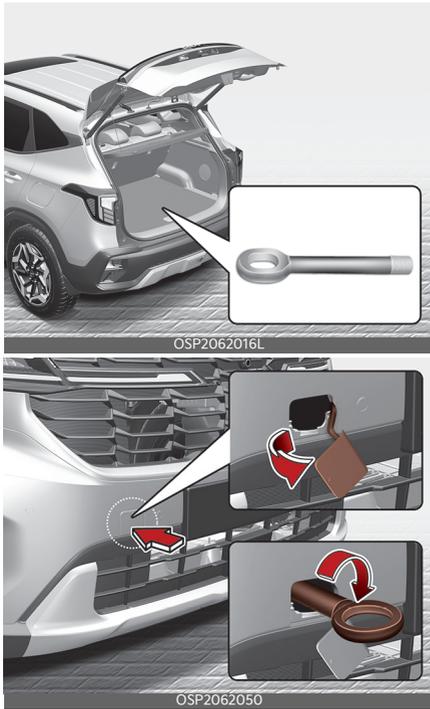
1. Set the ignition switch in the ACC position.
2. Place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral).

3. Release the parking brake.

**CAUTION**

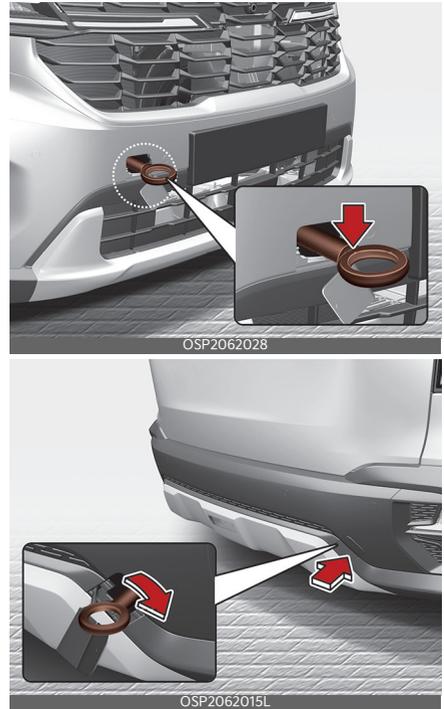
Failure to place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transmission.

**Removable towing hook (if equipped)**



1. Open the tailgate, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.
2. Remove the hole cover pressing the upper part of the cover on the bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

**Emergency towing**



**If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by an authorised Kia dealer or a commercial tow truck service.**

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook under the front (or rear) of the vehicle.

Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speed. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

- Do not use the tow hooks to pull a vehicle out of mud, sand or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.
- Avoid towing a vehicle heavier than the vehicle doing the towing.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Attach a towing strap to the tow hook.
- Using a portion of the vehicle other than the tow hooks for towing may damage the body of your vehicle.
- Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing hook provided.
- Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle in a slow and gradual manner whilst maintaining tension on the tow rope or chain to start or drive the vehicle, otherwise tow hooks and the vehicle may be damaged.

- Before emergency towing, check if the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply it steadily and with even force.
- To avoid damaging the hook, do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle. Always pull straight ahead.

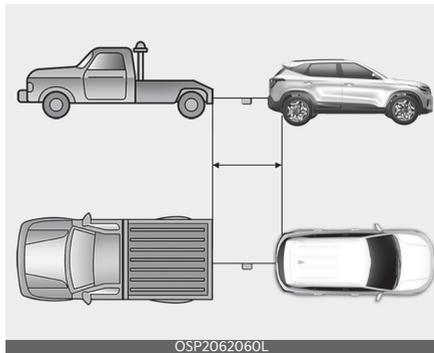
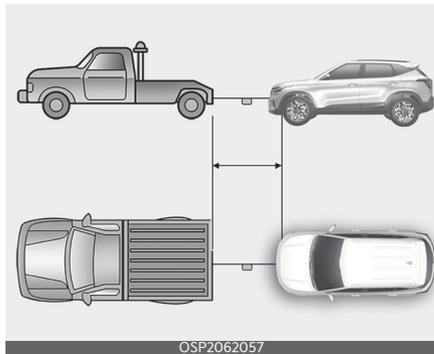
**⚠ WARNING**

Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.

- Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving manoeuvres which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing hook and towing cable or

chain. The hook and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.

- If the disabled vehicle is unable to be moved, do not forcibly continue the towing. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer or a commercial tow truck service for assistance.
  - Tow the vehicle as straight ahead as possible.
  - Keep away from the vehicle during towing.
- 
- Use a towing strap less than 5 m (16 feet) long. Attach a white or red cloth (about 30 cm (12 inches) wide) in the middle of the strap for easy visibility.



- Drive carefully so that the towing strap is not loosened during towing.
- The driver must be in the vehicle for steering and braking operations when the vehicle is towed and passengers other than the driver must not be allowed to be on board.

### Emergency towing precautions

- Turn the ignition switch to ACC so the steering wheel isn't locked.
- Place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral).
- Release the parking brake.
- Press the brake pedal with more force than normal since you will have reduced brake performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- If you are driving down a long hill, the brakes may overheat and brake performance will be reduced. Stop often and let the brakes cool off.
- The vehicle should be towed at a speed of 25 km/h (15 mph) or less within the distance of 20 km (12 miles). (for Manual transmission vehicle)
- To avoid serious damage to the automatic transmission, limit the vehicle speed to 15 km/h (10 mph) and drive less than 1.5 km (1 mile) when towing. (for Automatic transmission and Intelligent variable transmission vehicle)

steering is unlocked by placing the ignition switch in the ACC position. A driver must be in the towed vehicle to operate the steering and brakes.

- Before towing, check the automatic transmission/Intelligent variable transmission for fluid leaks under your vehicle. If the automatic transmission fluid is leaking, flatbed equipment or a towing dolly must be used.
- 

### CAUTION

#### Automatic transmission/Intelligent variable transmission

- If the car is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it can be towed only from the front. Be sure that the transmission is in neutral. Be sure the

## **Emergency commodity (if equipped)**

There are some emergency commodities in the vehicle to help you respond to the emergency situation.

### **Fire extinguisher**

If there is small fire and you know how to use the fire extinguisher, take the following steps carefully.

1. Pull the pin at the top of the extinguisher that keeps the handle from being accidentally pressed.
2. Aim the nozzle toward the base of the fire.
3. Stand approximately 2.5 m (8 ft) away from the fire and squeeze the handle to discharge the extinguisher.

If you release the handle, the discharge will stop.

4. Sweep the nozzle back and forth at the base of the fire.

After the fire appears to be out, watch it carefully since it may re-ignite.

### **Triangle reflector**

Place the triangle reflector on the road to warn oncoming vehicles during emergencies, such as when the vehicle is parked by the roadside due to any problems.

<b>Engine compartment</b> .....	<b>7-4</b>
<b>Maintenance services</b> .....	<b>7-7</b>
<b>Owner maintenance</b> .....	<b>7-8</b>
<b>Scheduled maintenance service</b> .....	<b>7-10</b>
<b>Explanation of scheduled maintenance items</b> .....	<b>7-27</b>
<b>Checking fluid levels</b> .....	<b>7-30</b>
<b>Engine oil and filter</b> .....	<b>7-30</b>
• Checking the engine oil level.....	7-30
• Changing the engine oil and filter.....	7-32
<b>Engine coolant</b> .....	<b>7-33</b>
• Checking the coolant level.....	7-34
• Changing the coolant.....	7-35
<b>Brake/clutch fluid</b> .....	<b>7-36</b>
• Checking the brake/clutch fluid level.....	7-36
<b>Washer fluid</b> .....	<b>7-38</b>
• Checking the washer fluid level.....	7-38
<b>Parking brake</b> .....	<b>7-39</b>
• Checking the parking brake.....	7-39
<b>Air cleaner filter</b> .....	<b>7-39</b>
• Replacing air cleaner filter.....	7-39
<b>Climate control air filter</b> .....	<b>7-41</b>
• Inspecting and replacing climate control air filter.....	7-41
<b>Wiper blades</b> .....	<b>7-42</b>
• Front windscreen wiper blade.....	7-42
• Replacing front windscreen wiper blade.....	7-43
• Replacing rear window wiper blade.....	7-44
<b>Battery</b> .....	<b>7-45</b>
<b>Tyres and wheels</b> .....	<b>7-48</b>

# 7 Maintenance

• Checking tyre inflation pressure.....	7-49
• Tyre rotation.....	7-49
• Wheel alignment and tyre balance.....	7-50
• Tyre replacement.....	7-50
• Compact spare tyre replacement.....	7-51
• Wheel replacement.....	7-51
• Tyre traction.....	7-51
• Tyre maintenance.....	7-51
• Tyre sidewall labeling.....	7-51
• Tyre terminology and definitions.....	7-54
• All season tyres.....	7-56
• Summer tyres.....	7-56
• Snow tyres.....	7-56
• Tyre chains.....	7-56
• Radial-ply tyres.....	7-57
• Low aspect ratio tyre.....	7-57
<b>Fuses.....</b>	<b>7-58</b>
• Replacing inner panel fuse.....	7-60
• Replacing engine compartment fuse.....	7-61
<b>Light bulbs.....</b>	<b>7-72</b>
• Headlamp bulb.....	7-76
• Headlamp (High/Low)/Turn signal lamp/Position lamp/ Daytime running lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement - Headlamp Type A.....	7-76
• Headlamp (High/Low)/Turn signal lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement - Headlamp Type B.....	7-77
• Position lamp/Daytime running lamp (LED type) bulb replacement - Headlamp Type B.....	7-78
• Headlamp (High/Low/Low assist)/Turn signal lamp/Position lamp /Daytime running lamp (LED type) bulb replacement - Headlamp Type C.....	7-78
• Front fog lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement.....	7-79

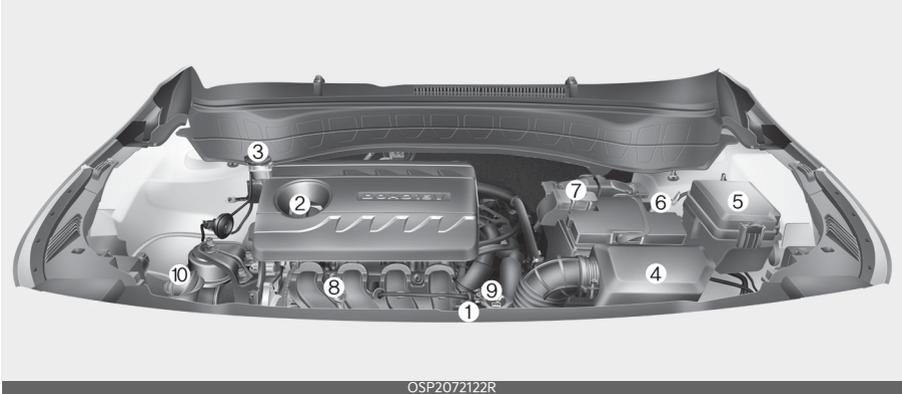
• Front fog lamp (LED type) bulb replacement.....	7-79
• Position lamp (auxiliary) (LED type) bulb replacement .....	7-79
• Side repeater lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement.....	7-80
• Tail and stop lamp/Turn signal lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement .....	7-80
• Tail lamp/ stop lamp (LED type) bulb replacement.....	7-81
• Rear fog lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement.....	7-81
• Back up lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement.....	7-82
• High mounted stop lamp (LED type) bulb replacement .....	7-82
• License plate lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement .....	7-82
• Map lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement .....	7-83
• Map lamp (LED type) bulb replacement.....	7-83
• Vanity mirror lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement .....	7-84
• Room lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement .....	7-84
• Room lamp (LED type) bulb replacement.....	7-85
• Glove box lamp (Bulb type) replacement .....	7-85
• Luggage room lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement .....	7-85
• Headlamp and front fog lamp aiming (for Europe) .....	7-86
<b>Appearance care.....</b>	<b>7-92</b>
• Exterior care .....	7-92
• Interior care .....	7-96
<b>Emission control system .....</b>	<b>7-98</b>

## Maintenance

### Engine compartment

Open the bonnet to see the engine compartment.

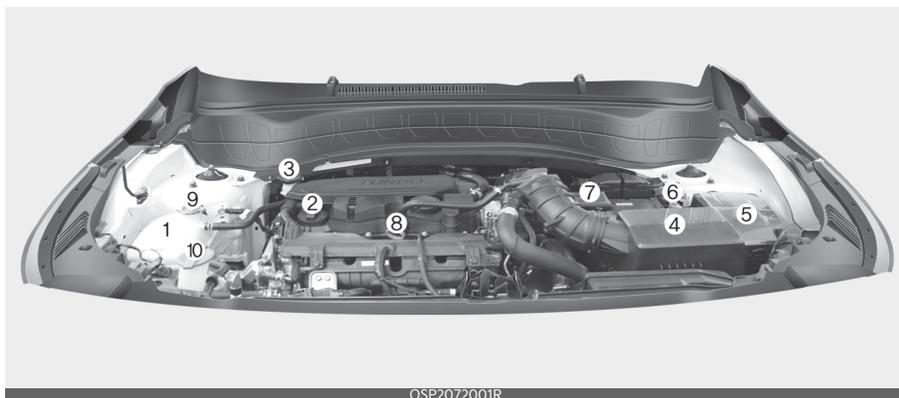
(Petrol) 1.6 MPI



\* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Radiator cap
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

## Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi

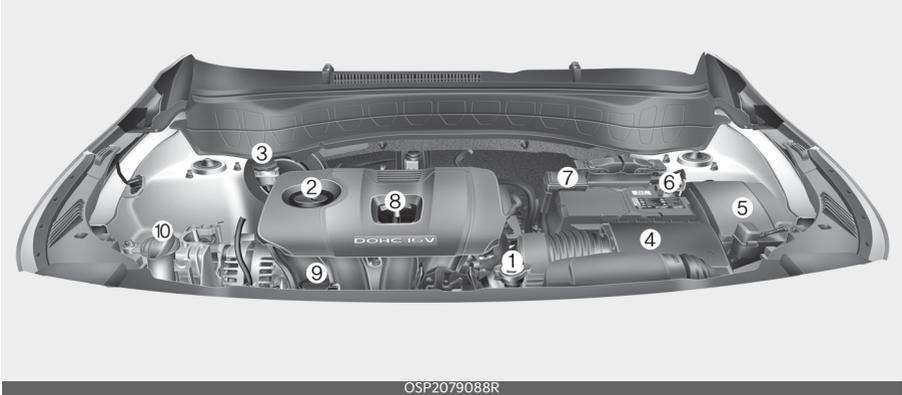


OSP2072001R

\* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Radiator cap
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

## (Petrol) 2.0 MPI



\* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Radiator cap
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

## Maintenance services

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

Should you have any doubts concerning the inspection or servicing of your vehicle, we strongly recommend that you have an authorised Kia dealer perform this work.

An authorised Kia dealer has factory-trained technicians to service your vehicle properly. For expert advice and quality service, see an authorised Kia dealer. Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

## Owner's responsibility

### \* NOTICE

Maintenance Service and Record Retention are the owner's responsibility.

You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Detailed warranty information is provided in your Warranty & Consumer Information manual.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. authorised Kia dealers meet Kia's high service quality standards and receive technical support from Kia in order to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

## Owner maintenance precautions

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

As explained earlier in this section, several procedures can be done only by an authorised Kia dealer with special tools.

### \* NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Warranty & Consumer Information manual provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### ⚠ WARNING

#### Maintenance work

Do not wear jewelry or loose clothing whilst working under the bonnet of your vehicle with the engine running. These items can become entangled in moving parts, if you must run the engine whilst working under the bonnet, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar

loose clothing before getting near cooling fans.

### **WARNING**

#### **Touching metal parts**

Do not touch metal parts (including strut bars) whilst the vehicle is operating or hot. Doing so could result in serious bodily injury. Turn the vehicle off and wait until the metal parts cool down to perform maintenance work on the vehicle.

## **Owner maintenance**

The following lists detail the vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorised Kia dealer. They should be performed at the indicated frequencies to help ensure the safe and dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your dealer as soon as possible.

These owner maintenance checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labour, parts and lubricants used.

### **When you stop for fuel:**

- Check the coolant level in coolant reservoir.
- Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Look for low or under-inflated tyres.
- Check if the front of the radiator and condenser are clean and not blocked with leaves, dirt or insects etc. If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, we recommend that you contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### **WARNING**

#### **Hot coolant**

Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure.

**Whilst operating your vehicle:**

- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or "pulls" to one side when travelling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or "hard-to-push" brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transmission occurs, check the transmission fluid level.
- Check the Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) P (Park) function.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

**At least monthly:**

- Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tyres including the spare for tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.
- Check for loose wheel lug nuts.

**At least twice a year (i.e., every Spring and Fall):**

- Check the radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check the windscreen washer spray and wiper operation. Clean the wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check the headlight alignment.
- Check the lap/shoulder belts for wear and function.

**At least once a year:**

- Clean the body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate the door hinges and check the bonnet hinges.
- Lubricate the door and bonnet locks and latches.
- Lubricate the door rubber weatherstrips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery and terminals.
- Check the brake/clutch fluid level.
- Visually inspect steering, suspension, and chassis components for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear.

## Scheduled maintenance service

Follow the Normal maintenance schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply.

Follow the Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions if any of the following conditions apply.

- Repeated driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature.
- Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads.
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather.
- Driving in heavy dust condition.
- Driving in heavy traffic area.
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road repeatedly.
- Using for towing or camping and driving with loading on the roof.
- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing.
- Frequently driving under high speed or rapid acceleration/deceleration.
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go condition.
- Engine oil usage which is not recommended (Mineral type, Semisynthetic, Lower grade spec, etc.)

If your vehicle is operated in any of the prior listed conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently, using the severe usage maintenance

schedule instead of the normal usage maintenance schedule.

## Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Australia and New Zealand

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*1	Engine oil and engine oil filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>As it is normal for engine oil to be consumed during driving, the engine oil level should be checked on regular basis.</li> <li>The engine oil change interval for normal operating conditions is based on the use of the recommended engine specification. If the recommended engine oil specification is not used, then replace the engine oil according to the maintenance schedule under severe operating conditions.</li> </ul>
*2	Coolant (Engine)	When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
*3	Drive belts (Engine)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Adjust alternator, water pump and air conditioner drive belt. Inspect and if necessary repair or replace.</li> <li>Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.</li> </ul>
*4	Spark plug	For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to its interval when you do maintenance of other items.
*5	Fuel additives (Petrol)	<p>Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe).</p> <p>For customers who do not use good quality petrols including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank when the engine oil is replaced. Additives are available from a professional workshop along with information on how to use them. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. Do not mix other additives.</p>

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*6	Differential oil (rear)	Differential oil should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.
*7	Transfer case oil (AWD)	Transfer case oil should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.

## Normal Maintenance Schedule - Turbo Model [For Australia and New Zealand]

I: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R: Replace or change

Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Months		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Km X 1,000		10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
Engine oil and engine oil filter *1	Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Coolant (Engine) *2		At first, Replace 180,000 km or 120 months after that, Replace every 30,000 km or 24 months							
Drive belts (Engine) *3		Inspect every 30,000 km or 24 months							
Vacuum hoses and crankcase ventilation hoses		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Spark plugs *4	Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi	Replace every 70,000 km							
Differential oil (rear) (AWD) *6		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Transfer case oil (AWD) *7		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Propeller shaft (AWD)		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Drive shaft and boots		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Fuel additives (Petrol) *5		Add every 10,000 km or 12 months							
Fuel lines, hoses and connections		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Fuel tank air filter		-	I	-	R	-	I	-	R
Vapour hose and fuel filler cap		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Air cleaner filter		I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I
Intercooler, in/out hose	Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi	At first, Inspect 10,000 km or 12 months after that, Inspect every 30,000 km or 24 months							
Air intake hose	Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Exhaust system		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Cooling system		-	-	-	I	-	I	-	I
Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first								
Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Km X 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
Climate control air filter	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Brake discs and pads	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Brake/clutch fluid	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Parking brake	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Suspension ball joints	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre (pressure & tread wear)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Battery condition	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I

- Fuel filter: The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality.
  - If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner for details.

## Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions - Turbo Model [For Australia and New Zealand]

Maintenance operation

I: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R: Replace or change

Maintenance item		Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
Engine oil and engine oil filter	Smart-stream G 1.6 T-GDi	R	Every 5,000 km or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
Spark plugs		R	More frequently	A, B, F, G, H, I, K
Differential oil (rear) (AWD)		R	Every 120,000 km	C, E, G, H, I, J
Transfer case oil (AWD)		R	Every 120,000 km	C, E, G, H, I, J
Propeller shaft (AWD)		I	More frequently	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Automatic transmission fluid		R	Every 90,000 km	A, C, F, G, H, I, J, K
Drive shaft and boots		I	More frequently	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Air cleaner filter		R	More frequently	C, E
Climate control air filter		R	More frequently	C, E, G
Brake discs, pads and calipers		I	More frequently	C, D, E, G, H, I, J, K
Parking brake		I	More frequently	C, D, G, H
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots		I	More frequently	C, D, E, F, G
Suspension ball joints and mounting bolts		I	More frequently	C, D, E, G, H, I

### Severe Driving Conditions

A: Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km in normal temperature or less than 16 km in freezing temperature.

B: Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.

C: Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or saltspread roads.

D: Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather

E: Driving in heavy dust condition.

F: Driving in heavy traffic area.

G: Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road repeatedly.

H: Using for towing or camping and driving with loading on the roof.

I: Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing.

J: Frequently driving under high speed or rapid acceleration/deceleration

K: Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.

L: Engine oil usage which is not recommended (Mineral type, Semisynthetic, Lower grade spec, etc.)

## Normal Maintenance Schedule - Non Turbo Model [For Australia and New Zealand]

I: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R: Replace or change

Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first									
Months		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Km X 1,000		15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Engine oil and engine oil filter <sup>1</sup>	(Petrol) 2.0 MPI	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Coolant (Engine) <sup>2</sup>		At first, Replace 180,000 km or 120 months after that, Replace every 30,000 km or 24 months							
Drive belts (Engine) <sup>3</sup>		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Vacuum hoses and crankcase ventilation hoses		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Spark plugs <sup>4</sup>	(Petrol) 2.0 MPI	Replace every 165,000 km							
Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) fluid		No check, No service required							
Drive shaft and boots		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Fuel lines, hoses and connections		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Fuel tank air filter		-	I	-	R	-	I	-	R
Vapour hose and fuel filler cap		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Air cleaner filter		I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I
Exhaust system		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Cooling system		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Climate control air filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Brake discs and pads		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Brake/clutch fluid		I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Parking brake		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I

Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first								
Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Km X 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots								
Suspension ball joints								
Tyre (pressure & tread wear)								
Battery condition	-		-		-		-	

- Fuel filter: The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality.
  - If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner for details.

## Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions - Non Turbo Model [For Australia and New Zealand]

Maintenance operation

I: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace. R: Replace or change

Maintenance item		Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
Engine oil and engine oil filter	(Petrol) 2.0 MPI	R	Every 7,500 km or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
Spark plugs		R	More frequently	A, B, F, G, H, I, K
Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) fluid		R	Every 90,000 km	A, C, F, G, H, I, J, K
Drive shaft and boots		I	More frequently	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Air cleaner filter		R	More frequently	C, E
Climate control air filter		R	More frequently	C, E, G
Brake discs, pads and calipers		I	More frequently	C, D, E, G, H, I, J, K
Parking brake		I	More frequently	C, D, G, H
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots		I	More frequently	C, D, E, F, G
Suspension ball joints and mounting bolts		I	More frequently	C, D, E, G, H, I

### Severe Driving Conditions

A: Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km in normal temperature or less than 16 km in freezing temperature.

B: Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.

C: Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or saltspread roads.

D: Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather.

E: Driving in heavy dust condition.

F: Driving in heavy traffic area.

G: Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road repeatedly.

H: Using for towing or camping and driving with loading on the roof.

I: Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing.

J: Frequently driving under high speed or rapid acceleration/deceleration

K: Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.

L: Engine oil usage which is not recommended (Mineral type, Semisynthetic, Lower grade spec, etc.)

## Normal maintenance schedule

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

No.	Item	Remark
*1	Engine oil and engine oil filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>As it is normal for engine oil to be consumed during driving, the engine oil level should be checked on regular basis.</li> <li>The engine oil change interval for normal operating conditions is based on the use of the recommended engine specification. If the recommended engine oil specification is not used, then replace the engine oil according to the maintenance schedule under severe operating conditions.</li> </ul>
*2	Coolant (Engine)	When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
*3	Drive belts (Engine)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Adjust alternator, water pump and air conditioner (if equipped) drive belt. Inspect and if necessary repair or replace.</li> <li>Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.</li> </ul>
*4	Valve clearance	Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner
*5	Spark plug	For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.
*6	Manual transmission fluid	Manual transmission fluid should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water
*7	Fuel additives (Petrol)	<p>Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe).</p> <p>For customers who do not use good quality petrol including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives should be added to the fuel tank when the engine oil is replaced.</p> <p>Additives are available from your authorised Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.</p>

No.	Item	Remark
*8	Differential oil (rear)	Differential oil should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.
*9	Transfer case oil (AWD)	Transfer case oil should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.

### Normal maintenance schedule

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

I: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R: Replace or change

Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first									
Months		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Miles X 1,000		10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
Km X 1,000		15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Engine oil and engine oil filter <sup>1</sup>	(Petrol) 1.6 MPI (For Europe, Australia, Africa, General export, Russia, Asia-pacific)	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	(Petrol) 1.6 MPI (For Central & South America, Brazil, Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran)	Replace every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months							
	Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi (For Europe)	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi ((For Australia, Africa, General export, Asia-pacific, India, Central & South America, Brazil, Middle East, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran)	Replace every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months							
	(Petrol) 1.6 MPI, Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi (For Mexico)	Replace every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 6 months							
	(Petrol) 2.0 MPI (For Middle East, Central & South America)	Replace every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months							
	(Petrol) 2.0 MPI (Except Middle East, Central & South America)	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first									
Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	
Miles X 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
Km X 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	
Coolant (Engine) <sup>*2</sup>		At first, Replace 180,000 km (120,000 miles) or 120 months after that, Replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Drive belts (Engine) <sup>3</sup>	For Europe	At first, Inspect 90,000 km (60,000 miles) or 72 months after that, Inspect every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
	Except Europe	-		-		-		-	
Valve clearance <sup>*4</sup>	Petrol) 1.6 MPI	-	-	-	-	-		-	-
Vacuum hoses and crankcase ventilation hoses		-		-		-		-	
Spark plugs <sup>*5</sup>	(Petrol) 1.6 MPI	Replace every 60,000 km (40,000 miles)							
	Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi	Replace every 75,000 km (50,000 miles)							
	(Petrol) 2.0 MPI	Replace every 165,000 km (110,000 miles)							
Differential oil (rear) (AWD) <sup>*8</sup>		-	-	-		-	-	-	
Transfer case oil (AWD) <sup>*9</sup>		-	-	-		-	-	-	
Automatic transmission fluid (if equipped)		No check, No service required							
Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) fluid (if equipped)		No check, No service required							
Manual transmission fluid <sup>*6</sup> (if equipped)		No check, No service required							
Drive shaft and boots		-		-		-		-	
Propeller shaft (AWD)		-		-		-		-	
Fuel additives <sup>7</sup>	Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi (For Middle East, Central & South America)	Add every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months							
	Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi (Except Middle East, Central & South America)	Add every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months							
Fuel lines, hoses and connections		-	-	-		-	-	-	
Fuel tank air filter (if equipped)		-		-	R	-		-	R
Intercooler, in/out hose	Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi		-		-		-		-
Air intake hose	Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi								
Vapour hose and fuel filler cap		-	-	-		-	-	-	
Air cleaner filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Exhaust system		-		-		-		-	
Cooling system									

Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first								
Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
Miles X 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
Km X 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant (if equipped)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Climate control air filter (if equipped)	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Brake discs and pads	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Brake/clutch fluid	I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I
Parking brake	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Suspension ball joints	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre (pressure & tread wear)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Battery condition	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
ERA-GLONASS system (if equipped)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
ERA-GLONASS system battery (if equipped)	Replace every 4 years							

- Fuel filter: The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality.
  - If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner for details.

### Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions. Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

R: Replace

I: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

Maintenance item	Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
(Petrol) 1.6 MPI (For Europe, Australia, Africa, General export, Russia, Asia-pacific)	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L
(Petrol) 1.6 MPI (For Central & South America, Brazil, Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran)	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	
Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi (For Europe)	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	
Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi (For Australia, Africa, General export, Asia-pacific, India, Central & South America, Brazil, Middle East, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran)	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	
(Petrol) 1.6 MPI, Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi (For Mexico)	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 3 months	
(Petrol) 2.0 MPI (For Middle East, Central & South America)	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	
(Petrol) 2.0 MPI (Except Middle East, Central & South America)	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	
Engine oil and engine oil filter			
Air cleaner filter	R	More frequently	C, E
Spark plugs	R	More frequently	A, B, F, G, H, I, K
Differential oil (rear) (AWD)	R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, E, G, H, I, J

Maintenance item	Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
Transfer case oil (AWD)	R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, E, G, H, I, J
Automatic transmission fluid (if equipped)	R	Every 90,000 km (60,000 miles)	A, C, F, G,H, I, J, K
Manual Transmission fluid (if equipped)	R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, F, G, H, I, J
Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) fluid (if equipped)	R	Every 90,000 km (60,000 miles)	A, C, F, G,H, I, J, K
Brake discs, pads and calipers	I	More frequently	C, D, E, G,H, I, J, K
Parking brake	I	More frequently	C, D, G, H
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	More frequently	C, D, E, F, G
Suspension ball joints and mounting bolts	I	More frequently	C, D, E, G, H, I
Drive shafts and boots	I	More frequently	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Propeller shaft (AWD)	I	More frequently	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Climate control air filter	I	More frequently	C, E, G
ERA-GLONASS system (if equipped)	I	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	A, K

**Severe Driving Conditions**

- A: Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature.
- B: Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.
- C: Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads.
- D: Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather.
- E: Driving in heavy dust condition.
- F: Driving in heavy traffic area.
- G: Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road repeatedly.
- H: Using for towing or camping and driving with loading on the roof.
- I: Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing.

- J: Frequently driving under high speed or rapid acceleration/deceleration.
- K: Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.
- L : Engine oil usage which is not recommended (Mineral type, Semisynthetic, Lower grade spec, etc.).

## Explanation of scheduled maintenance items

The following parts require scheduled maintenance.

### Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

### Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

### Fuel filter

Kia petrol vehicles are equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is generally not needed. This may vary depending on fuel quality. If you experience any of the following: fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, or a hard starting issue, inspection and, if necessary, replacement may be needed. We recommend that the fuel filter be replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. We recommend that the fuel lines, fuel

hoses and connections be replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Vapour hose and fuel filler cap

The vapour hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapour hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

### Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold. Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving components which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

### Air cleaner filter

We recommend that the air cleaner filter be replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Spark plugs

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

When assembling parts, be sure to wipe the inside and outside of the boot bottom of the ignition coil and the insulator of the spark plug with a soft cloth to prevent contamination of the spark plug insulator.

### Cooling system

Check the cooling system components, such as the radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

### Manual transmission fluid (if equipped)

Inspect the manual transmission fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

### Automatic transmission fluid (if equipped)

Automatic transmission fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions. Have the automatic transmission fluid changed by a professional workshop according to the maintenance schedule. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

#### \* NOTICE

Automatic transmission fluid colour is basically red.

As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transmission fluid will begin to look darker. It is normal condition and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed colour.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

The use of a non-specified fluid could result in transmission malfunction and failure.

Use only specified automatic transmission fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" on page 8-7.)

### Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) fluid (if equipped)

Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions. But in severe conditions, the fluid should be changed at an authorised Kia dealer in accordance to the scheduled maintenance at the beginning of this section.

We recommend that the automatic transmission fluid changed by an authorised Kia dealer according to the maintenance schedule.

#### \* NOTICE

Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) fluid colour is usually light amber. As the vehicle is driven, the Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) fluid will begin to look darker.

It is the normal condition and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed colour.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

### Transmission fluids

The use of non-specified fluid (even marked as compatible with genuine) could result in shift quality deterioration and vibrations, eventually, the transmission failure. Use only specified Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) fluid. (Refer

to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" on page 8-7)

---

### **Brake hoses and lines**

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

### **Brake/clutch fluid**

Check the brake/clutch fluid level in the brake/clutch fluid reservoir. The level should be between "MIN" and "MAX" marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake/clutch fluid conforming to DOT 4 specification.

### **Parking brake**

Inspect the parking brake system including the parking brake lever (or pedal) and cables.

### **Exhaust pipe and muffler**

Visually inspect the exhaust pipes, muffler and hangers for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Start the engine and listen carefully for any exhaust gas leakage. Tighten connections or replace parts as necessary.

### **Brake discs, pads and calipers**

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

For more information on checking the pads or lining wear limit, we recommend to refer to the Kia web site. (<http://www.kia-hotline.com>)

### **Suspension mounting bolts**

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

### **Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint**

With the vehicle stopped and off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel.

Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

### **Drive shafts and boots**

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

### **Air conditioning refrigerant**

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

## Checking fluid levels

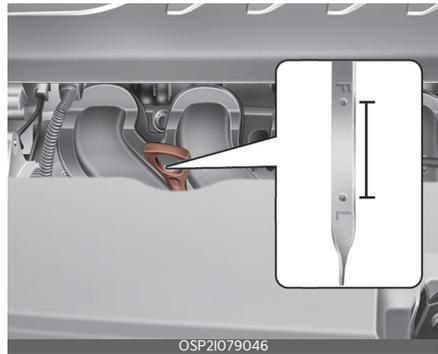
When checking engine oil, engine coolant, brake/clutch fluid, and washer fluid, always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant or fluid. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.

## Engine oil and filter

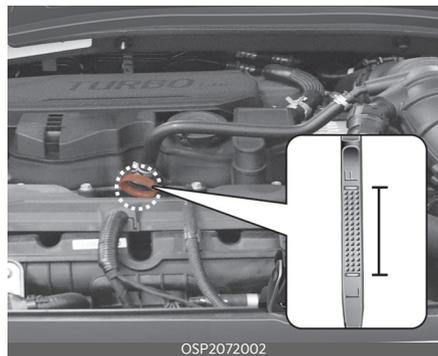
### Checking the engine oil level

Engine oil is used for lubricating, cooling, and operating various hydraulic components in the engine. Engine oil consumption whilst driving is normal, and it is necessary to check and refill the engine oil regularly. Also, check and refill the oil level within the recommended maintenance schedule to prevent deterioration of oil performance. Check the engine oil following the below procedure.

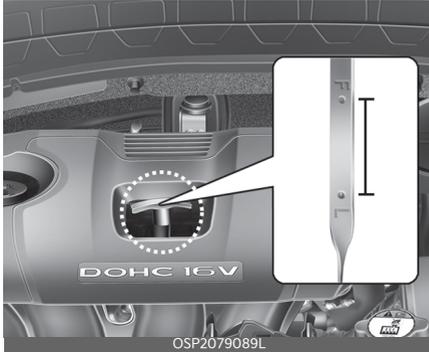
(Petrol) 1.6 MPI



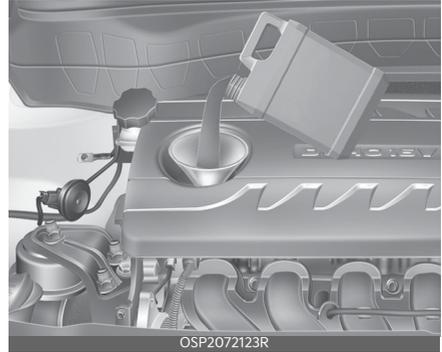
Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi



(Petrol) 2.0 MPI

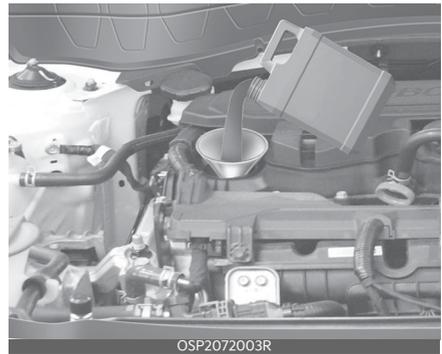


(Petrol) 1.6 MPI

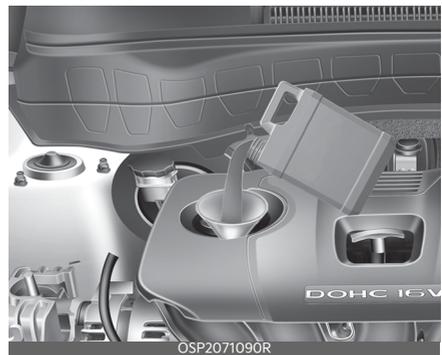


1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off, remove the oil filler cap and pull the dipstick out. Wait for 15 minutes for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Wipe the dipstick clean and re-insert it fully.
5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. Check if the oil level is between the F-L line, and if it is below the L line, add enough oil to bring the level to F line.

Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi



(Petrol) 2.0 MPI



**WARNING**

**Radiator hose**

Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.

**CAUTION**

When you wipe the oil level gauge, you should wipe it with a clean cloth. When mixed with debris, it can cause engine damage.

**Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components. Use only the specified engine oil.**

(Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" on page 8-7.)

- Do not spill engine oil when adding or changing engine oil. Wipe off spilled oil immediately.
- The engine oil consumption may increase whilst you break in a new vehicle and it will be stabilized after driving 6,000 km (4,000 miles).
- The engine oil consumption can be affected by driving habits, climate conditions, traffic conditions, oil quality, etc. Therefore, it is recommended that you inspect the engine oil level regularly and refill it if necessary.

## Changing the engine oil and filter

Have the engine oil and filter replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- If the maintenance schedule to replace engine oil is exceeded, the engine oil performance may deteriorate, and the engine condition may be affected. Therefore, replace the engine oil according to the maintenance schedule.
- To keep the engine in optimal condition, use the recommended engine oil and filter. If the recommended engine oil and filter are not used replace it according to the maintenance schedule under severe usage conditions.
- The purpose of the maintenance schedule for engine oil replacement is to prevent oil deterioration and it is irrelevant to oil consumption. Check and refill engine oil regularly.

### WARNING

#### Used engine oil

Used engine oil may cause irritation or cancer of the skin if left in contact with

the skin for prolonged periods of time. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.

Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

### CAUTION

The engine oil is very hot immediately after the vehicle has been driven and can cause burns during replacement. Replace the engine oil after the engine oil has cooled down.

### NOTICE

#### For Smartstream G1.6 T-GDi

When the oil pressure is low due to insufficient engine oil, the Engine Oil Pressure () warning light will illuminate. In addition, the enhanced engine protection system, which limits the engine's power is activated and the Malfunction Indicator Lamp () will illuminate when the vehicle is driven in this state continuously.

When the engine oil pressure is restored, the Engine Oil Pressure warning light and the enhanced engine protection system will turn off after the engine is restarted.

## Engine coolant

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year round anti-freeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season, and before travelling to a colder climate.

### Recommended coolant

When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or damage.

- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an phosphate based ethylene-glycol coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- Do not use alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.
- The cooling circuit of a vehicle equipped with a heat pump system may freeze in extremely low temperature when the concentration of the antifreezing liquid is below 45%.

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

Ambient Temperature	Mixture Percentage (volume)	
	Antifreeze	Water
-15 °C	35	65
-25 °C	40	60

Ambient Temperature	Mixture Percentage (volume)	
	Antifreeze	Water
-35 °C	50	50
-45 °C	60	40

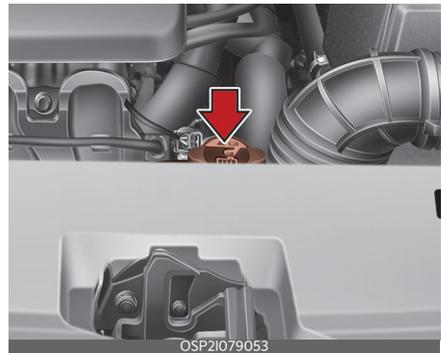
### WARNING



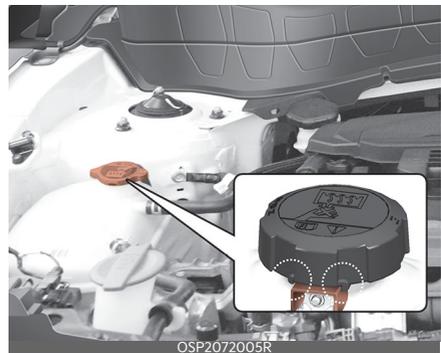
#### Radiator cap

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure which may result in serious injury.

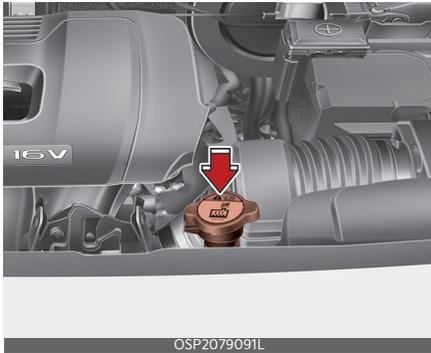
(Petrol) 1.6 MPI



Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi

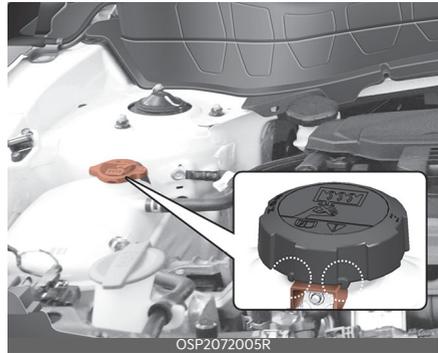


(Petrol) 2.0 MPI



OSP2079091L

Engine room rear view



OSP2072005R

**\* NOTICE**

Make sure the coolant cap is properly closed after refill or coolant.

Otherwise the engine could be overheated whilst driving.

1. Check if the radiator cap label is straight in front.

Engine room front view

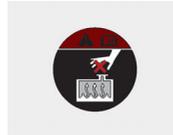


ODEEV098003NR

2. Make sure that the tiny protrusions inside the coolant cap are securely interlocked.

**Checking the coolant level**

**⚠ WARNING**



**Removing radiator cap**

Never attempt to remove the radiator cap whilst the engine

is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system damage and could result in serious personal injury from escaping hot coolant or steam.

1. Turn the vehicle off and wait until it cools down.
2. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop.
3. Step back whilst the pressure is released from the cooling system.
4. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.

## ⚠ WARNING



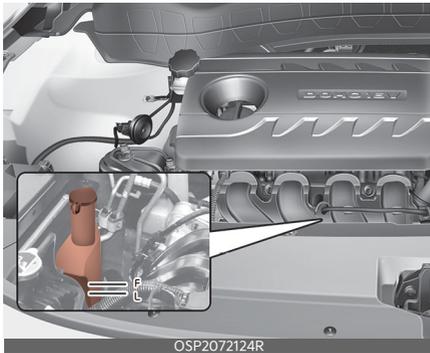
### Cooling fan

Use caution when working near the blade of the cooling fan. The electric motor

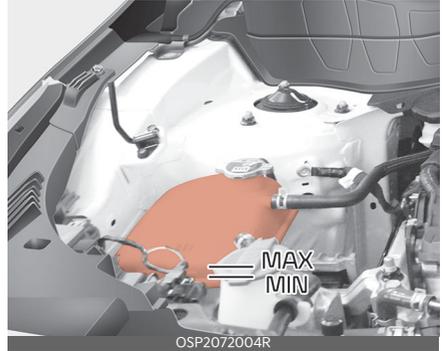
(cooling fan) is controlled by coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. It may sometimes operate even when the vehicle is not running.

5. Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses.
6. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.
7. Check the coolant level. The coolant level should be filled between F and L marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine room is cool.

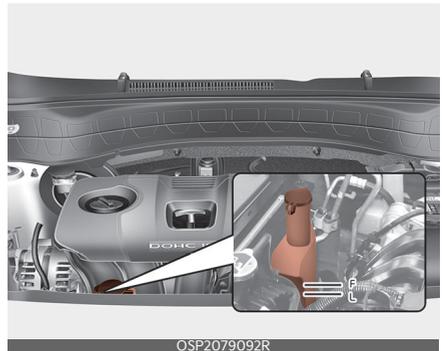
(Petrol) 1.6 MPI



Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi



(Petrol) 2.0 MPI



8. If the coolant level is low, add enough specified coolant to provide protection against freezing and corrosion. Bring the level to F, but do not overfill.

If frequent additions are required, we recommend that the system be inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Changing the coolant

We recommend that the coolant be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer according to the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this chapter.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Put a thick cloth or fabric around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as the alternator.

**⚠ WARNING****Coolant**

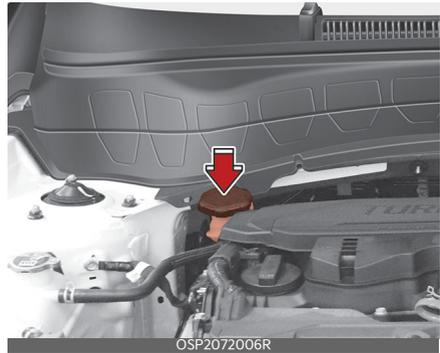
- Do not use radiator coolant or anti-freeze in the washer fluid reservoir.
- Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.

**Brake/clutch fluid**

The brake/clutch fluid acts to transmit force to the brake when the driver depresses the brake pedal. Brake/clutch fluid must be maintained periodically to ensure that the brakes operate smoothly.

**Checking the brake/clutch fluid level**

Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.



1. Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake/clutch fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake/clutch fluid contamination.
2. If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings. If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the system be checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. Use only the specified brake/clutch fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" on page 8-7.)

Never mix different types of fluid.

### **⚠ WARNING**

In the event the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid, we recommend that the system be checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### **⚠ WARNING**

When changing and adding brake/clutch fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake/clutch fluid should come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

#### **Brake/clutch fluid**

Do not allow brake/clutch fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result.

The brake/clutch fluid constantly absorbs moisture from the air. This lowers the boiling point of the brake/clutch fluid. If the boiling point is too low, vapour pockets may form in the brake system when the brakes are applied hard.

Brake/clutch fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be disposed of properly.

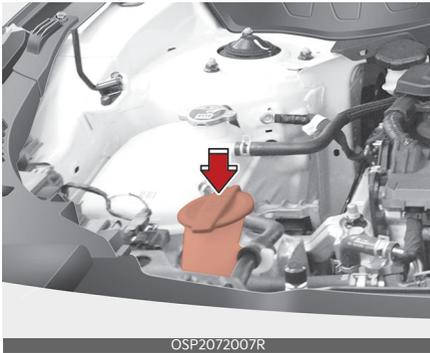
### **⚠ CAUTION**

To maintain your vehicle's best brake and ABS/ESC performance, use Kia genuine brake fluid or those of an equivalent standard brake fluid as in the specification. (Classification : SAE J1704 DOT4 LV, ISO4925 CLASS-6, FMVSS116 DOT-4)

## Washer fluid

Washer fluid is used when wiping the windscreen of the vehicle with a windscreen wiper. You should check and refill washer fluid periodically to make sure that it doesn't run out.

### Checking the washer fluid level



The reservoir is translucent so that you can check the level with a quick visual inspection.

- Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

### **⚠ WARNING**

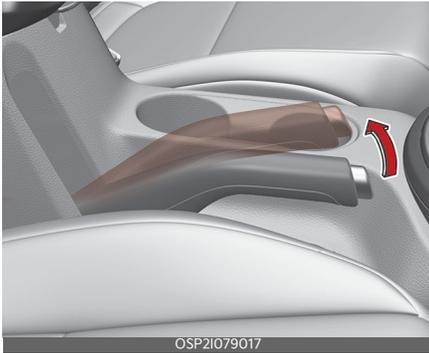
#### Washer Fluid

- Do not use radiator coolant or anti-freeze in the washer fluid reservoir.
- Windscreen Washer fluid agents contain some amounts of alcohol and can be flammable under certain circumstances. Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Damage to the vehicle or occupants could occur.

- Windscreen washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals. Do not drink and avoid contacting windscreen washer fluid. Serious injury or death could occur.

## Parking brake

### Checking the parking brake



Check the stroke of the parking brake by counting the number of "clicks" heard whilst fully applying it from the released position. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

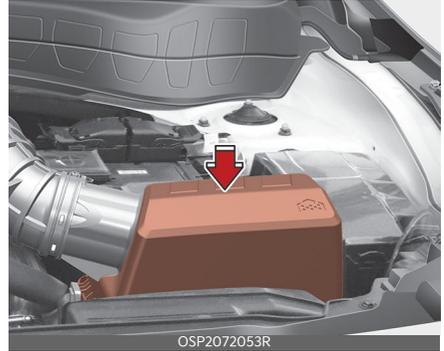
**Stroke: 5~7 "clicks" at a force of 20 kg (44 lbs, 196 N).**

## Air cleaner filter

When the filter is replaced, we highly recommend using a Kia Genuine Parts or those of an equivalent standard.

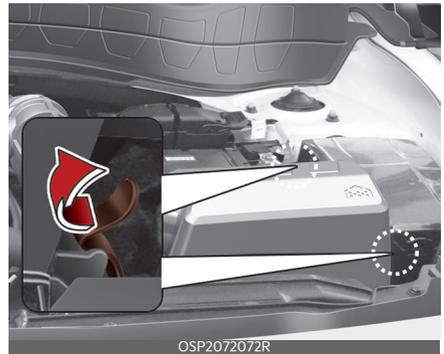
### Replacing air cleaner filter

Air cleaner filter must be replaced when necessary, and should not be washed.

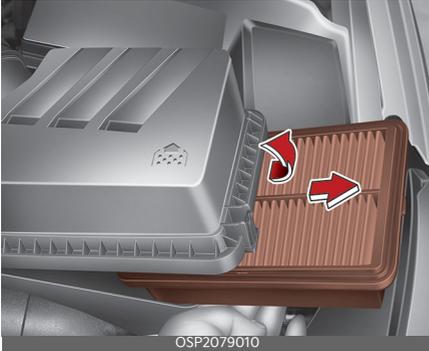


You can clean the filter when inspecting the air cleaner compartment. Clean the filter by using compressed air.

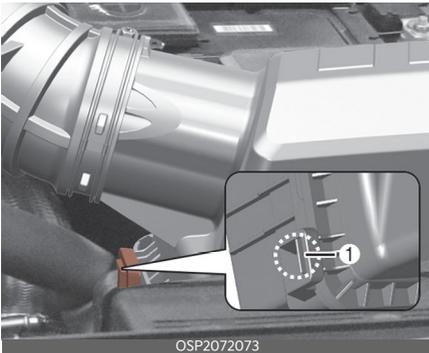
1. Loosen the air cleaner cover attaching clips and open the cover.



2. Wipe the inside of the air cleaner.
3. Replace the air cleaner filter.



4. Insert the air cleaner cover in the hinge (1) and close the cover, then lock the cover with attaching clips.



5. Check that the cover is firmly installed.

Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals. (Refer to "Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions" on page 7-25.)

### **CAUTION**

#### **Air filter maintenance**

- Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.

- When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.
- Use parts for replacement from a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Climate control air filter

The climate control air filter should be replaced according to the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is operated in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier.

### Inspecting and replacing climate control air filter

When you replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure. Be careful to avoid damaging other components.

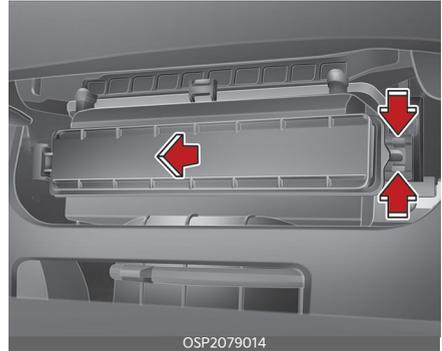
1. Open the glove box.



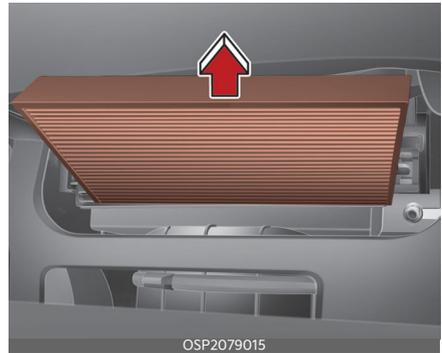
2. Remove the support rod.



3. Remove the climate control air filter cover by pulling out right side of the cover.



4. Replace the climate control air filter.



5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

When replacing the climate control air filter install it properly. Otherwise, the system may produce noise and the effectiveness of the filter may be reduced.

## Wiper blades

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.

The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.

## Blade inspection



### \* NOTICE

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windscreen difficult to clean. And it is the responsibility of customers to wash and manage the vehicle with adequate methods and materials.

Contamination of either the windscreen or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windscreen wipers. Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial vehicle washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner

or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

### ⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.

## Front windscreen wiper blade



To inspect or replace the windscreen wiper blades and to prevent damaging the bonnet, move the windscreen wiper blades as follows;

## Replacing front windscreen wiper blade

### Type A

1. Raise the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.

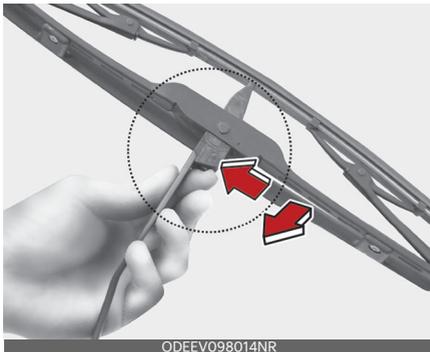


### ⚠ CAUTION

#### Wiper arms

- Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windscreen, since it may chip or crack the windscreen.

2. Compress the clip and slide the blade assembly downward.



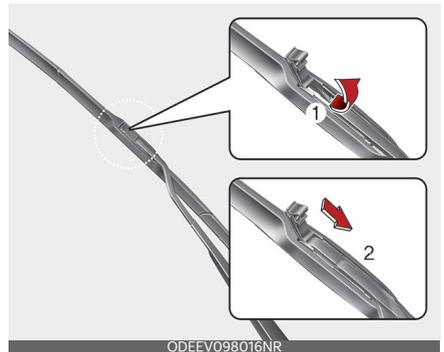
3. Lift it off the arm.



4. Install the blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.

### Type B

1. Raise the wiper arm.
2. Lift up the wiper blade clip. Then pull down the blade assembly and remove it.



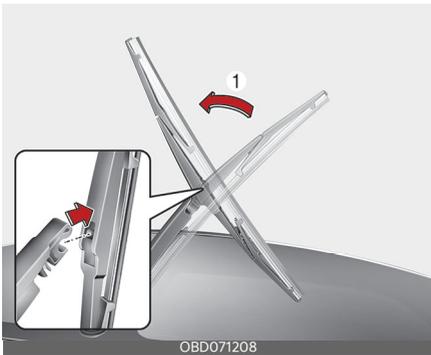
3. Install the new blade assembly.



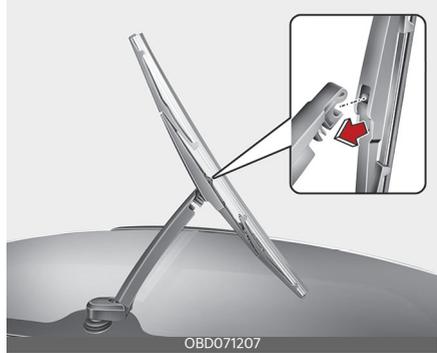
4. Return the wiper arm on the windscreen.
5. Turn ignition to the ON position and wiper arms will return to the normal operating position.

### Replacing rear window wiper blade

1. Raise the wiper arm and pull out the wiper blade assembly(1).



2. Install the new blade assembly by inserting the centre part into the slot in the wiper arm until it clicks into place.

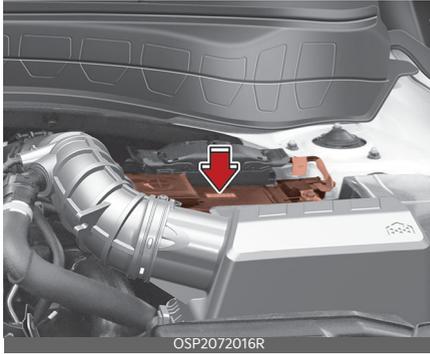


3. Make sure the blade assembly is installed firmly by trying to pull it slightly. To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, have the wiper blade replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Battery

The battery powers the engine in order to move the vehicle as well as supplying power to the various devices installed in the vehicle.

### For best battery service



- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

### \* NOTICE

Basically equipped battery is maintenance free type. If your vehicle is equipped with the battery marked with LOWER and UPPER on the side, you can check the electrolyte level. The electrolyte level should be between LOWER and UPPER. If the electrolyte level is low, it needs to add distilled (demineralized) water (Never add sulfuric acid or other electrolyte). When refill, be careful not to

splash the battery and adjacent components. And do not overfill the battery cells. It can cause corrosion on other parts. After then ensure that tighten the cell caps. Contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### ⚠ WARNING

#### Battery dangers



Always read the following instructions carefully when handling a battery.



Keep lighted cigarettes and all other flames or sparks away from the battery.



Hydrogen, a highly combustible gas, is always present in battery cells and may explode if ignited.



Keep batteries out of the reach of children because batteries contain highly corrosive SULFURIC ACID. Do not allow bat-

tery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint finish.



If any electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medi-

cal attention. If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel a pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.



Wear eye protection when charging or working near a battery. Always provide ventilation when working in an

enclosed space.



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.



The battery contains lead. Do not dispose of it after use. Please return the battery to an authorised Kia dealer to be recycled.

- When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak, resulting in personal injury. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.
- Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.
- The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. Never touch these components with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Failure to follow the above warnings can result in serious bodily injury or death.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If you use unauthorised electronic devices, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorised devices.

**Battery capacity label**

example



\* The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. 12 V: The nominal voltage
2. 60 Ah: The nominal capacity
3. 550 A: The cold-test current

**Battery recharging**

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlights or interior lights were left on whilst the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load whilst the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20~30 A for two hours.

**⚠ WARNING**

When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:

- The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.

- Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.
- Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate in following cases:
  1. The battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently
  2. The electrolyte temperature of any cell exceeds 49 °C.
- Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.
- Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.
  1. Turn off the battery charger main switch.
  2. Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.
  3. Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.
- Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the vehicle.
- The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.

visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in severe injury

### Reset items

The following items should be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window (Refer to "Window opening and closing" on page 4-38)
- Trip computer (Refer to "Trip information (trip computer)" on page 4-76)
- Climate control system (Refer to "Automatic climate control system" on page 4-138)

### CAUTION

#### AGM battery (if equipped)

- Absorbent Glass Mat (AGM) batteries are maintenance free and have the AGM battery serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

For charging your AGM battery, use only fully automatic battery chargers that are specially developed for AGM batteries.

- When replacing the AGM battery, use parts for replacement from a professional workshop. Kia recommends to

## Tyres and wheels

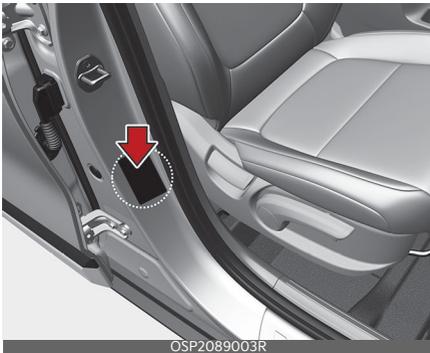
For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain the recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

### Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures

All tyre pressures should be checked when the tyres are cold. "Cold Tyres" means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km.

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, vehicle handling, and minimum tyre wear.

For recommended inflation pressure, refer to "Tyres and wheels" on page 8-6. All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the driver's side centre pillar.



#### **⚠ WARNING**

### Tyre underinflation

Inflate your tyres consistent with the instructions provided in this manual. Regularly check the tyre inflation pressure, and correct it as needed: at least twice a month and before any long trips

on the road. If you fail to observe this precaution, you may be driving on underinflated tyres, which may not only compromise your vehicle's driving stability, but also lead to tyre damage and the risk of an accident. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.

Failure to maintain specified pressure may result in excessive wear, poor handling, reduced fuel economy, deformation of tyre and/or wheel, harsh ride conditions, possibility for additional damage from road hazards, or result in tyre failure.

### Tyre pressure

Always observe the following:

- Check tyre pressure when the tyres are cold. (After vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or hasn't been driven more than 1.6 km since startup.)
- Check the pressure of your spare tyre each time you check the pressure of other tyres.
- Never overload your vehicle. Be careful not to overload a vehicle luggage rack if your vehicle is equipped with one.
- Warm tyres normally exceed recommended cold tyre pressures by 28~41 kPa. Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure or the tyres will be underinflated.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

### Tyre Inflation

Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre fail-

ure. This could result in loss of vehicle control and potential injury.

### Checking tyre inflation pressure

Check your tyres once a month or more. Use a good quality gauge to check tyre pressure. You cannot tell if your tyres are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tyres may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated.

Check the tyres inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting or at least three hours or driven no more than 1.6 km.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.
2. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tyre and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary.
3. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.
4. If you overfill the tyre, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve.
5. Recheck the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge.
6. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

Inspect your tyres frequently for proper inflation as well as wear and damage. Always use a tyre pressure gauge.

Tyres with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly. This could result in poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tyre failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. The recommended cold tyre pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar.

### Tyre rotation

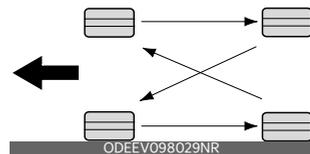
To equalize tread wear, it is recommended that the tyres be rotated every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tyres for correct balance.

When rotating tyres, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tyre pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tyre. Replace the tyre if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tyre if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tyre pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness. (proper torque is 11~13 kgf·m)

Refer to "Tyres and wheels" on page 8-6.

Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tyres are rotated.



Rotate radial tyres that have an asymmetric tread pattern only from front to rear and not from right to left.

## ⚠ WARNING

### Mixing tyres

- Do not use the compact spare tyre (if equipped) for tyre rotation.
- Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tyres under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics.

### Wheel alignment and tyre balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tyre life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tyre wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### Wheel weight

Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.

### Tyre replacement

If the tyre is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator (A) will appear as a solid band across the tread.



This shows there is less than 1.6 mm of tread left on the tyre. Replace the tyre when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tyre.

The Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) works by comparing the speed of the wheels. The tyre size affects wheel speed. When replacing tyres, all 4 tyres must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tyres of a different size can cause the ABS and Electronic Stability Control (ESC) to work irregularly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that is not possible, or necessary, then replace the two front or two rear tyres as a pair. Replacing just one tyre can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.

## \* NOTICE

We recommend that when replacing tyres, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles. If not, that affects driving performance.

## Compact spare tyre replacement (if equipped)

A compact spare tyre has a shorter tread life than a regular size tyre.

Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tyre. The replacement compact spare tyre should be the same size and design tyre as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tyre wheel. The compact spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tyre wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tyre.

## Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

A wheel with an incorrect size may adversely affect many things: wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tyre clearance, snow chain clearance, speedometer and odometer calibration, headlight aiming and bumper height.

### **CAUTION**

#### Wheels

Wheels that do not meet Kia specifications may fit poorly and result in damage to the vehicle or unusual handling and poor vehicle control.

## Tyre traction

Tyre traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tyre, tyre that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces.

tyres should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. Slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road to reduce the possibility of losing control of the vehicle.

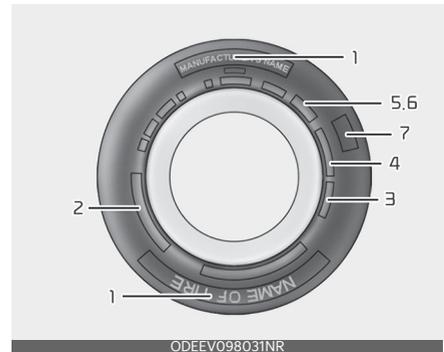
## Tyre maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tyre wear.

If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment. When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tyre life. Additionally, a tyre should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

## Tyre sidewall labeling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tyre and also provides the tyre Identification Number (TIN) for safety standard certification.



The TIN can be used to identify the tyre in case of a recall.

### 1. Manufacturer or brand name

Manufacturer or Brand name is shown.

## 2. Tyre size designation

A tyre's sidewall is marked with a tyre size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tyres for your vehicle. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tyre size designation mean.

Example tyre size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tyre size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

### 225/45R17 91V

- 225: tyre width in millimeters.
- 45: Aspect ratio. The tyre's section height as a percentage of its width.
- R: tyre construction code (Radial).
- 17: Rim diameter in inches.
- 91: Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tyre can carry.
- V: Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

## Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

### 7.0JX17

- 7.0: Rim width in inches.
- J: Rim contour designation.
- 17: Rim diameter in inches.

## Tyre speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger vehicle tyre. The speed rating is part of the tyre size designation

on the sidewall of the tyre. This symbol corresponds to that tyre's designed maximum safe operating speed.

Speed Rating Symbol	Maximum Speed
S	180 km/h
T	190 km/h
H	210 km/h
V	240 km/h
W	270 km/h
Y	300 km/h

## 3. Checking tyres life

Any tyres that are over 6 years old, based on the manufacturing date, should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT code. The DOT code is a series of numbers on a tyre consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

### DOT: XXXX XXXX OOOO

The front part of the DOT means a plant code number, tyre size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1623 represents that the tyre was produced in the 16th week of 2023.

## WARNING

### Tyres age

Replace tyres within the recommended time frame. Failure to replace tyres as recommended can result in sudden tyre failure, which could lead to a loss of control and an accident.

#### 4. Tyre ply composition and material

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tyre. tyre manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tyre, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

#### 5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tyre. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure.

Refer to "Tyres and wheels" on page 8-6 for recommended inflation pressure.

#### 6. Maximum load rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tyre. When replacing the tyres on the vehicle, always use a tyre that has the same load rating as the factory installed tyre.

#### 7. Uniform tyre quality grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tyre sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

- TREADWEAR 200
- TRACTION AA
- TEMPERATURE A

Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, we recommend

that tyres be replaced after approximately six (6) years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climate or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process.

#### Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tyre when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tyre graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tyre graded 100.

The relative performance of tyres depends upon the actual conditions of their use. Performance may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the sidewalls of passenger vehicle tyres. The tyres available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicle may vary with respect to grade.

#### Traction - AA, A, B & C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tyre's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tyre marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

## Temperature -A, B & C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tyres resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tyre to degenerate and reduce tyre life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tyre failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

### WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

### WARNING

#### Tyre temperature

The temperature grade for this tyre is established for a tyre that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up in tyre and sudden tyre failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and serious injury or death.

## Tyre terminology and definitions

Refer to the following for detailed definitions of the terms that are found in the tyre description.

**Air Pressure** The amount of air inside the tyre pressing outward on the tyre.

Air pressure is expressed in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascal (kPa).

**Accessory Weight** The combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are automatic transmission, power seats, and air conditioning.

**Aspect Ratio** The relationship of a tyre's height to its width.

**Belt** A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

**Bead** The tyre bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tyre onto the rim.

**Bias Ply Tyre** A pneumatic tyre in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centre of the tread.

**Cold tyre Pressure** The amount of air pressure in a tyre, measured in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa) before a tyre has built up heat from driving.

**Kerb Weight** The weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment (including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant), but without passengers and cargo.

**DOT Markings** The DOT code includes the tyre Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tyre manufacturer, production plant, brand and date of production.

**GVWR** Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

**GAWR FRT** Gross Axle Weight Rating for the Front axle.

**GAWR RR** Gross Axle Weight Rating for the Rear axle.

**Intended Outboard Sidewall** The side of an asymmetrical tyre that must

always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

**Kilopascal (kPa)** The metric unit for air pressure.

**Light truck (LT) Tyre** A tyre designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles.

**Load ratings** The maximum load that a tyre is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.

**Load Index** An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tyre.

**Maximum Inflation Pressure** The maximum air pressure to which a cold tyre may be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

**Maximum Load Rating** The load rating for a tyre at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tyre.

**Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight** The sum of kerb weight; accessory weight; vehicle capacity weight; and production options weight.

**Normal Occupant Weight** The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 68 kg (150 lbs.).

**Occupant Distribution** Designated seating positions.

**Outward Facing Sidewall** The side of an asymmetrical tyre that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The outward facing sidewall bears white lettering or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the inner facing sidewall.

**Passenger (P-Metric) Tyre** Tyre used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

**Ply** A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

**Pneumatic tyre** A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load.

**Production options weight** The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 2.3 kg (5 lb.) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in kerb weight or accessory weight. Examples include heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

**Recommended Inflation Pressure** Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tyre inflation pressure and shown on the tyre placard.

**Radial Ply Tyre** A pneumatic tyre in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centre of the tread.

**Rim** A metal support for a tyre and upon which the tyre beads are seated.

**Sidewall** The portion of a tyre between the tread and the bead.

**Speed Rating** An alphanumeric code assigned to a tyre indicating the maximum speed at which a tyre can operate.

**Traction** The friction between the tyre and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

**Tread** The portion of a tyre that comes into contact with the road.

**Treadwear Indicators** Narrow bands, sometimes called "wear bars," that show across the tread of a tyre when only 1.6 mm (2/32 inch) of tread remains.

**UTQGS** Uniform tyre Quality Grading Standards, a tyre information system

that provides consumers with ratings for a tyre's traction, temperature and tread-wear. Ratings are determined by tyre manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tyre.

**Vehicle Capacity Weight** The weight of designated seating positions multiplied by 68 kg (150 lbs.) plus the rated cargo and luggage load.

**Vehicle Maximum Load on the tyre** Load on an individual tyre due to kerb and accessory weight plus maximum occupant and cargo weight.

**Vehicle Normal Load on the tyre** Load on an individual tyre that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the kerb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight and driving by 2.

**Vehicle Placard** A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the original equipment tyre size and recommended inflation pressure.

## All season tyres

Kia specifies all season tyres on some models to provide good performance for use all year round, including snowy and icy road conditions.

All season tyres are identified by ALL SEASON and/or M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tyre sidewall. Snow tyres have better snow traction than all season tyres and may be more appropriate in some areas.

## Summer tyres

Kia specifies summer tyres on some models to provide superior performance on dry roads.

Summer tyre performance is substantially reduced in snow and ice. Summer tyres do not have the tyre traction rating

M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tyre side wall. If you plan to operate your vehicle in snowy or icy conditions, Kia recommends the use of snow tyres or all season tyres on all four wheels.

## Snow tyres

If you equip your vehicle with snow tyres, they should be the same size and have the same load capacity as the original tyres.

Snow tyres should be installed on all four wheels; otherwise, poor handling may result.

Snow tyres should carry 4 psi (28 kPa) more air pressure than the pressure recommended for the standard tyres on the tyre label on the driver's side of the centre pillar, or up to the maximum pressure shown on the tyre sidewall, whichever is less.

Do not drive faster than 120 km/h (75 mph) when your vehicle is equipped with snow tyres.

## WARNING

Do not use summer tyres at temperatures below 7 °C (45 °F) or when driving on snow or ice. At temperatures below 7 °C (45 °F), summer tyres can lose elasticity, and therefore traction and braking power as well. Change the tyres on your vehicle to winter or all-weather tyres of the same size as the standard tyres of the vehicle. Both types of tyres are identified by the M+S (Mud and Snow) marking. Using summer tyres at very cold temperatures could cause cracks to form, thereby damaging the tyres permanently.

## Tyre chains

tyre chains, if necessary, should be installed on the front wheels.

Be sure that the chains are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

To minimise tyre and chain wear, do not continue to use tyre chains when they are no longer needed.

- When driving on roads covered with snow or ice, drive at less than 30 km/h (20 mph).
- Use the SAE "S" class or wire chains.
- If you hear noise caused by chains contacting the body, retighten the chain to avoid contact with the vehicle body.
- To prevent body damage, retighten the chains after driving 0.5~1.0 km (0.3~0.6 miles).
- Do not use tyre chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels. In unavoidable circumstance, use a wire type chain.
- Use wire chains less than 12 mm (0.47 inches) to prevent damage to the chain's connection.

### Radial-ply tyres

Radial-ply tyres provide improved tread life, road hazard resistance and smoother high speed ride.

The radial-ply tyres used on this vehicle are of belted construction, and are selected to complement the ride and handling characteristics of your vehicle. Radial-ply tyres have the same load carrying capacity, as bias-ply or bias belted tyres of the same size, and use the same recommended inflation pressure.

Mixing of radial-ply tyres with bias-ply or bias belted tyres is not recommended. Any combinations of radial-ply and bias-ply or bias belted tyres when used on the same vehicle will seriously deteriorate vehicle handling. The best rule to

follow is: Identical radial-ply tyres should always be used as a set of four.

Longer wearing tyres can be more susceptible to irregular tread wear. It is very important to follow the tyre rotation interval shown in this section to achieve the tread life potential of these tyres. Cuts and punctures in radial-ply tyres are repairable only in the tread area, because of sidewall flexing. Consult your tyre dealer for radial-ply tyre repairs.

### Low aspect ratio tyre (if equipped)

Low aspect ratio tyres, whose aspect ratio is lower than 50, are provided for sporty looks.

Because the low aspect ratio tyres are optimized for handling and braking, it may be more uncomfortable to ride in and there is more noise compare with normal tyres.

### CAUTION

Because the sidewall of the low aspect ratio tyre is shorter than the normal, the wheel and tyre of the low aspect ratio tyre is easier to be damaged. So, follow the instructions below.

- When driving on a rough road or off road, drive cautiously because tyres and wheels may be damaged. And after driving, inspect tyres and wheels.
- When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or kerb stone, drive slowly so that the tyres and wheels are not damaged.
- If the tyre is impacted, we recommend that you inspect the tyre condition or contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- To prevent damage to the tyre, inspect the tyre condition and pressure every 3,000 km.

**CAUTION**

- It is not easy to recognize the tyre damage with your own eyes. But if there is the slightest hint of tyre damage, even though you cannot see the tyre damage with your own eyes, have the tyre checked or replaced because the tyre damage may cause air leakage from the tyre.
- If the tyre is damaged by driving on a rough road, off road, pothole, man-hole, or kerb stone, it will not be covered by the warranty.
- You can find out the tyre information on the tyre sidewall.

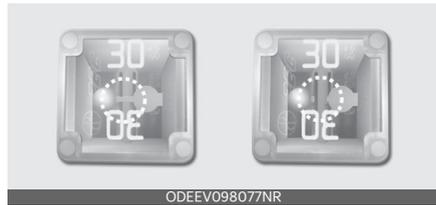
**Fuses**

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

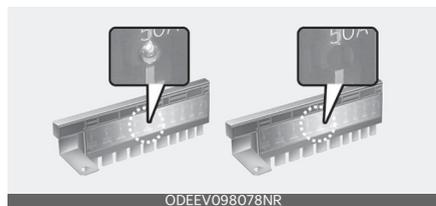
Blade type



Cartridge type



Multi fuse



BFT



\* Left side: Normal, Right side: Blown

This vehicle has 2 (or 3) fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the other in the engine compartment near the battery.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will melt.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel. If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and immediately consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Three kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, and multi fuse for higher amperage ratings.

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### **Fuse replacement**

- Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.
- A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly a fire.
- Never install a wire or aluminum foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and a possible fire.
- Do not arbitrarily modify or add-on electric wiring to the vehicle.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

### **\* NOTICE**

- When replacing a fuse, turn the ignition 'OFF' and turn off switches of all electrical devices then remove battery (-) terminal.
- The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### **Electrical Fire**

Always ensure replacements fuses and relays are securely fastened when installed. Failure to do so can result in a vehicle fire.

Do not remove fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts. The fuses, relays and terminals may be fastened incompletely, and it may cause a possible fire. If fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts are blown, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

When replacing a blown fuse or relay, make sure the new fuse or relay fits tightly into the clips. Failure to tightly install the fuse or relay may cause damage to the wiring and electric systems.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

- Do not input any other objects except fuses or relays into fuse/relay terminals such as a screwdriver or wiring. It may cause contact failure and system malfunction.
- Do not plug in screwdrivers or after-market wiring into the terminal originally designed for fuse and relays only. The electrical system and wiring

of the vehicle interior may be damaged or burned due to contact failure.

- If you directly connect the wire on the taillight or replace the bulb which is over the regulated capacity to install trailers etc., the inner junction block can get burned.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Electrical wiring repairs**

All electrical repairs should be performed by authorised Kia dealerships using approved Kia parts. Using other wiring components, especially when retrofitting multimedia or theft alarm system, car phone or radio may cause vehicle damage and increase the risk of a vehicle fire.

**\* NOTICE**

**Remodeling Prohibited**

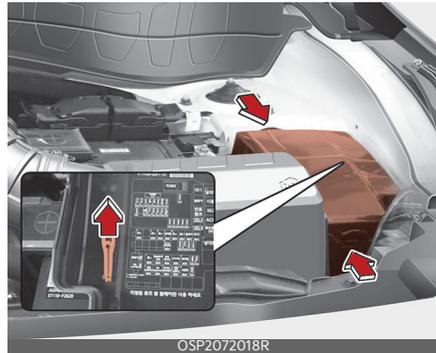
Do not rewire your vehicle in any way as doing so may affect the performance of several safety features in your vehicle. Rewiring your vehicle may also void your warranty and cause you to be responsible for any subsequent vehicle damage which may result.

**Replacing inner panel fuse**

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.



3. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided on the engine fuse panel cover.



4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. Spare fuses are provided in the engine compartment fuse panel.
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips.

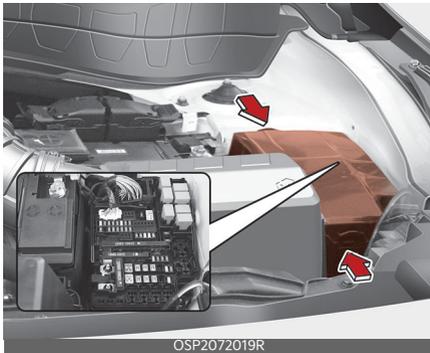
If it fits loosely, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the power outlet fuse.

If the head lamp, turn signal lamp, stop signal lamp, fog lamp, DRL, tail lamp, High Mounted Stop Lamp (HMSL) do not work and the fuses are OK, check the fuse panel in the engine compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced.

### Replacing engine compartment fuse

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tab and pulling the cover up.



3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

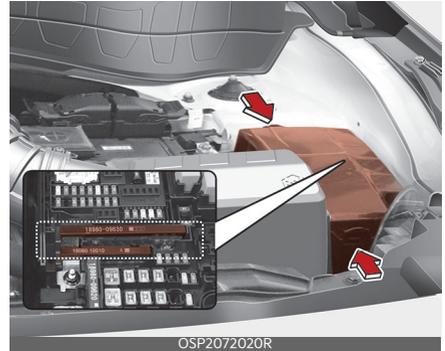
### **⚠ CAUTION**

After checking the fuse panel in the engine compartment, securely install the

fuse panel cover through the audible clicking sound.

If not, electrical failures may occur from water contact.

### Main fuse (Multi fuse)



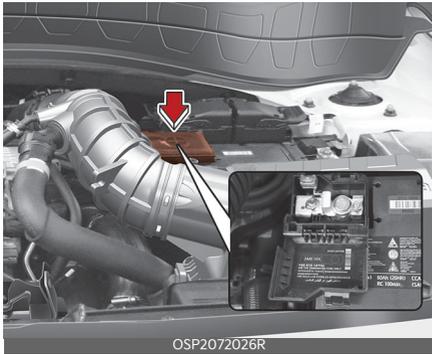
If the multi fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
4. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
5. Reverse these steps to reinstall the multi fuse.

### **\* NOTICE**

If the multi fuse is blown, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Battery fuse



If the battery fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
2. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
3. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
4. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

#### \* NOTICE

If the battery fuse is blown, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

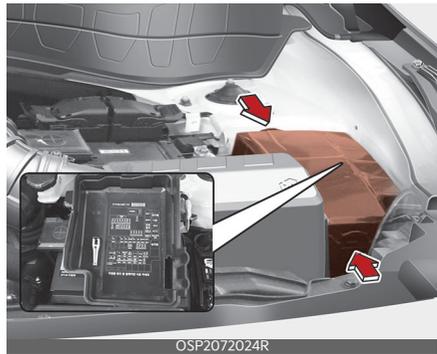
#### ⚠ CAUTION

Visually inspect the battery cap for secure closing. If the battery cap is not securely latched, the electrical system may be damaged to due influx of moisture into the system.

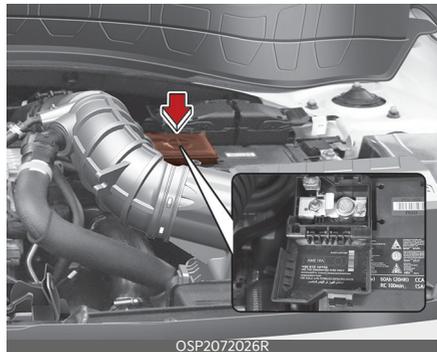
### Driver's side fuse panel



### Engine compartment fuse panel



### Engine compartment fuse panel (Battery terminal cover)



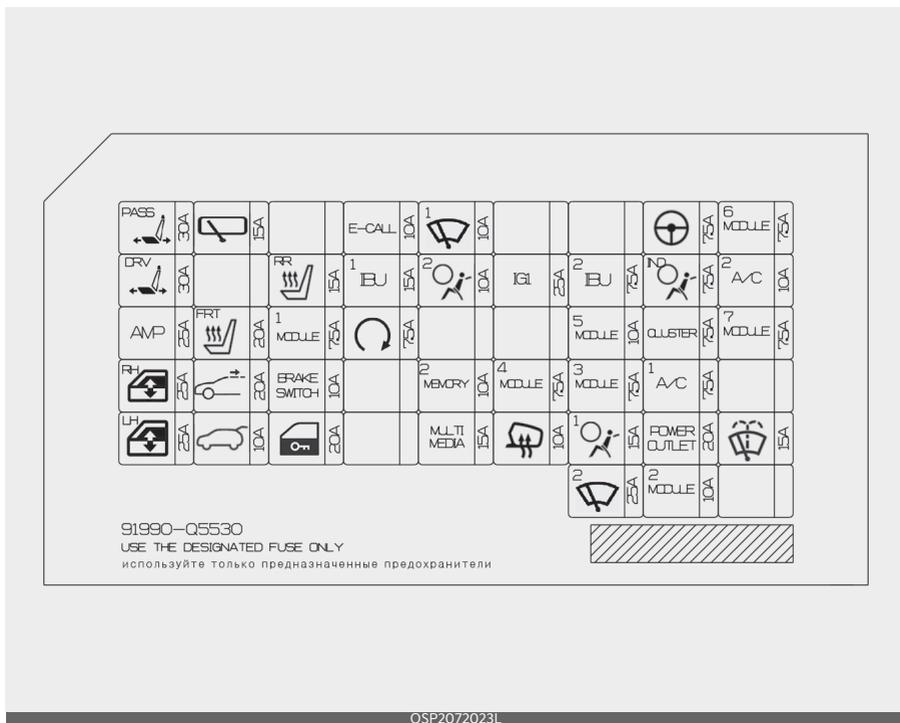
Inside the fuse/relay panel covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

**\* NOTICE**

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.

---

## Driver's side fuse panel



Refer to the following table for a description of the fuse.

### Instrument panel (Driver's side fuse panel)

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
P/SEAT (PASS)		30 A	Passenger Seat Manual Switch
P/SEAT (DRV)		30 A	IMS (Driver's memory seat) Control Module, Driver Seat Manual Switch
AMP		25 A	AMP (Amplifier)
P/WDW RH		25 A	Power Window Right Handle Side Relay, Driver Safety Power Window Module
P/WDW LH		25 A	Power Window Left Handle Side Relay, Driver Safety Power Window Module
WIPER RR		15 A	Rear Wiper Motor, ICM (Integrated Circuit Module) Relay Box (Rear Wiper Relay)
S/HEATER FRT		20 A	Front Air Ventilation Seat Module Front Seat Warmer Module

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
SUNROOF		20 A	Sunroof Unit
TAIL GATE OPEN		10 A	Tail Gate Relay
S/HEATER RR	<sup>RR</sup> 	15 A	Rear Seat Warmer Module
MODULE 1	<sup>1</sup> MODULE	7.5 A	Hazard Switch, Data Link Connector, Passenger Power Window Switch, Power Window Main Switch, Key Solenoid, Power Tail-gate, Telematics, IMS (Driver's memory seat) Control Module
BRAKE SWITCH	<b>BRAKE SWITCH</b>	10 A	Stop Lamp Switch, IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit)
DOOR LOCK		20 A	Door Lock Relay, Door Unlock Relay
E-CALL	<b>E-CALL</b>	10 A	E-Call Unit
IBU1	<sup>1</sup> IBU	15 A	IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit)
START		7.5 A	[Manual Transmission & Without Smart Key] Ignition Lock & Clutch Switch, IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit), Transmission Range Switch, Engine compartment fuse panel Relay (Start Relay) [With Burglar Alarm & Without Smart Key] ICM (Integrated Circuit Module) Relay Box (Burglar Alarm Relay) [Automatic Transmission] Transmission Range Switch [IVT] Position Switch
WIPER FRT1	<sup>1</sup> 	10 A	IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit), ECM (Engine Control Module) / PCM (Power train Control Module)
AIR BAG 2	<sup>2</sup> 	10 A	SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) Control Module
MEMORY 2	<sup>2</sup> MEMORY	10 A	ICM (Integrated Circuit Module) Relay Box (Outside Mirror Folding/Unfolding Relay), Instrument Cluster, Air Conditioner Control Module, Head-Up Display, Crash Pad Switch, Mood Lamp
MULTIMEDIA	<b>MULTI MEDIA</b>	15 A	Audio, Infotainment System Head Unit
IG1	<b>IG1</b>	25 A	PCB Block (Fuse Name - ABS3, EPB3, TCU3, ECU5)
MODULE 4	<sup>4</sup> MODULE	7.5 A	Front Radar, Clutch Sensor, IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit), Crash Pad Switch, AWD ECM (Engine Control Module), Electronic Parking Brake Switch, Front View Camera
HEATED MIRROR		10 A	ECM (Engine Control Module), PCM (Power train Control Module), Air Conditioner Control Module, Driver/Passenger Power Outside Mirror
IBU2	<sup>2</sup> IBU	7.5 A	IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit)

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
MODULE 5	<sup>5</sup> MODULE	10 A	Electro Chromic Mirror, Wireless Charger, Automatic Transmission Shift Lever Indicator, Console Switch Left Handle Side Relay, Audio, Infotainment System Head Unit, Air Conditioner Control Module, Crash Pad Switch, AMP (Amplifier), Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, E-Call Unit, Head Lamp Left Handle Side/Right Handle Side, Rear Seat Warmer Module, Front Seat Warmer Module, Overhead Console Lamp, Data Link Connector, IMS (Driver's memory seat) Control Module
MODULE 3	<sup>3</sup> MODULE	7.5 A	Stop Lamp Switch, Automatic Transmission Shift Lever
AIR BAG1	<sup>1</sup> 	15 A	SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) Control Module
FRT WIPER2	<sup>2</sup> 	25 A	PCB Block (Front Wiper (Low) Relay), Front Wiper Motor
MDPS		7.5 A	MDPS (Motor Driven Power Steering) Unit
A/BAG IND	<sup>IND</sup> 	7.5 A	Overhead Console Lamp, Instrument Cluster
CLUSTER	CLUSTER	7.5 A	Instrument Cluster, Head-Up Display
A/C1	<sup>1</sup> A/C	7.5 A	Engine Room Junction Block (Blower Relay), Air Conditioner Control Module
POWER OUTLET	POWER OUTLET	20 A	Front Power Outlet #2 (USB), Joint Connector (JMO4)
MODULE 2	<sup>2</sup> MODULE	10 A	USB Charger, IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit), Audio, Infotainment System Head Unit, Sound Mood Lamp, Front Power Outlet #2, AMP (Amplifier), Power Outside Mirror Switch, E-Call Unit, Driver/Passenger Door Mood Lamp, ICM (Integrated Circuit Module) Relay Box (Power Outlet Relay), EPB Switch
MODULE 6	<sup>6</sup> MODULE	7.5 A	IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit)
A/C2	<sup>2</sup> A/C	10 A	[Auto Air Conditioner] Blower Motor, Engine Room Junction Block (Blower Relay) [Manual Air Conditioner] Blower Resistor, Air Conditioner Control Module
MODULE 7	<sup>7</sup> MODULE	7.5 A	Front Deicer Box (Front Deicer Left Handle Side/Right Handle Side Relay)
WASHER		15 A	Multifunction Switch



### Engine compartment fuse panel (Battery terminal cover)



### Engine room compartment fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
ALT	ALT	150 A	Alternator, Engine Room Junction Block (Fuse Name - EPB1, Power tailgate, ABS1/EPB2, ABS2, AWD)
		200 A	
MDPS		80 A	MDPS (Motor Driven Power Steering) Unit
B+3	<sup>3</sup>	60 A	Instrument Panel Junction Block (IPS1, IPS2, IPS3, IPS7, IPS10, IPS13, IPS16, IPS20)
B+4	<sup>4</sup>	60 A	Instrument Panel Junction Block (Fuse Name - P/SEAT (PASS), P/SEAT (DRV), AMP, P/PWDW RH, P/PWDW LH, S/HEATER FRT, SUN-ROOF, TAIL GATE OPEN)
B+2	<sup>2</sup>	50 A	Instrument Panel Junction Block (IPS4, IPS5, IPS6, IPS8, IPS9, IPS11, IPS12, IPS14)
B+5	<sup>5</sup>	50 A	PCB Block (Main Relay, Fuse Name - A/C, B/ALARM HORN, ECU3, ECU4, HORN)

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
IG1	<b>IG1</b>	40 A	[With Smart Key] Engine Room Junction Block (IG1 Relay, ACC Relay) [Without Smart Key] Ignition Switch
BLOWER		40 A	Engine Room Junction Block (Blower Relay)
IG2	<b>IG2</b>	40 A	[With Smart Key] Engine Room Junction Block (Start Relay, IG2 Relay) [Without Smart Key] Engine Room Junction Block (Start Relay), Ignition Switch
POWER OUTLET	<b>POWER OUTLET</b>	25 A	ICM (Integrated Circuit Module) Relay Box (Power Outlet Relay)
TCU2	<sup>T2</sup> 	15 A	[Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDI] TCM (Transmission Control Module)
Head Lamp LH	HEAD LAMP LH	15A	Head Lamp Left Handle Side
Head Lamp RH	HEAD LAMP RH	15A	Head Lamp Right Handle Side
B+1	<sup>1</sup> 	50 A	Instrument Panel Junction Block (Long Term Load Auto Cut Relay, Fuse Name - S/HEATER RR, MODULE 1, BRAKE SWITCH, DOOR LOCK, IBU1, AIR BAG 2)
REAR HEATED		30 A	Engine Room Junction Block (Rear Defogger Relay)
CVVD	<b>CVVD</b>	40 A	[Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi] CVVD (Continuous Variable Valve Duration) Actuator
COOLING FAN2	<sup>2</sup> 	40 A	[(Petrol) 1.6 MPI/2.0 MPI] Engine Room Junction Block (Cooling Fan 2 Relay, Cooling Fan 1 Relay)
FUEL PUMP	<b>FUEL PUMP</b>	20 A	Engine Room Junction Block (Fuel Pump Relay)
TCU1	<sup>T1</sup> 	15 A	[(Petrol) 1.6 MPI] PCM (Power train Control Module) [Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi] TCM (Transmission Control Module) [(Petrol) 2.0 MPI] PCM (Power train Control Module)
EPB1	<sup>1</sup> 	60 A	[ESC] Electronic Stability Control Module
Power tailgate		40 A	Power Tailgate Module
ABS1	<sup>1</sup> 	40 A	[ABS] Anti-lock Brake System Control Module
EPB2	<sup>2</sup> 		[ESC] Electronic Stability Control Module
ABS2	<sup>2</sup> 	30 A	[ABS] Anti-lock Brake System Control Module [ESC] Electronic Stability Control Module
AWD		20 A	AWD ECM (Engine Control Module)

PCB Block

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
ECU1		20 A	[(Petrol) 1.6 MPI] PCM (Power train Control Module) / ECM (Engine Control Module) [Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi] ECM (Engine Control Module) [(Petrol) 2.0 MPI] PCM (Power train Control Module)
ECU2		10 A	[(Petrol) 1.6 MPI] PCM (Power train Control Module) / ECM (Engine Control Module) [Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi] ECM (Engine Control Module)
SENSOR3		15 A	Oxygen Sensor (Up/Down)
SENSOR1		10 A	[All] Oil Control Valve #1, Oil Control Valve #2, Air Conditioner Relay, Purge Control Solenoid Valve, Variable Oil Pump Solenoid [(Petrol) 1.6 MPI] Engine Room Junction Block (Cooling Fan 2 Relay, Cooling Fan 1 Relay) [Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi] Cooling Fan Motor, RCV (Recirculation Valve Control) Control Solenoid Valve [(Petrol) 2.0 MPI] Oil Control Valve #3, Engine Room Junction Block (Cooling Fan 2 Relay, Cooling Fan 1 Relay)
SENSOR2		10 A	Engine Room Junction Block (Fuel Pump Relay)
IGN COIL		20 A	Ignition Coil #1~#4 [(Gasoline) 1.6 MPI] Condenser
A/C		10 A	Air Conditioner Relay
B/ALARM HORN		10 A	Burglar Alarm Horn Relay
INJECTOR		15 A	[(Petrol) 1.6 MPI/2.0 MPI] Injector #1~#4
ABS3		10 A	ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)
EPB3			[ESC] Electronic Stability Control Module
TCU3		15 A	[(Petrol) 1.6 MPI] Transmission Range Switch [Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi] TCM (Transmission Control Module)
ECU5		10 A	[(Petrol) 1.6 MPI] PCM (Power train Control Module) /ECM (Engine Control Module) [Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi] ECM (Engine Control Module), CVVD (Continuous Variable Valve Duration) Actuator [(Petrol) 2.0 MPI] PCM (Power train Control Module)
ECU3		15 A	[(Petrol) 1.6 MPI] PCM (Power train Control Module)/ ECM (Engine Control Module) [Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi] ECM (Engine Control Module) [(Petrol) 2.0 MPI] PCM (Power train Control Module)
ECU4		15 A	[Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi] ECM (Engine Control Module)
HORN		15 A	Horn Relay

Refer to the following table for the relay type.

## Relay

Relay Name	Symbol	Type
IG1 Relay	<b>IG1</b>	MICRO
Blower Relay		MICRO
Fuel Pump Relay	<b>FUEL PUMP</b>	MICRO
Cooling Fan 2 Relay	<sup>2</sup> 	MICRO
Start Relay		MICRO
IG2 Relay	<b>IG2</b>	MICRO
ACC Relay	<b>ACC</b>	MICRO
Cooling Fan 1 Relay	<sup>1</sup> 	MICRO MINI
Rear Defogger Relay		MICRO MINI

## Light bulbs

Light bulbs are installed in various parts of the vehicle to provide lighting inside and outside the vehicle as well as to alert other vehicles.

### Bulb replacement precaution

Please keep extra bulbs on hand with appropriate wattage ratings in case of emergencies.

Refer to "Bulb wattage" on page 8-5.

When changing lamps, first turn off the vehicle at a safe place, firmly apply the parking brake and detach the battery's negative (-) terminal.

### ⚠ WARNING

#### Working on the lights

Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that turn the ignition switch and turn off the lights to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

Use only bulbs of the specified wattage.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### Light replacement

Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electric wiring system.

Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failure to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens. To prevent damage or fire, make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### Headlamp Lens

To prevent damage, do not clean the headlamp lens with chemical solvents or strong detergents.

### \* NOTICE

- If the light bulb or lamp connector is removed whilst the lamp is still on, the fuse box's electronic system may log it as a malfunction. Therefore, a lamp malfunction incident may be recorded as a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) in the fuse box.
- It is normal for an operating lamp to flicker momentarily. This is due to a stabilization function of the vehicle's electronic control device. If the lamp lights up normally after momentarily blinking, then it is functioning as normal.

However, if the lamp continues to flicker several times or turns off completely, there may be an error in the vehicle's electronic control device. In this case, have the vehicle checked by a professional workshop immediately. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### \* NOTICE

We recommend that the headlight aiming be adjusted by an authorised Kia dealer after an accident or after the headlight assembly is reinstalled.

### \* NOTICE

After driving in heavy rain or washing, headlamp and taillamp lenses could appear frosty. This condition is caused by the temperature difference between

the lamp inside and outside. This is similar to the condensation on your windows inside your vehicle during the rain and doesn't indicate a problem with your vehicle. If the water leaks into the lamp bulb circuitry, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

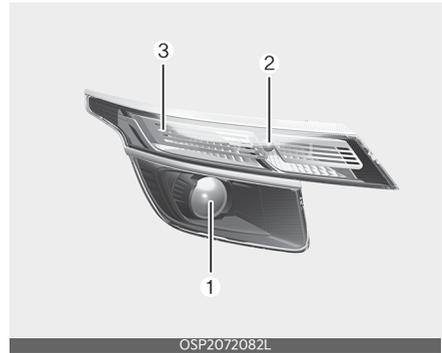
If you don't have the necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. In many cases, it is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true if you have to remove the headlamp assembly to get to the bulb(s).

Removing/installing the headlamp assembly can result in damage to the vehicle. Use only Kia Genuine Parts or those of an equivalent standard part. If not, it may lead to blowing a fuse or other wiring damages.

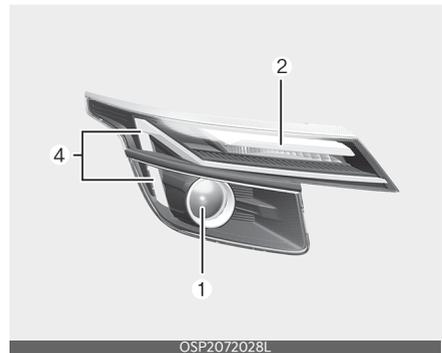
Do not install extra lamps or LEDs to the vehicle. If additional lights are installed, it may lead to lamp malfunctions and flickering. Additionally, the fuse box and other wiring may be damaged.

## Light bulb position (Front)

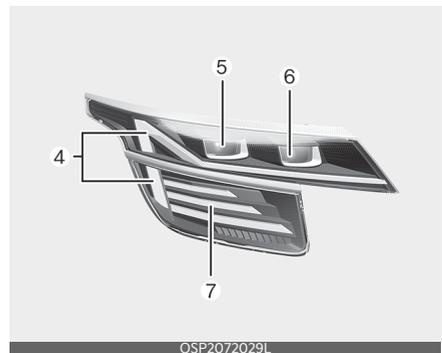
Headlamp - Type A



Headlamp - Type B



Headlamp - Type C



7

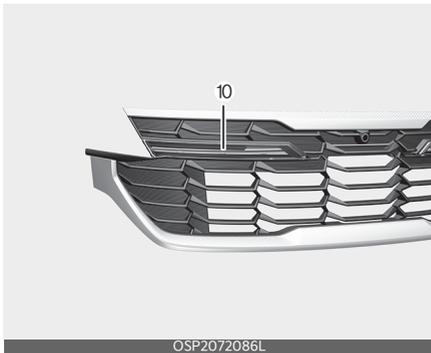
Fog lamp - Type A



Fog lamp - Type B



Position lamp

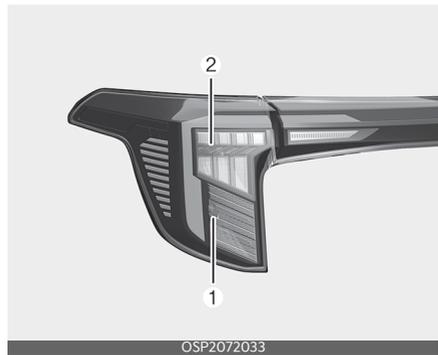


- 1. Headlamp (High/Low) (Bulb type)
- 2. Turn signal lamp (Bulb type)

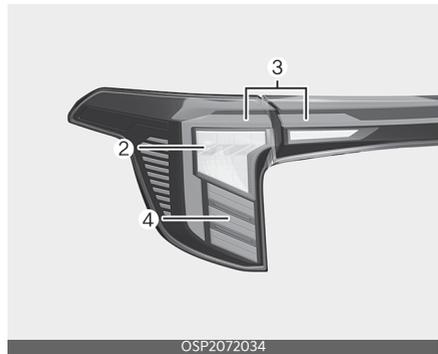
- 3. Position lamp/Daytime running lamp (Bulb type)
- 4. Position lamp/Daytime running lamp (LED type)
- 5. Headlamp (Low/Low assist) (LED type)
- 6. Headlamp (High) (LED type)
- 7. Turn signal lamp (LED type)
- 8. Front fog lamp (Bulb type)
- 9. Front fog lamp (LED type)
- 10. Position lamp (auxiliary) (LED type)

### Light bulb position (Rear)

Rear combination lamp - Type A



Rear combination lamp - Type B



Back-up lamp



Rear fog lamp



License Plate lamp



1. Tail lamp/Stop lamp (Bulb type)
2. Rear turn signal lamp (Bulb type)
3. Tail lamp (LED type)
4. Stop lamp (LED type)
5. Back up lamp (Bulb type)
6. License plate lamp (Bulb type)
7. High mounted stop lamp (LED type)
8. Rear fog lamp (Bulb type)

High Mounted Stop Lamp



**Light bulb position (Side)**



1. Side repeater lamp (Bulb type)

7

## Headlamp bulb



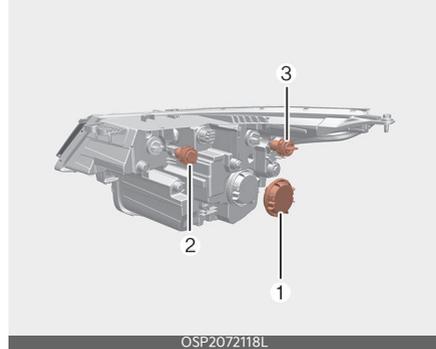
### **WARNING**

#### Halogen bulbs

Handle halogen bulbs with care.

- Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass if broken.
- Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids. Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit. A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlamp.
- If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.
- Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.

## Headlamp (High/Low)/Turn signal lamp/Position lamp/Daytime running lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement - Headlamp Type A



1. Headlamp (low and high)
2. Turn signal lamp
3. Position lamp / daytime running lamp

To prepare replacing the lamp bulb:

1. Open the bonnet.

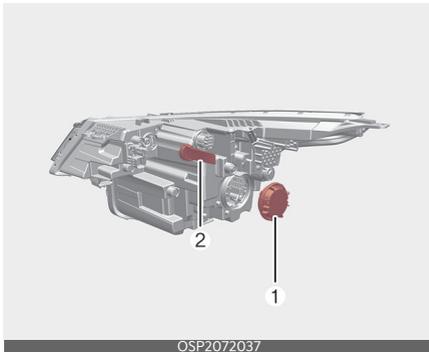
To replace the headlamp (low/high) bulb:

1. Remove the headlight bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
2. Disconnect the headlight bulb socket-connector.
3. Unsnap the headlight bulb retaining wire by depressing the end and pushing it upward.
4. Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly.
5. Install a new headlight bulb and snap the headlight bulb retaining wire into position by aligning the wire with the groove on the bulb.
6. Connect the headlight bulb socket connector.
7. Install the headlight bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

To replace the turn signal lamp, position lamp, daytime running lamp bulb:

1. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
2. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
3. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly.
4. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.

### Headlamp (High/Low)/Turn signal lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement - Headlamp Type B



1. Headlamp (High/Low)
2. Turn signal lamp

To prepare replacing the lamp bulb:

1. Open the bonnet.

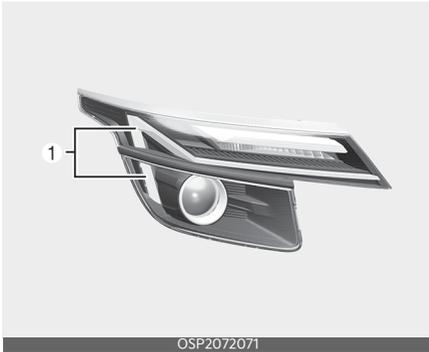
To replace the headlamp (low/high) bulb:

1. Remove the headlight bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
2. Disconnect the headlight bulb socket-connector.
3. Unsnap the headlight bulb retaining wire by depressing the end and pushing it upward.
4. Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly.
5. Install a new headlight bulb and snap the headlight bulb retaining wire into position by aligning the wire with the groove on the bulb.
6. Connect the headlight bulb socket connector.
7. Install the headlight bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

To replace the turn signal lamp:

1. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
2. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
3. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly.
4. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.

### Position lamp/Daytime running lamp (LED type) bulb replacement - Headlamp Type B



If the position lamp / daytime running lamp LED (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single component because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the position lamp / daytime running lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

### Headlamp (High/Low/Low assist)/Turn signal lamp/Position lamp/Daytime running lamp (LED type) bulb replacement - Headlamp Type C



If the position lamp / daytime running lamp LED does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single component because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the position lamp / daytime running lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## Front fog lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement



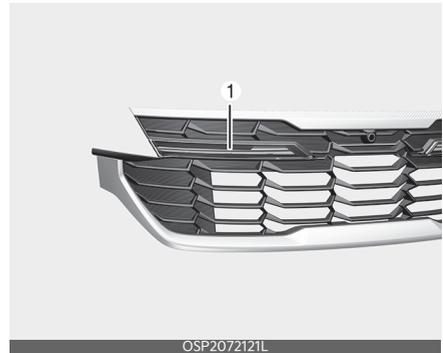
1. Disconnect the negative (-) battery terminal.
2. Remove the engine under cover.
3. Disconnect the front fog lamp connector.
4. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
5. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
6. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
7. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
8. Connect the front fog lamp connector.
9. Install the engine under cover assembly to the body of the vehicle.

## Front fog lamp (LED type) bulb replacement (if equipped)



If the front fog lamp (LED type) does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Position lamp (auxiliary) (LED type) bulb replacement (if equipped)

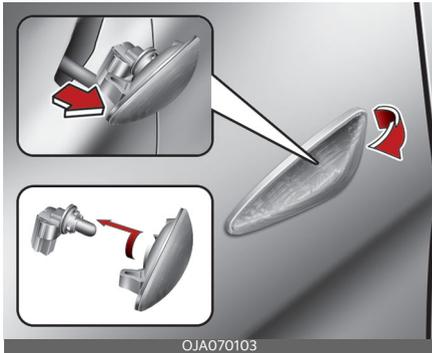


If the auxiliary lamp LED (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single component because it is an inte-

grated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced with the unit.  
 A skilled technician should check or repair the auxiliary lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

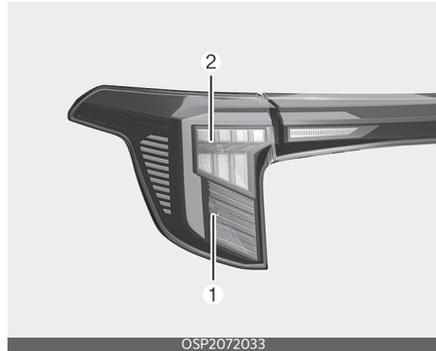
### Side repeater lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement



1. Remove the lamp assembly from the vehicle by prying the lens and pulling the assembly out.
2. Disconnect the bulb electrical connector.
3. Separate the socket and the lens parts by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the lens part.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
5. Insert a new bulb in the socket.
6. Reassemble the socket and the lens part.
7. Connect the bulb electrical connector.
8. Reinstall the lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.

### Tail and stop lamp/Turn signal lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement

Rear combination lamp - Type A



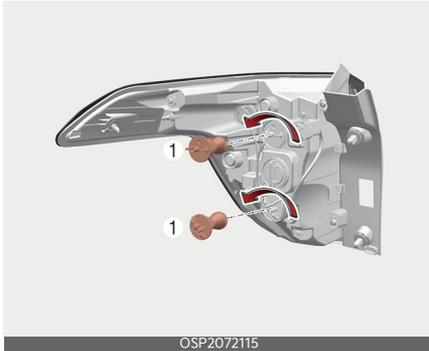
Rear combination lamp - Type B



1. Tail and stop lamp
  2. Turn signal lamp
- To place the lamp bulb:
1. Open the tailgate.
  2. Loosen the light assembly retaining screws with a cross-tip screwdriver.
  3. Remove the rear combination light assembly from the body of the vehicle.
  4. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclock-

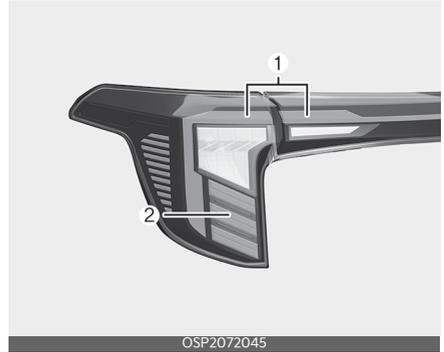
wise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.

5. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counter-clockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket.
6. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
7. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.



8. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly.
9. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Reinstall the light assembly to the body of the vehicle.

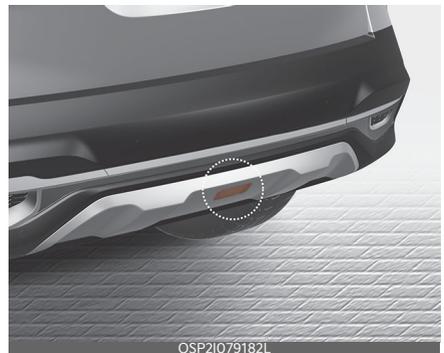
### Tail lamp/ stop lamp (LED type) bulb replacement



If the tail lamp (1) and stop lamp (2) does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single component because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamps, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

### Rear fog lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement (if equipped)



1. Disconnect the negative (-) battery terminal.

2. Disconnect the rear fog lamp connector.
3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
6. Install the socket into the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Connect the rear fog lamp connector.

### Back up lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement



If the Back up lamp (1) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop.  
Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### High mounted stop lamp (LED type) bulb replacement



If the High Mounted Stop Lamp bulb LED (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### License plate lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement



1. Using a screwdriver, gently pry the lamp assembly from interior.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Install the lamp assembly to interior.

## Map lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement



1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb (1) by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

## Map lamp (LED type) bulb replacement

Type A



Type B



If the map lamp LED (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single component because they are part of an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the map lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

### Vanity mirror lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement



**⚠ WARNING**

#### Interior lamps

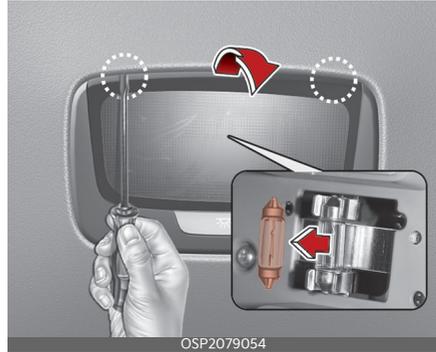
Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lamp assembly from interior.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Install the lamp assembly to interior.

**\* NOTICE**

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

### Room lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement



**⚠ WARNING**

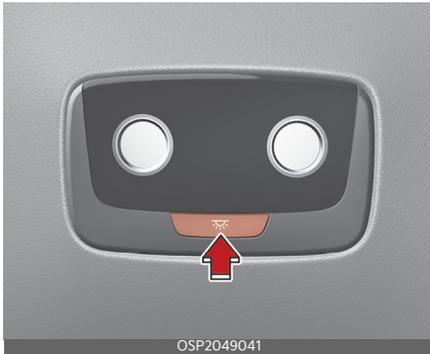
Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

**\* NOTICE**

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

### Room lamp (LED type) bulb replacement



If the Room lamp (LED) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single component because they are part of an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the Room lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

### Glove box lamp (Bulb type) replacement



1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lamp assembly from interior.

2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Install the lamp assembly to interior.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings or get them dirty.

### Luggage room lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement



1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

## Headlamp and front fog lamp aiming (for Europe)

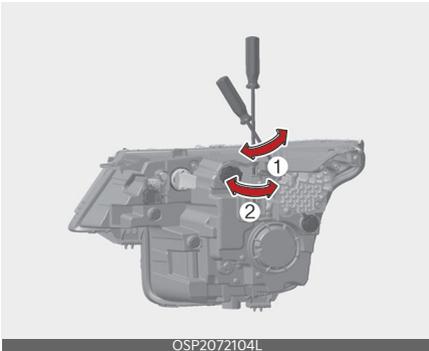
### Headlamp aiming

Headlamp - Type A



OSP2072103L

Headlamp - Type B



OSP2072104L

Headlamp - Type C



OSP2072119L

1. Inflate the tyres to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver, spare tyre, and tools.
2. The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
3. Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective head lamp centres) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through centre of head lamps) on the screen.
4. With the head lamp and battery in normal condition, aim the head lamps so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
5. To aim the low and high beams left or right, turn the driver (1) clockwise or counterclockwise. To aim the low and high beams up or down, turn the driver (2) clockwise or counterclockwise.

### Front fog lamp aiming

Fog lamp - Type A



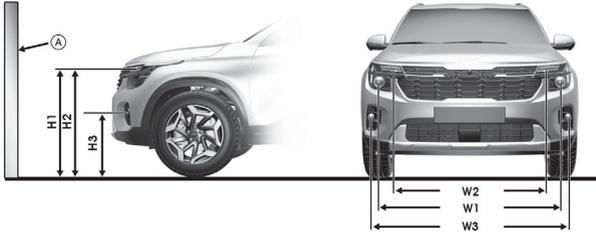
OSP2072105L

## Fog lamp - Type B

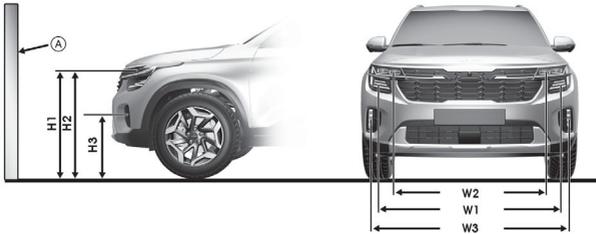


- The front fog lamp can be aimed in the same manner as the head lamps.
- With the front fog lamps and battery in normal condition, aim the front fog lamps.
- To aim the front fog lamp up or down, turn the driver clockwise or counter-clockwise.

### Aiming point



OSP2072107L



OSP2072120L

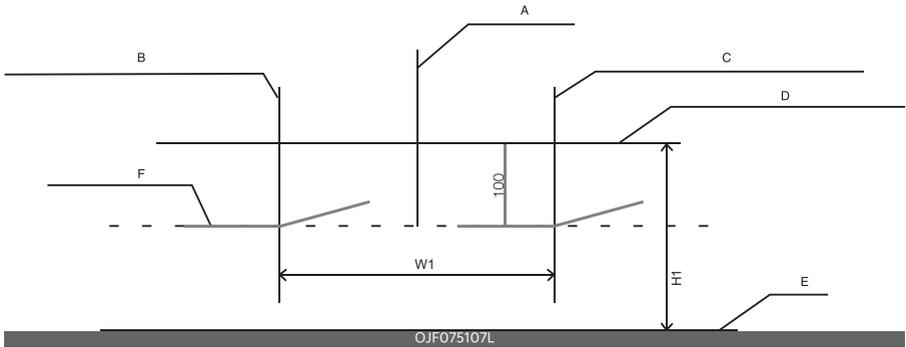
\* A: Screen

Vehicle condition	Headlamp - Type A, B				Headlamp - Type C			
	Ground height		Ground between lamps		Ground height		Ground between lamps	
	Low beam	High beam	Low beam	High beam	Low beam	High beam	Low beam	High beam
	H1	H2	W1	W2	H1	H2	W1	W2
Without driver [mm (in)]	751 (29.6)	751 (29.6)	1,438 (56.6)	1,438 (56.6)	854 (33.6)	844 (33.2)	1,373 (54.0)	1,169 (46.0)
With driver [mm (in)]	746 (29.4)	746 (29.4)	1,438 (56.6)	1,438 (56.6)	849 (33.4)	839 (33.0)	1,373 (54.0)	1,169 (46.0)

Vehicle condition	Fog lamp - Type A (bulb type)		Headlamp - Type B (LED type)	
	Ground height	Distance between lamps	Ground height	Distance between lamps
	H3	W3	H3	W3
Without driver [mm (in)]	475 (18.7)	1,457 (57.3)	498 (19.6)	1,554 (61.1)
With driver [mm (in)]	470 (18.5)	1,457 (57.3)	493 (19.4)	1,554 (61.1)

## Head lamp low beam (LHD Vehicle)

Based on 10 m screen



A: Vehicle axis

B: Vertical line of the left head lamp bulb centre

C: Vertical line of the right head lamp bulb centre

D: Horizontal line of head lamp bulb centre

E: Ground

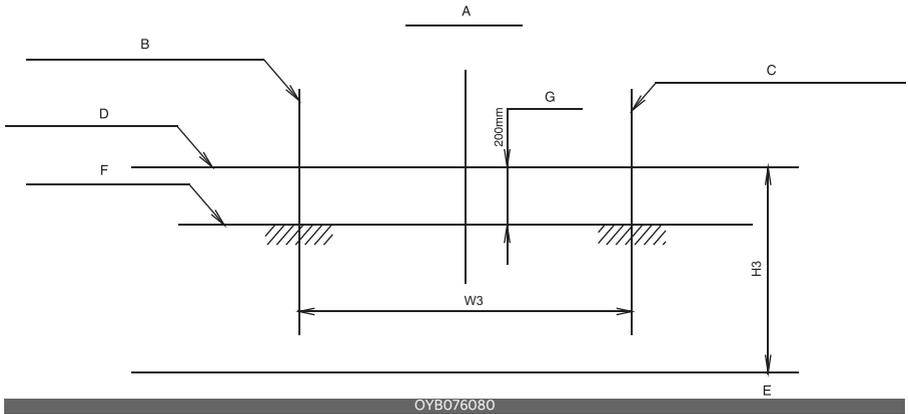
F: Cut-Off line

1. Turn the low beam on with 1 driver (75 kg) aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. First, adjust cut-off line to be matched with the horizontal line and then adjust with the vertical line.
4. If head lamp levelling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp levelling device switch with 0 positions.



## Front fog lamp

Based on 10 m screen



A: Vehicle axis

B: Vertical line of the left fog lamp bulb centre

C: Vertical line of the right fog lamp bulb centre

D: Horizontal line of fog lamp bulb centre

E: Ground

F: Cut-Off line

G: Upper limit

1. Turn the front fog lamp on without the driver aboard.

2. The cut-off line should be projected in the allowable range (shaded region).

## Appearance care

Use the information in the following sections to keep the exterior and interior of your vehicle clean.

### Exterior care

Use the information in the following sections to maintain the exterior of your vehicle. Keeping the exterior clean is not only aesthetically pleasing, but it also helps to prolong the life of the vehicle.

#### \* NOTICE

If you park the vehicle around a stainless signboard or windscreen building etc., the plastic exterior trim (bumper, spoiler, garnish, lamp, outside mirror etc.) may be damaged by reflected sunlight from the external structure. To avoid damaging the plastic exterior trim, park the vehicle away from the areas where the reflected light may occur or use a vehicle cover (Depending on the vehicle, the type of exterior trim applied such as spoiler may differ).

### Exterior general caution

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

### Finish maintenance

#### Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-

road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.
- Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle, especially with high-pressure water. Water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.
- To prevent damage to the plastic parts and lamps, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.

#### ⚠ WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking

performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

### High-pressure washing

When using high-pressure washers, make sure to maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle.

Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure can lead to component damage or water penetration.

Do not spray the camera, sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.

Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors as they may be damaged if they come into contact with high pressure water.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

#### Wetting engine compartment



- Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.
- Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/elec-

tronic components and air duct inside the vehicle as this may damage them.

### Waxing

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

Be careful not to touch the lens when waxing the lamps.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

#### Drying vehicle

- Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.
- Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, acid detergents or strong detergents containing high alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.

### Finish damage repair

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

## \* NOTICE

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

### Bright-metal maintenance

To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.

To protect the surfaces of bright metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.

During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

### Underbody maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter.

Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of the doors, rocker panels, and frame mem-

bers have drain holes that should not clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

### Aluminum wheel maintenance

The aluminum wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum wheels. They may scratch or damage the finish.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with high speed vehicle wash brushes.
- Do not use any alkaline or acid detergents. It may damage and corrode the aluminum wheels coated with a clear protective finish.

### Corrosion protection

#### Protecting your vehicle from corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, we produce vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

#### Common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion on your vehicle are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

### High-corrosion areas

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

### Moisture breeds corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle's surface by moisture that evaporates slowly.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it dries slowly and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain the moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the vehicle.

### To help prevent corrosion

You can help prevent corrosion from beginning by observing the following:

#### Keep your vehicle clean

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.

If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.

When cleaning underneath the vehicle, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.

When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

#### Keep your garage dry

Don't park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the

garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

### Keep paint and trim in good condition

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

**Bird droppings:** Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

### Don't neglect the interior

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting and cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilizers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the vehicle.

These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

### Interior care

Use the information in the following sections to maintain the interior of your vehicle.

### Interior general precautions

Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage

or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. If necessary, use a mixture of warm water and mild non-detergent cleaner (test all cleaners on a concealed area before use). Use proper car cleaner to clean interior parts.

#### CAUTION

### Electrical components

Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.

#### CAUTION

### Leather

When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the colour of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.

### Taking care of leather seats

- Vacuum the seat periodically to remove dust and sand on the seat. It will prevent abrasion or damage of the leather and maintain its quality.
- Wipe the leather seat cover often with dry or soft cloth.
- Sufficient use of a leather protective may prevent abrasion of the cover and helps maintain the colour. Be sure to read the instructions and consult a specialist when using leather coating or protective agents.
- Leather with bright colours (beige, cream beige) is easily contaminated and clear in appearance. Clean the seats frequently.

- Avoid wiping with wet cloth. It may cause the surface to crack.

### Cleaning the leather seats

Remove all contaminations instantly. Refer to instructions below for removal of each contaminant.

- Cosmetic products (sunscreen, foundation, etc.)
  - Apply cleansing cream on a cloth and wipe the contaminated point. Wipe off the cream with a wet cloth and remove water with a dry cloth.
- Beverages (coffee, soft drink, etc.)
  - Apply a small amount of neutral detergent and wipe until contaminations do not smear.
- Oil
  - Remove oil instantly with absorbable cloth and wipe with stain remover for leather only.
- Chewing gum
  - Harden the gum with ice and remove gradually.

### Fabric seat cover (if equipped)

Please clean the fabric seats regularly with a vacuum cleaner in consideration of fabric material characteristics. If they are heavily soiled with beverage stains, etc., use a suitable interior cleaner. To prevent damage to seat covers, wipe off the seat covers down to the seams with a large wiping motion and moderate pressure using a soft sponge or microfibre cloth.

Velcro closures on clothing or sharp objects may cause snagging or scratches on the surface of the seats.

Make sure not to rub such objects against the surface.

## Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim

### Car interior surfaces

Remove dust and loose dirt from interior surfaces with a whisk broom or a vacuum cleaner. If necessary, clean interior surfaces with a mixture of warm water and mild non-detergent cleaner (test all cleaners on a concealed area before use).

### Fabric

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its colour can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

### Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

### Cleaning the interior window glass

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with

an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with a glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

### CAUTION

#### Rear window

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage of the rear window defroster grid.

---

## Emission control system

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Warranty & Consumer Information manual in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all applicable emission regulations. There are three emission control systems, as follows.

1. Crankcase emission control system
2. Evaporative emission control system
3. Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, have your vehicle inspected and maintained by a professional workshop in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Caution for the Inspection and Maintenance Test (With Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system)

- To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the ESC off by pressing the ESC switch.
- After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC back on by pressing the ESC switch again.

#### 1. Crankcase emission control system

The Positive Crankcase Ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase

through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) valve into the induction system.

## 2. Evaporative emission control (including Onboard Refuelling Vapour Recovery (ORVR)) system

The evaporative emission control system is designed to prevent fuel vapours from escaping into the atmosphere. (The ORVR system is designed to allow the vapours from the fuel tank to be loaded into a canister whilst refuelling at the gas station, preventing the escape of fuel vapours into the atmosphere.)

### Canister

Fuel vapours generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapours absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the Purge Control Solenoid Valve.

### Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)

The Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV) is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

## 3. Exhaust emission control system

The exhaust emission control system is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions whilst maintaining good vehicle performance.

### Vehicle modifications

This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.

- If you use authorised electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorised electronic devices.

### Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

### WARNING

#### Exhaust

Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colourless and odourless, it is dangerous and could be

lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions on this page to avoid CO poisoning.

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

### Operating precautions for catalytic converters

#### **WARNING**

#### **Catalytic converter**

Keep away from the catalytic converter and exhaust system whilst the vehicle is running or immediately thereafter. The exhaust and catalytic systems are very hot and may burn you.

#### **WARNING**

#### **Fire**

- Do not park, idle or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as grass, vegetation, paper, leaves, etc. A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle.
- Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle or do not coat the vehicle for corrosion con-

trol. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Use only UNLEADED FUEL for petrol engines.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle. Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

# Specifications & Consumer information

Dimensions (except Australia and New Zealand) .....	8-2
Dimensions (For Australia and New Zealand) .....	8-3
Engine .....	8-3
Gross vehicle weight .....	8-4
Luggage volume .....	8-4
Air conditioning system.....	8-4
Bulb wattage .....	8-5
Tyres and wheels.....	8-6
Recommended lubricants and capacities .....	8-7
• Recommended SAE viscosity number.....	8-9
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).....	8-10
• VIN label .....	8-10
Vehicle certification label.....	8-11
Tyre specification and pressure label.....	8-11
Engine number.....	8-12
Air conditioner compressor label .....	8-12
Refrigerant label.....	8-13
Declaration of conformity .....	8-13
Fuel label .....	8-14
• Petrol engine .....	8-14

## Specifications & Consumer information

### Dimensions (except Australia and New Zealand)

Item	mm (in)		
Overall length	4,385 (172.6)		
Overall width	1,800 (70.9)		
Overall height	Without Roof rack	16 in	1,615 (63.6)
		17/18 in	1,620 (63.8)
	With Roof rack	16 in	1,630 (64.2)
		17/18 in	1,635 (64.4)
Tread	Front	205/60 R16	1571.5 (61.9)
		215/55 R17	1559.6 (61.4)
		235/45 R18	1555.6 (61.2)
	Rear (2WD)	205/60 R16	1584.1 (62.4)
		215/55 R17	1572.4 (61.9)
		235/45 R18	1568.4 (61.7)
	Rear (4WD)	205/60 R16	1584.3 (62.4)
		215/55 R17	1572.6 (61.9)
		235/45 R18	1568.6 (61.8)
Wheelbase		2,630 (103.5)	

## Dimensions (For Australia and New Zealand)

Item	mm (in)		
Overall length	4,385 (172.6)		
Overall width	1,800 (70.9)		
Overall height	Without Roof rack	16 in	1,600 (63.0)
		17/18 in	1,615 (63.6)
	With Roof rack	16 in	1,625 (63.9)
		17/18 in	1,620 (63.8)
Tread	Front	205/60 R16	1,575.3 (62.0)
		215/55 R17	1,563.4 (61.6)
		235/45 R18	1,559.5 (61.4)
	Rear (2WD)	205/60 R16	1,584.1 (62.4)
		215/55 R17	1,572.4 (61.9)
		235/45 R18	1,568.4 (61.7)
	Rear (4WD)	205/60 R16	1,586.8 (62.5)
		215/55 R17	1,575.1 (62.0)
		235/45 R18	1,571.2 (61.9)
Wheelbase			2,630 (103.5)

## Engine

Item	(Petrol) 1.6MPI	Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi	(Petrol) 2.0 MPI
Displacement: [cc (cu in)]	1,591 (97.1)	1,598 (97.5)	1,999 (122.0)
Bore x Stroke: [mm (in)]	77 x 85.4 (3.03 x 33.6)	75.6 x 89.0 (2.98 x 3.50)	81.0 x 97.0(3.2 x 3.8)
Firing order	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2
No. of cylinders	In-line, 4	In-line, 4	In-line, 4

## Gross vehicle weight

Item	(Petrol) 1.6 MPI				Smart-stream G 1.6 T-GDi	(Petrol) 2.0 MPI	
	MT		AT		AT	IVT	
	FWD	AWD	FWD	AWD	AWD	FWD	AWD
Gross vehicle weight [kg (lbs.)]	1,740 (3,836)	1,810 (3,990)	1,820 (4,012)	1,895 (4,177)	1,950 (4,299)	1,835 (4,045)	1,910 (4,210)

## Luggage volume

Item	Volume	
Luggage volume (VDA): [L (cu ft)]	Full size spare tyre	Min: 433 (15.29)
		Max: 1,393 (49.19)
	Compact size spare tyre	Min: 468 (16.53)
		Max: 1,428 (50.43)

- Min: Behind rear seat to upper edge of the seat back.
- Max: Behind front seat to roof.

## Air conditioning system

Item	Weight of volume (g)	Classification
Refrigerant	500 ± 25	R-134a
	450 ± 25	R-1234yf
Compressor lubricant	120 ± 10	PAG 30

Please contact a professional workshop for more details.

Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Bulb wattage

Light Bulb			Bulb type	Wattage	
Front	Headlamps	High	Bulb type	HB3	60/5.8W
			LED type	LED	LED
		Low	Bulb type	HB3	5.8W
			LED type	LED	LED
	Position lamp/Daytime running lamp	Bulb type	PY21W/5W	21W/5W	
		LED type	LED	LED	
	Turn signal lamp	Bulb type	PY21W	21W	
		LED type	LED	LED	
	Front fog lamp	Bulb type	HB4	51W	
		LED type	LED	LED	
Position lamp (auxiliary)			LED	LED	
Side repeater lamps			WY5W	5W	
Rear	Tail lamp/Stop lamp		Bulb type	P21/5W	21W
	Tail lamp		LED type	LED	LED
	Stop lamp			LED	LED
	Rear turn signal lamp			PY21W	21W
	Back up lamp			W16W	16W
	License plate lamp			W5W	5W
	High mounted stop lamp			LED	LED
	Rear fog lamp			P21W	21W
Interior	Map lamps		Bulb type	W10W 10	10W
			LED type	LED	LED
	Vanity mirror lamps			FESTOON	5W
	Room lamp		Bulb type	FESTOON	10W
			LED type	LED	LED
	Luggage lamp			FESTOON	10W
Glove box lamp			FESTOON	8W	

## Tyres and wheels

Item	Tyre size	Wheel size	Load capacity		Speed capacity		Inflation pressure [bar (psi, kPa)]				Wheel lug nut torque kgf·m (lbf·ft, N·m)
			L <sup>*1</sup>	kg	SS <sup>*2</sup>	km/h	Normal load		Maximum load		
							Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
Full size tyre (and spare tyre) (if equipped)	205/60R16	6.5Jx16 (steel)	92	630	H	210	2.3 (33/230)		2.5 (36/250)	11-13 (79-94, 107-127)	
	215/55R17	7.0Jx17 (alloy)	94	670	V	240					
	235/45R18	7.5Jx18 (alloy)	94	670	V	240					
Compact size tyre (spare tyre) (if equipped)	T125/80D16	4.0Tx16	97	730	M	130	4.2 (60/420)				

\*1. Load Index

\*2. Speed Symbol

### ⚠ CAUTION

When replacing tyres, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tyres of a different size can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.

### \* NOTICE

- We recommend that when replacing tyres, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles.  
If not, that affects driving performance.
- When driving in high altitude grades, it is natural for the atmospheric pressure to decrease.  
Therefore, please check the tyre pressure and add more air when necessary.  
Additionally required tyre air pressure per km above sea level: 1.5 psi/km

## Recommended lubricants and capacities

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality.

The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

Lubricant		Volume	Classification	
Engine oil <sup>1</sup> (drain and refill)  Kia  <b>TotalEnergies</b>	(Petrol) 1.6 MPI	3.6 L	For Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran	SAE 5W-30, ACEA A5/B5 <sup>2</sup>
			Except Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran	SAE 5W-20 / API Latest (ILSAC Latest) <sup>3</sup>
	Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi	4.8 L	For Middle East, Iran, Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, Libia, Egypt, Sudan	SAE 5W-30, ACEA A5/B5 <sup>2</sup>
			Except Middle East, Iran, Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, Libia, Egypt, Sudan	SAE 0W-20, API SN PLUS/SP or ILSAC GF-6 <sup>3</sup>
	(Petrol) 2.0 MPI	4.5 L	For Middle East, Central & South America	SAE 5W-30, API Latest (ILSAC Latest) or ACEA A5/B5 <sup>2</sup>
			Except Middle East, Central & South America	SAE 0W-20, API SN PLUS/SP or ILSAC GF-6 <sup>3</sup>
Manual transmission fluid	(Petrol) 1.6 MPI	FWD	1.5~1.6 L	SAE 70W API GL-4 TGO-9 API GL-4, SAE 70W (Recommended SK HK MTF 70W, SHELL SPIRAX S6GHME 70W MTF, GS CALTEX GS MTF HD 70W)
		AWD	1.4~1.5 L	
Automatic transmission fluid	(Petrol) 1.6 MPI	7.2 L	SK ATF SP4M-1, MICHANG ATF SP4M-1, S-OIL ATF SP4M-1, Kia Genuine ATF SP4M-1	
	Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDi	6.5 L		

Lubricant		Volume	Classification	
Intelligent Variable Transmission (IVT) fluid	(Petrol) 2.0 MPI	6.7 L	MICHANG SP-CVT1, Kia Genuine ATF SP-CVT1*4	
Rear differential oil (AWD)		0.5 L	Hypoid gear oil API GI-5, SAE 75W/85 (SK HCT-5 75W/85 or equivalent)	
Transfer case oil (AWD)	(Petrol) 1.6 MPI	MT		0.5 L
		AT		0.4 L
	Smart-stream G 1.6 T-GDi	AT		0.5 L
	(Petrol) 2.0 MPI	IVT		0.4 L
Coolant	(Petrol) 1.6 MPI	MT	6.1 L	
		AT	5.8 L	
	Smart-stream G 1.6 T-GDi	AT	6.6 L	
	(Petrol) 2.0 MPI	IVT	6.1 L	
Brake/clutch fluid*5	MT	502±20 cc	SAEJ1704 DOT-4 LV, FMVSS 116 DOT-4, ISO 4925 CLASS-6	
	AT	474±20 cc		
Fuel		50 L	-	

\*1. Refer to "Recommended SAE viscosity number" on page 8-9.

\*2. Requires <API SN PLUS (or above) or ACEA A5/B5 Full synthetic> grade engine oil. If a lower grade engine oil (mineral oil including Semi-synthetic) is used, then the engine oil and engine oil filter must be replaced as indicated severe maintenance condition.

\*3. Requires <API SN PLUS (or above) Full synthetic> grade engine oil. If a lower grade engine of (mineral oil including Semi-synthetic) is used, then the engine oil and engine oil filter must be replaced as indicated severe maintenance condition.

\*4. Use only specified genuine intelligent variable transmission fluid. The use of non-specified fluid (even marked as compatible with genuine) could result in shift quality deterioration and vibrations, eventually, the transmission failure.

\*5. To maintain your vehicle's best brake and ABS/ESC performance, use Kia genuine brake fluid or those of an equivalent standard brake fluid as in the specification.

## Recommended SAE viscosity number

### **CAUTION**

Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather.

Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage.

When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

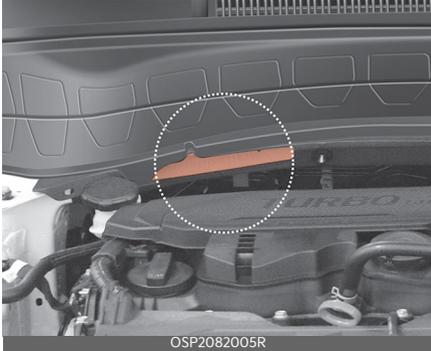
		Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers									
Temperature	°C	-30	-20	-10	0	10	20	30	40	50	
	(°F)	-10	0	20	40	60	80	100	120		
(Petrol) 1.6 MPI	For Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran						5W-30				
	Except Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran						5W-20				
Smart-stream G 1.6 T-GDi	For Middle East, Iran, Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, Libia, Egypt, Sudan						5W-30				
	Except Middle East, Iran, Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, Libia, Egypt, Sudan						0W-20				
(Petrol) 2.0 MPI	For Middle East, Central & South America						5W-30				
	Except Middle East, Central & South America						0W-20				



An engine oil displaying this American Petroleum Institute (API) Certification Mark conforms to the International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC). It is recommended to only use engine oils that uphold this API Certification Mark.

## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.



The number is punched on the engine compartment frame as shown in the drawing. To check the number, open the cover.

## VIN label (if equipped)

Type A



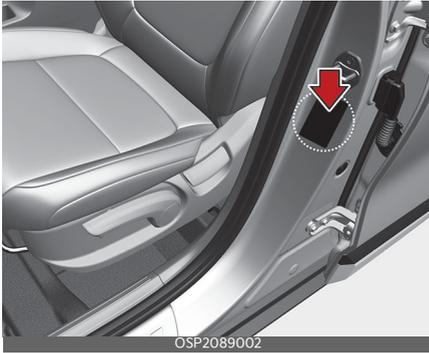
Type B



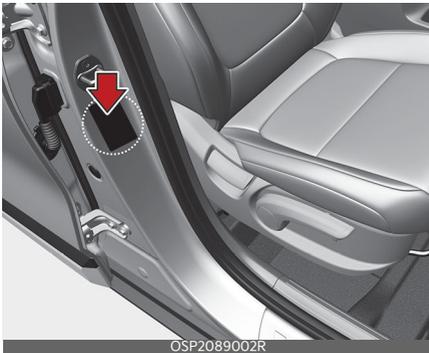
The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windscreen from outside.

## Vehicle certification label (if equipped)

Type A

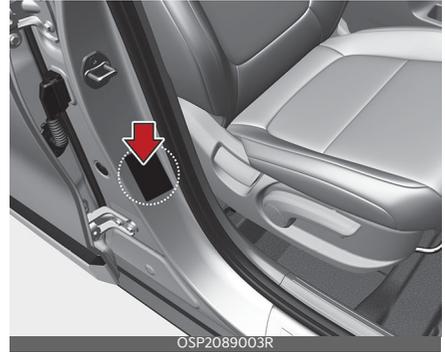


Type B



The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's (or front passenger's) side centre pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

## Tyre specification and pressure label



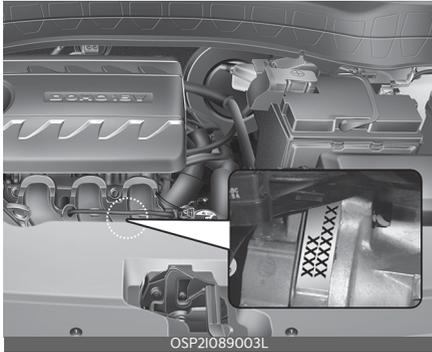
The tyres supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

The tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar gives the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.

### Engine number

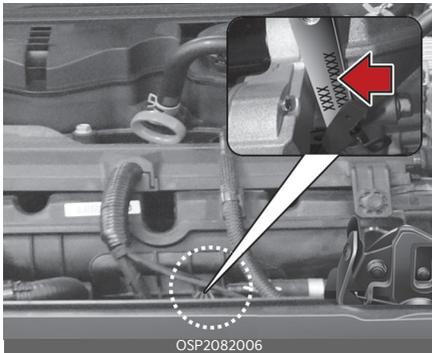
The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

(Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI



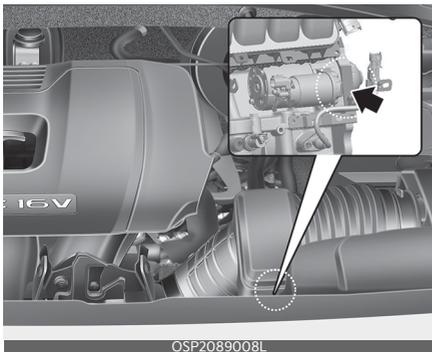
OSP2I089003L

Smartstream G 1.6 T-GDI



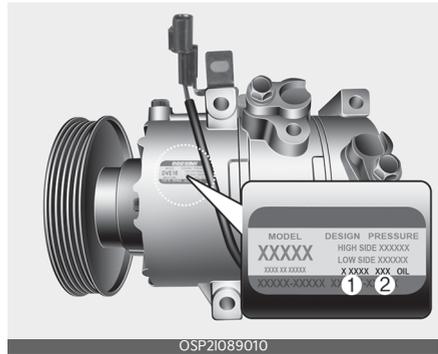
OSP2082006

(Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI



OSP2089008L

### Air conditioner compressor label



A compressor label informs you the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model, supplier part number, production number, refrigerant (1) and refrigerant oil (2).

## Refrigerant label



The refrigerant label is located on the front body trim.

## Declaration of conformity

**CE CE 0678**

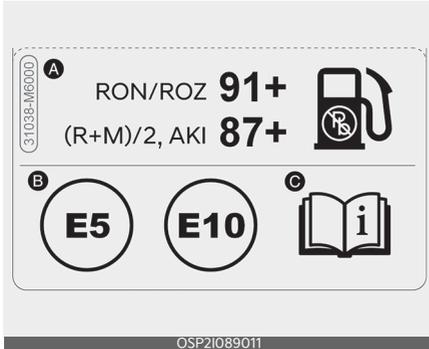
The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available on Kia web site as follows;  
<http://www.kia-hotline.com>

## Fuel label (if equipped)

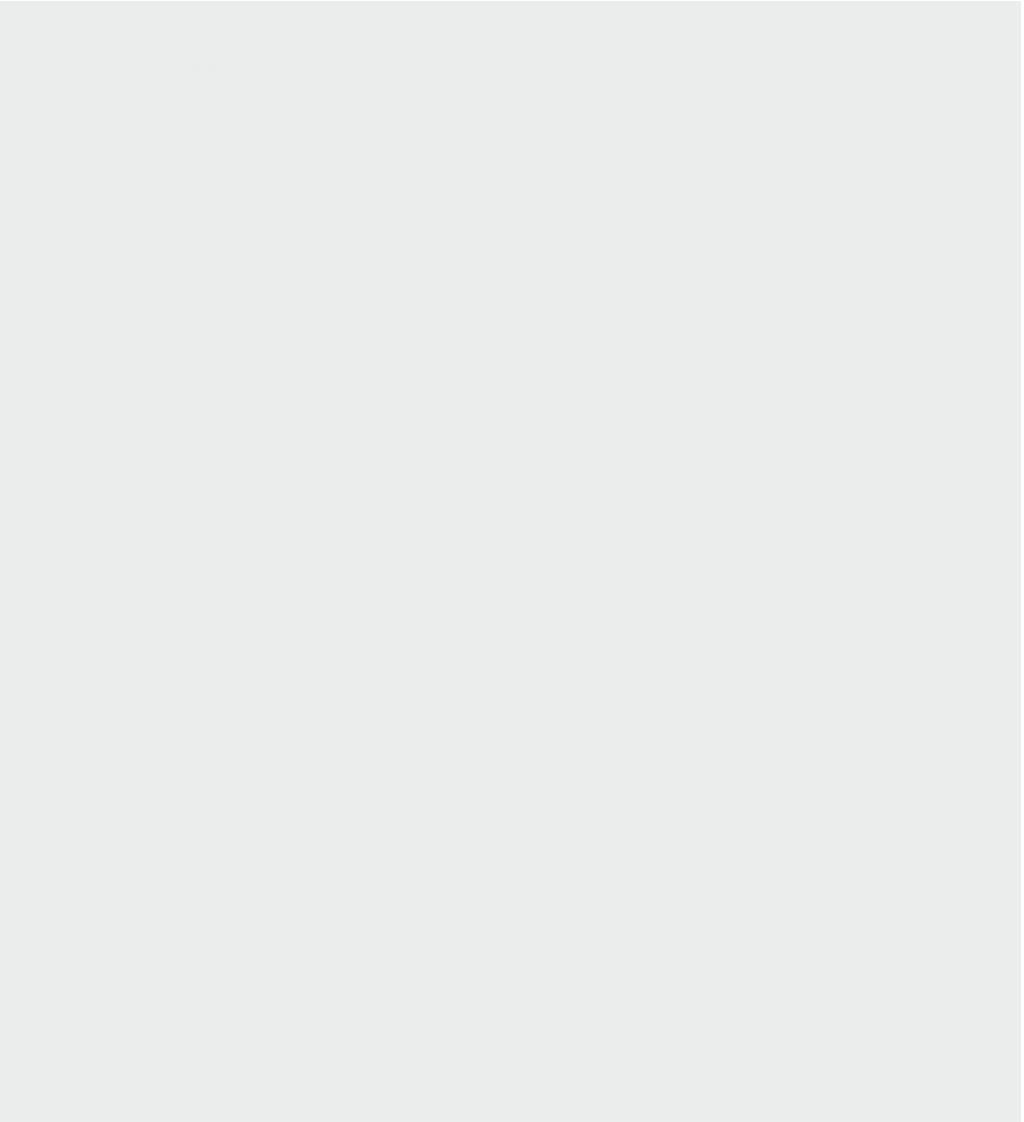
### Petrol engine

The fuel label is attached on the fuel filler door.



- A. Octane rating of unleaded Petrol (Petrol)
  1. RON/ROZ: Research Octane Number
  2. (R+M)/2, AKI: Anti Knock Index
- B. Identifiers for Petrol-type fuels
  - \* This symbol means usable fuel. Do not use any other fuel.
- C. For further details, refer to "Fuel requirements" on page 1-2.

# Abbreviation **A**



## Abbreviation

### **AWD**

All Wheel Drive

### **ABS**

Anti-Lock Brake System

### **ACC**

Accessory

### **AKI**

Antiknock Index

### **CC**

Cruise Control

### **DRL**

Daytime Running Light

### **ECM**

Electric Chromic Mirror

### **EPS**

Electric Power Steering

### **ESC**

Electronic Stability Control

### **GVW**

Gross Vehicle Weight

### **GVWR**

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

### **HAC**

Hill-start Assist Control

### **HID**

High-Intensity Discharge

### **HMSL**

High Mounted Stop Lamp

### **HUD**

Head-Up Display

### **ISG**

Idle Stop and Go

### **LNT**

Lean NOx Trap

### **MIL**

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

### **ODO**

Odometer

### **PCM**

Powertrain Control Module

### **PCSV**

Purge Control Solenoid Valve

### **PDW**

Parking Distance Warning

### **RON**

Research Octane Number

### **ROA**

Rear Occupant Alert

### **RPM**

Revolution Per Minute

### **RVM**

Rear View Monitor

### **SRS**

Supplemental Restraint System

### **TCI**

Turbo Charger Intercooler

### **TCM**

Transmission Control Module

**Abbreviation**

**TPMS**

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

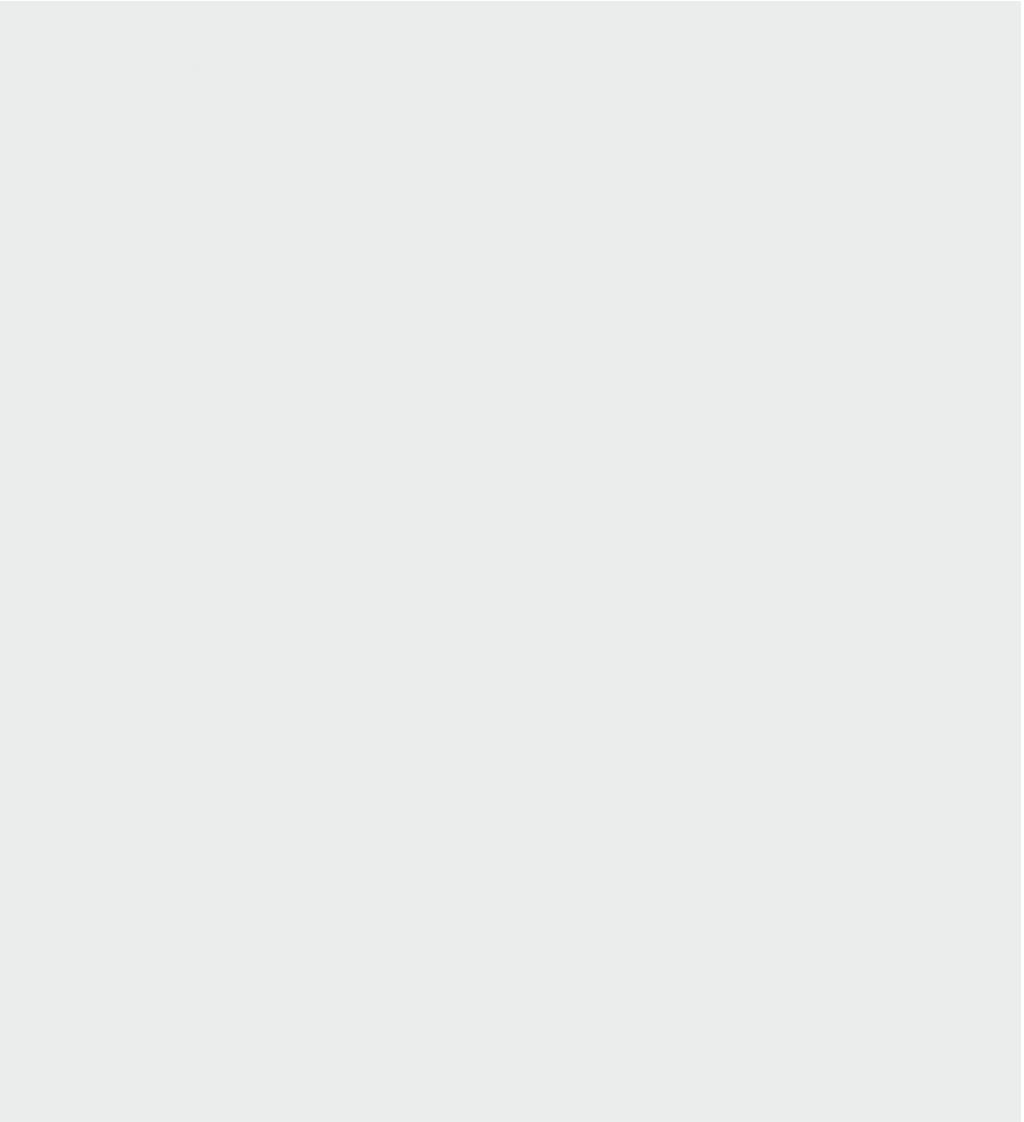
**VIN**

Vehicle Identification Number

**VSM**

Vehicle Stability Management





# Index

---

## A

<b>air bag</b>	3-39
air bag collision sensors	3-53
curtain air bag	3-51
driver's and passenger's front air bag	3-45
inflation conditions	3-54
non-inflation conditions	3-55
operation of the system	3-40
passenger's front air bag on/off switch	3-47
side air bag	3-49
SRS care	3-57
SRS components and functions	3-43
to deactivate/reactivate the passenger's front air bag	3-48
warning and indicator	3-42
<b>air bag collision sensors</b>	3-53
<b>air bag warning label</b>	3-41, 3-58
<b>air cleaner filter</b>	7-39
<b>all wheel drive (AWD) system</b>	5-13
AWD mode	5-13
AWD transfer mode selection	5-14
for safe all wheel drive (AWD) operation	5-15
<b>appearance care</b>	7-92
exterior care	7-92
interior care	7-96
<b>applying the parking brake</b>	5-36
<b>auto light</b>	4-110
<b>automatic climate control system</b>	4-138
air conditioning (A/C)	4-145
controlling air intake	4-144
fan speed control	4-144
heating and air conditioning automatically	4-139
heating and air conditioning manually	4-141
mode selection	4-142
off mode	4-145
temperature control	4-143
<b>automatic transmission</b>	5-21
automatic transmission operation	5-21
good driving practices	5-26

LCD display for warning message	5-22
parking in N (neutral) gear	5-24
shift lock system	5-25
shift-lock override	5-26
transmission ranges	5-23

---

## B

<b>battery</b>	7-45
for best battery service	7-45
recharging the battery	7-46
reset items	7-47
<b>before driving</b>	5-5
<b>blind-spot collision-avoidance assist (BCA)</b>	5-84
blind-spot collision-avoidance assist malfunction	5-89
blind-spot collision-avoidance assist operation	5-87
blind-spot collision-avoidance assist settings	5-85
detecting sensor	5-85
limitations of blind-spot collision-avoidance assist	5-90
<b>bonnet</b>	4-42
bonnet open warning	4-42
closing the bonnet	4-43
opening the bonnet	4-42
<b>brake system</b>	5-34
anti-lock brake system (ABS)	5-37
auto hold	5-42
downhill brake control (DBC)	5-49
electronic parking brake (EPB)	5-38
electronic stability control (ESC) system	5-44
emergency stop signal (ESS)	5-48
hill-start assist control (HAC)	5-48
parking brake (hand type)	5-36
vehicle stability management (VSM) system	5-47
<b>brake/clutch fluid</b>	7-36

---

## C

<b>care of seat belts</b>	3-27
<b>central door lock switch</b>	4-18
<b>check exhaust system</b>	5-5
<b>checking fluid levels</b>	7-30

<b>child restraint system (CRS)</b>	3-28
installing a CRS	3-30
types	3-29
<b>child-protector rear door lock</b>	4-20
<b>climate control air filter</b>	7-41
<b>climate control system</b>	4-129
air conditioning refrigerant label	4-131
climate control air filter	4-131
system operation	4-129
<b>cruise control (CC)</b>	5-108
decreasing set speed	5-109
increasing set speed	5-108
resuming cruise control	5-109
setting set speed	5-108
temporarily pausing cruise control	5-109
turning off cruise control	5-110
<b>curtain air bag</b>	3-51

---

## D

<b>declaration of conformity</b>	5-139
the radio frequency components (front radar) complies	5-139
the radio frequency components (rear corner radar) complies	5-142
<b>defroster</b>	4-128
outside rearview mirror defroster	4-129
rear window defroster	4-128
<b>door locks</b>	4-16
central door lock switch	4-18
child-protector rear door lock	4-20
door lock/unlock features	4-19
from inside the vehicle	4-17
from outside the vehicle	4-16
in case of an emergency	4-19
<b>drive mode integrated control system</b>	5-52
<b>driver attention warning (DAW)</b>	5-102
detecting sensor	5-102
driver attention warning malfunction	5-104
driver attention warning operation	5-103
driver attention warning settings	5-103
leading vehicle departure alert	5-104
limitations of driver attention warning	5-105

<b>driver's and passenger's front air bag</b>	3-45
<b>driver's memory seat</b>	3-15
easy access function	3-16
recalling positions from memory	3-15
resetting the system	3-16
storing driver's seat positions	3-15
<b>driving assist mode</b>	4-68

---

## E

<b>economical operation</b>	5-147
<b>emergency commodity</b>	6-24
<b>emergency starting</b>	6-5
jump starting	6-5
Jump starting procedure	6-6
push-starting	6-6
<b>emission control system</b>	7-98
<b>engine compartment</b>	7-4
<b>engine coolant</b>	7-33
recommended coolant	7-33
<b>engine oil and filter</b>	7-30
<b>engine overheats</b>	6-7
<b>engine start/stop button</b>	5-8
engine start/stop button position	5-8
illuminated engine start/stop button	5-8
starting the engine	5-12
stopping the engine	5-12
<b>exterior features</b>	4-164
roof rack	4-164

---

## F

<b>forward collision-avoidance assist (FCA) (front view camera only)</b>	5-54
detecting sensor	5-54
forward collision-avoidance assist malfunction	5-58
forward collision-avoidance assist operation	5-56
forward collision-avoidance assist settings	5-55
limitations of forward collision-avoidance assist	5-59
<b>forward collision-avoidance assist (FCA) (sensor fusion)</b>	5-65
detecting sensor	5-65

forward collision-avoidance assist malfunction	5-71
forward collision-avoidance assist operation	5-68
forward collision-avoidance assist settings	5-66
limitations of forward collision-avoidance assist	5-72
<b>forward/reverse parking distance warning (PDW)</b>	4-102
forward/reverse parking distance warning malfunction and precautions	4-105
forward/reverse parking distance warning operation	4-103
forward/reverse parking distance warning settings	4-102
<b>front fog light</b>	4-114
<b>front passenger's air bag warning label for child restraint system</b>	3-41
<b>front seat adjustment for manual seat</b>	3-5
<b>front seat adjustment for power seat</b>	3-6
<b>front seat headrest</b>	3-8
<b>fuel filler door</b>	4-44
closing the fuel filler door	4-44
opening the fuel filler door	4-44
<b>fuel requirements</b>	1-2
<b>fuses</b>	7-58
replacing engine compartment fuse	7-61
replacing inner panel fuse	7-60

## H

<b>head light (low beam)</b>	4-109, 4-110
<b>headlamp and front fog lamp aiming (for europe)</b>	7-86
aiming point	7-88
front fog lamp aiming	7-86
headlamp aiming	7-86
<b>headrest</b>	3-8
front seat headrest	3-8
rear seat headrest	3-11
<b>head-up display (HUD)</b>	4-93
head up display information	4-94
head up display setting	4-94
<b>horn</b>	4-52

## I

<b>if the engine will not start if you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre)</b>	6-4
changing tyres	6-13
jack and tools	6-12
jacking instructions	6-12
<b>immobiliser system</b>	4-9
<b>in case of an emergency whilst driving</b>	6-3
<b>indicator lights</b>	4-88
<b>information mode</b>	4-69
<b>infotainment system</b>	4-166
antenna	4-166
USB port	4-166
<b>infotainment system vehicle settings</b>	4-92
setting your vehicle	4-92
vehicle settings menu	4-93
<b>inside rear view mirror</b>	4-53
<b>installing a CRS</b>	3-30
<b>instrument cluster</b>	4-57
adjusting instrument cluster illumination	4-59
distance to empty	4-62
engine coolant temperature gauge	4-60
fuel gauge	4-61
odometer	4-62
outside temperature gauge	4-63
speedometer	4-59
tachometer	4-60
transmission shift indicator	4-64
<b>intelligent speed limit assist (ISLA)</b>	5-96
auto set speed change	5-99
changing set speed	5-99
detecting sensor	5-96
intelligent speed limit assist malfunction and limitations	5-100
intelligent speed limit assist operation	5-98
intelligent speed limit assist settings	5-96
<b>intelligent variable transmission (IVT)</b>	5-28
good driving practices	5-33

intelligent variable transmission (IVT) operation	5-28	lane keeping assist operation	5-79
LCD display for warning message	5-28	lane keeping assist settings	5-78
parking in N (neutral) gear	5-30	limitations of lane keeping assist	5-82
shift lock system	5-32	<b>LCD display</b>	4-66
shift-lock override	5-32	LCD display control	4-66
transmission ranges	5-29	LCD display messages	4-79
<b>interior features</b>	4-154	LCD display modes	4-67
air ventilation seat	4-157	user settings mode	4-70
ashtray	4-154	<b>LCD display messages</b>	4-79
cargo area cover	4-163	<b>LCD display modes</b>	4-67
coat hook	4-162	driving assist mode	4-68
cup holder	4-155	information mode	4-69
floor mat anchor(s)	4-163	master warning mode	4-69
power outlet	4-159	trip computer mode	4-68
sun visor	4-158	turn by turn (TBT) mode	4-68
USB charger	4-158	user settings mode	4-70
wireless smart phone charging system	4-160	<b>light bulbs</b>	7-72
<b>interior lights</b>	4-124	bulb replacement precaution	7-72
automatic turn off function	4-124	<b>lighting</b>	4-107
glove box lamp	4-126	auto light	4-110
luggage room lamp	4-126	battery saver function	4-107
map lamp	4-124	daytime running light (DRL)	4-108
room lamp	4-125	front fog light	4-114
vanity mirror lamp	4-126	head light (low beam)	4-110
		headlight escort function	4-107
		headlight levelling device	4-118
		high beam assist (HBA)	4-115
		high beam assist malfunction and limitations	4-117
		lighting control	4-108
		one-touch lane change	4-113
		operating high beam	4-111
		position and tail lamp	4-109
<b>K</b>		<b>M</b>	
<b>key operations</b>	4-7	<b>maintenance services</b>	7-7
battery replacement	4-8	owner maintenance precautions	7-7
folding key	4-7	owner's responsibility	7-7
smart key	4-7	<b>manual climate control system</b>	4-133
<b>key positions</b>	5-6	air conditioning (A/C)	4-137
ignition switch position	5-6	controlling air intake	4-136
starting the engine	5-7	controlling fan speed	4-136
stopping the engine	5-8	heating and air conditioning	4-134
		mode selection	4-135
		temperature control	4-135
		<b>manual speed limit assist (MSLA)</b>	5-93
<b>L</b>			
<b>lane following assist (LFA)</b>	5-125		
detecting sensor	5-125		
lane following assist malfunction	5-129		
lane following assist operation	5-126		
lane following assist settings	5-126		
limitations of lane following assist	5-129		
<b>lane keeping assist (LKA)</b>	5-78		
detecting sensor	5-78		
lane keeping assist malfunction	5-82		

resuming manual speed limit assist	5-94
setting the speed limit	5-93
temporarily pausing manual speed limit assist	5-94
turning off manual speed limit assist	5-95
<b>manual transmission</b>	5-18
good driving practices	5-20
manual transmission operation	5-18
<b>master warning mode</b>	4-69
<b>mirrors</b>	4-53
adjusting the outside rear view mirrors	4-55
day/night rear view mirror	4-54
electronic chromic mirror (ECM)	4-54
folding the outside rear view mirror	4-55
inside rear view mirror	4-53
outside rear view mirror	4-54

---

## O

<b>one-touch lane change</b>	4-113
<b>operating high beam</b>	4-111
<b>overview</b>	2-2
engine compartment	2-9
exterior overview	2-2
instrument panel overview	2-7
interior overview	2-5
<b>owner maintenance</b>	7-8

---

## P

<b>parking brake</b>	7-39
applying the parking brake	5-36
<b>position and tail lamp</b>	4-108
<b>power tailgate</b>	4-29
detecting area	4-36
emergency tailgate safety release	4-33
how to use the smart tailgate	4-34
operating the power tailgate	4-30
power tailgate operating conditions	4-29
resetting the power tailgate	4-33
setting the power tailgate	4-32
smart tailgate	4-34
<b>power window lock button</b>	4-40
<b>pre-tensioner seat belt</b>	3-23

---

## R

<b>rear cross-traffic collision-avoidance assist (RCCA)</b>	5-129
detecting sensor	5-130
limitations of rear cross-traffic collision-avoidance assist	5-136
rear cross-traffic collision-avoidance assist malfunction	5-134
rear cross-traffic collision-avoidance assist operation	5-131
rear cross-traffic collision-avoidance assist settings	5-130
<b>rear occupant alert (ROA) system</b>	4-21
<b>rear seat adjustment</b>	3-11
<b>rear seat headrest</b>	3-11
<b>rear view monitor (RVM)</b>	4-95
rear view monitor malfunction and limitations	4-98
rear view monitor operation	4-96
rear view monitor settings	4-95
<b>remote keyless entry</b>	4-10
remote keyless entry system operations	4-10
transmitter precautions	4-11
<b>remote window closing/opening system</b>	4-41
<b>returning used vehicles (for europe)</b>	1-5
<b>reverse parking distance warning (PDW)</b>	4-98
reverse parking distance warning malfunction and precautions	4-100
reverse parking distance warning operation	4-98
reverse parking distance warning settings	4-99
<b>road warning</b>	6-3
hazard warning flasher	6-3

---

## S

<b>safe exit warning (SEW)</b>	4-22
detecting sensor	4-22
malfunction and limitations	4-25
operation	4-24

settings	4-23	luggage volume	8-4
<b>scheduled maintenance items</b>	7-27	refrigerant label	8-13
<b>scheduled maintenance service</b>	7-10	tyre specification and pressure label	8-11
maintenance under severe usage conditions	7-25	tyres and wheels	8-6
normal maintenance schedule	7-20	vehicle certification label	8-11
normal maintenance schedule - For Australia and New Zealand	7-11	vehicle identification number (VIN)	8-10
<b>seat</b>	3-3	<b>steering wheel</b>	4-50
feature of seat leather	3-5	adjusting steering wheel angle and height	4-51
front seat adjustment for manual seat	3-5	heated steering wheel	4-52
front seat adjustment for power seat	3-6	horn	4-52
rear seat adjustment	3-11	motor driven power steering (MDPS)	4-50
<b>seat belt</b>	3-17	tilt & telescopic steering wheel	4-51
care of seat belts	3-27	<b>storage compartment</b>	4-152
precautions	3-25	centre console storage	4-152
pre-tensioner seat belt	3-23	glove box	4-152
warning	3-18	luggage board	4-153
<b>seat leather</b>	3-5	luggage net holder	4-152
<b>seatback pocket</b>	3-10	sliding armrest	4-152
<b>side air bag</b>	3-49	<b>sunroof</b>	4-46
<b>smart cruise control (SCC)</b>	5-111	automatic reversal	4-48
detecting sensor	5-111	resetting the sunroof	4-49
displaying operating status	5-116	slide open/close	4-48
limitations of smart cruise control	5-121	sunroof open warning	4-50
smart cruise control malfunction	5-120	sunshade	4-47
smart cruise control operation	5-112	tilt open/close	4-47
smart cruise control settings	5-111		
<b>smart key</b>	4-12		
smart key functions	4-13	<b>T</b>	
smart key precautions	4-13	<b>tailgate</b>	4-27
<b>smart tailgate</b>	4-34	closing the tailgate	4-27
detecting area	4-36	emergency tailgate safety release	4-28
how to deactivate the smart tailgate		opening the tailgate	4-27
function using the smart key	4-35	<b>theft-alarm system</b>	4-14
how to use the smart tailgate	4-34	armed stage	4-15
<b>special driving conditions</b>	5-149	disarmed stage	4-15
<b>specifications</b>	8-2	theft-alarm stage	4-15
air conditioner compressor label	8-12	<b>towing</b>	6-20
air conditioning system	8-4	emergency towing	6-21
bulb wattage	8-5	emergency towing precautions	6-23
declaration of conformity	8-13	removable towing hook	6-21
dimensions	8-2, 8-3	<b>trailer towing</b>	5-155
engine	8-3	<b>trip information (trip computer)</b>	4-76
engine number	8-12	<b>turn by turn (TBT) mode</b>	4-68
fuel label	8-14	<b>tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)</b>	6-8
gross vehicle weight	8-4	low tyre pressure telltale	6-9
lubricants and capacities	8-7	tyre pressure indicator	6-8

tyre replacement with TPMS	6-11	canceling/returning automatic defogging logic on automatic climate control system	4-149
<b>tyres and wheels</b>	7-48	canceling/returning automatic defogging logic on manual climate control system	4-148
compact spare tyre replacement	7-51	<b>winter driving</b>	5-152
low aspect ratio tyre	7-57	<b>wiper blades</b>	7-42
radial-ply tyres	7-57	blade inspection	7-42
tyre chains	7-56	replacing front windscreen wiper blade	7-43
tyre rotation	7-49	replacing rear window wiper blade	7-44

---

## U

<b>user settings mode</b>	4-70
---------------------------	------

---

## V

<b>vehicle break-in process</b>	1-4
<b>vehicle handling instructions</b>	1-6
<b>vehicle identification number (VIN)</b>	8-10
<b>vehicle modifications</b>	1-4
<b>vehicle weight</b>	5-164

---

## W

<b>warning and indicator lights</b>	4-83
indicator lights	4-88
warning lights	4-83
<b>warning lights</b>	4-83
<b>washer fluid</b>	7-38
<b>windows</b>	4-37
power window lock button	4-40
remote window closing/opening system	4-41
window opening and closing	4-38
<b>windscreen defrosting and defogging</b>	4-146
defogging inside windscreen with manual climate control system	4-146
defogging inside windscreen with the automatic climate control	4-147
defrosting outside windscreen with automatic climate control	4-147
defrosting outside windscreen with manual climate control system	4-147
<b>windshield defrosting and defogging</b>	
auto defogging system	4-149